

Colloquial

Persian

Colloquial

Persian

The Complete Course for Beginners

Abdi Rafiee



First edition published 1988 by Routledge 2 Park Square, Milton Park, Abingdon, Oxon OX14 4RN

Second edition published 2001

This third edition published 2011

Simultaneously published in the USA and Canada by Routledge 711 Third Avenue, New York, NY 10017

Routledge is an imprint of the Taylor & Francis Group, an informa business

© 1988 Leila Moshiri

© 2001, 2011 Abdi Rafiee

The right of Abdi Rafiee to be identified as author of this work has been asserted by him in accordance with sections 77 and 78 of the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988.

Typeset in Avant Garde and Helvetica by Graphicraft Limited, Hong Kong

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reprinted or reproduced or utilized in any form or by any electronic, mechanical, or other means, now known or hereafter invented, including photocopying and recording, or in any information storage or retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publishers.

British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data
A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library

Library of Congress Cataloging in Publication Data

Rafiee, Abdi, 1947-

Colloquial Persian: the complete course for beginners / Abdi Rafiee.—3rd ed.

p. cm. — (The colloquial series

Includes bibliographical references and index.

1. Persian language—Textbooks for foreign speakers—English. 2. Persian language—Grammar. 3.

Persian language—Spoken Persian. 4. Persian language—Sound recordings for English speakers. I. Title.

PK6239.5.E5R34 2010

491'.5582421—dc22

2010006487

ISBN 13: 978-1-138-94977-5 (pbk)

Contents

Acknowledgements
Introduction
Reading and writing in Persian
Guidelines for Persian writing

1 سلام salām

Greetings

2 احوال پرسى ahvālporsi

Enquiring about health

3 كجايي هستيد؟ kojāyi hastid?

Where are you from?

4 آخر هفته چهکار کردید؟ āxar-e hafte ce-kār kardid?

What did you do at the weekend?

5 منزلتون كجاست؟ manzeletun kojāst?

Where's your home?

6 ورود به تهران vorud be tehrān

Arriving in Tehran

7 در ایران dar irān

In Iran

8 گفتو گوی خیابانی goft-o-gu-ye xiābāni

Street talk

9 گرسنهاید؟ gorosneid?

Are you hungry?

موقعیّتهای اضطراری mouqe`iyathā-ye ezterāri

Emergency situations

manzel منزل

Home

gardeŝ گردش

Going out

xarid خرید

Shopping

14 خدمات xadamāt

Services

15 سلامت و بهداشت salāmat o behdāŝt

Health and hygiene

16 روابط با دیگران ravābet bā digarān

Relations with other people

17 كار و زبانهاى خارجى kār va zabānhā-ye xāreji

Business and foreign languages

Key to the exercises
Reference grammar
Persian–English glossary
English–Persian glossary
Index

Please email AcademiceBooksSupport@informa.com with proof of purchase to obtain access to the supplementary content for this eBook. An access code and instructions will be provided.

Acknowledgements

I would like to record my sincere gratitude to my sons, Hameed and Siam, for putting up with a part-time father while the second edition of this course was being prepared in the late 1990s, and for tolerating my part-time friendship since I was asked to produce the current edition. I remain grateful to my wife, Sima, for filling the gap, as well as for reading the manuscript and making valuable suggestions.

Since the publication of the second edition in 2001, I have received valuable feedback on the content and form of the course from my students as well as those from all over the world who have taken the trouble to write their views and comments about the course on the Internet. A big 'thank you' to all of them.

My thanks also go to the editorial team at Routledge for their comments and support.

Abdi (Abdorreza) Rafiee

Introduction

Congratulations on taking the first step towards learning the language of Hafez, Sa'di, Ferdowsi and Khayyam, to name but a few of the literary giants Iran has proudly produced over the centuries as part of its contribution to the wealth of the world's cultural heritage.

On a practical level, I hope you will agree with the notion that a European learning another European language is one thing; a European learning a non-European language is quite another. We cannot separate a language from the cultural factors (beliefs, assumptions, etc.) that have influenced and shaped it over the years. The cultural gap is significantly narrower and shallower between language communities within Europe than between Europe and the East. This means that a European attempting to learn an Eastern language will need to bridge a much wider and deeper cultural gap than if he or she were learning another European language.

Despite the eastern cultural backdrop and using the Arabic alphabet, Persian is in fact an Indo-European language, i.e. related to English, and therefore much easier for English speakers to learn than Arabic. Indeed, some of my students have suggested that learning Persian first would make life much easier when you go on to learn Arabic.

In this course, I have tried to present a holistic picture of the Persian language, which includes not only the grammar of the word, the phrase and the sentence (i.e. the traditional view of grammar) but also the 'grammar' of what to say to whom and how to say or not to say it (i.e. the grammar of communication). So, we will be concerned not just with 'grammatical accuracy', but also with the social and cultural appropriateness of what we say in Persian.

Learning a foreign language without bothering about the (often) culturespecific norms governing the use of that language would be like learning how to drive a car without bothering about the Highway Code!

Who is the course intended for?

This course is intended for two types of learner:

- 1 Those who wish to learn to speak, read and write in Persian.
- 2 Those who wish to be able to communicate in Persian, without learning the script.

Type of Persian used

The type of Persian used in this course is educated colloquial Tehrani, which is understood throughout Iran, thanks to the media. Although the principal objective of this course is to introduce spoken colloquial Persian, sufficient guidance is given for those who wish to go on to study literary Persian.

The table on p. xi shows the varieties of language referred to in the book.

Use of jargon

I have tried to keep grammatical jargon to a minimum. Where a technical word is used, it is often backed up by a clarifying example. For instance, under 'Demonstratives', you are told: How to say 'this'/'these'; 'that'/'those'.

Layout of the book

The book is divided into two parts. The first part introduces the Persian sound system and the script supported by a comprehensive exercise at the end. The second part comprises seventeen units. Each unit contains two dialogues in which everyday language is introduced in its appropriate social and cultural setting. Each dialogue is supported by 'Vocabulary', 'Language and culture notes' and 'Exercises'. Each unit ends with a 'Comprehension test', which brings together the main language points introduced in the unit.

Register	Register Style C		Example
Colloquial	Formal	Addressing older	میخواید باهاشون برید ایران؟
(snoken/written))	-	

(~p ~~~~~		people, or among participants in business meetings, using somā 'you' (formal)	mixāid bāhāŝun berid irān? Do you want to go to Iran with them?
	Informal	Addressing friends and relatives of similar or younger age in speech or in writing (e.g. email, letter, postcard) using to 'you' (informal)	میخوای باهاشون بری ایران؟ mixāid bāhāŝun berid irān? Do you want to go to Iran with them?
Literary (spoken/written)	Formal	Business correspondence; books; newspapers; news casting; emails, letters or plays (addressing seniors)	mixāid bāhāŝun berid irān beravid? Do you want to go to Iran with them?
	Informal	Personal correspondence addressing friends and relatives of similar or younger age; plays (addressing peers or juniors)	مىخواھى با آنھا به ايران بروى؟ mixāid bāhāŝun berid irān beravi? Do you want to go to Iran with them?

Sound change in casual speech

Some sounds tend to influence the quality or length of their neighbours. Sound changes familiar to English speakers are not reflected in the transcription. Examples: **n** followed by **b**, **p**, **m** is pronounced **m**. For example, **sanbe** 'Saturday' is pronounced **sambe**. In the transcription, however, the original form **sanbe** has been used to avoid a clash with the Persian spelling.

The consonant cluster **nd** is normally reduced to **n**, as in **raftand** 'they went',

which is often reduced to **raftan.** Again, the original form**raftand** is reflected in the transcription. Words ending in the sound **e** normally have this sound changed to **a** when followed by a suffix:

```
unjā rafte-am → raftam I've been (gone) there.

panjare window

panjare-am → panjaram my window

panjare-am → panjaram my window

panjare rā bāz kardam. → بنجره را باز کردم.

panjara-ro bāz kardam. I opened the window.
```

Using the course

Listening

Listening to Persian spoken by native speakers helps you to gain mastery of the sound system, improve your pronunciation and develop a good Persian accent. Dialogues, exercises and materials involving listening are marked with this icon Ω

The dialogues

To understand each dialogue, you need to look not only at the vocabulary but also at the 'Language and culture notes' where linguistic and relevant cultural explanations are given. You may also need to refer to the glossaries at the end of the book.

The exercises

In most cases, the first question in each exercise has been answered as an example. The last exercise after each dialogue is intended to broaden the lens and use the grammar in a variety of other contexts. For these exercises and the comprehension test at the end of each unit, you will need to refer to the glossaries at the end of the book. All the answers are given in 'Key to the

exercises'.

Role plays

This is a very important part of the course. Each lesson is supplemented with a series of role-play exercises. These are fully explained on the accompanying audio. Follow the instructions and make the most of your free time (e.g. when travelling, in the kitchen, or at bedtime).

A bilingual dictionary – an essential tool

This course hopes to help you get to a stage where you can study the language independently. This is where a good (English-Persian, Persian-English) dictionary will be an essential tool.

You can help improve the course

Everything is known by everyone. 'Everyone' has yet to be born!

(a famous Persian saying)

Your comments on the form and content of the course would be most welcome. If an aspect of the language has not been covered (sufficiently), please let us know.

On the English transcription

The English transcription of Persian words appears in **bold type.** Letters or symbols in round brackets represent sounds that are normally dropped in casual speech. All English transcription should be read according to the values given below.

Symbol Sounds like		In the (mostly English) word(s)
ā	a	father (British/American accent)
a	a	add

āi	i	ice
b	b	bad
c	ch	church
d	d	dad
e	e	egg
ei	ei	rein
f	f	fee
g	g	good
ĝ	g	regime
h	h	hand
i	i	ski
j	j	joke
k	k	kite
i	I	ieek (not keel)
m	rn	mad
n	n	noon
0	awe	awe (British accent) shorter
oi	oi	coin
ou	ou	dough (American accent)
p	p	pad
q	r	Paris (French accent) harder
r	r	road (Scottish accent)
S	S	sad
ŝ	sh	she
t	t	tea
u	u	flu
ui	ooey	gooey (one syllable)
V	V	vest
W	W	west
X	ch	loch; Bach
y	у	yeast

Z	Z	zip
•	t	water (Cockney accent)

Note: Persian consonants and vowels are described in the section 'Reading and writing in Persian'.

Abbreviations used in the book

а	adjective	op	opposite
adv	adverb	p	preposition
col	colloquial	pl	plural
con	conjunction	pol	polite
dem	demonstrative	ps	present stem
f	formal	SI	structured infinitive
inf	informal	sing	singular
l	literary	SO	someone
lit	literally	ST	something
n	noun	sub	subjunctive

Cross-referencing style

Cross-references are made throughout the book to the particular Unit and Dialogue where an explanation or clarification is given. For example, 'See U2D2 for possessive endings' means that 'possessive endings' are explained in Unit 2 Dialogue 2.

Reading and writing in Persian

Introduction

Modern Persian uses the Arabic alphabet. The Persian sounds **c**, **g**, **ĝ** and **p** are not represented by any Arabic letters. Therefore, when the Arabic script was adopted, four of its letters were slightly modified to produce new letters representing the above sounds.

Persian is written and read from right to left. The first page of a Persian book is the page nearest to the right-hand-side cover. Persian numbers, however, are written and read from left to right. Initially it would be better to write on ruled paper to help you to develop a pleasant-looking handwriting. This is because letters are positioned in relation to a horizontal line.

Already, you will know a few hundred words commonly used in Persian! These are the words Persian has borrowed from other (mostly European) languages. Some of these words are pronounced in Persian more or less the same as they are in their language(s) of origin, e.g. 'soup', 'team', 'jet'. Others have been slightly modified to fit into the Persian sound system: **kelās** for 'class'. To minimise the 'unknown' area, some of these 'familiar' words are used when introducing the Persian script. The purpose here is to use a familiar launching pad that will, I hope, help the learner land smoothly on the Persian writing pad, so to speak.

When we learn a new language with a writing system entirely different from that of our own, we are often concerned about (if not intimidated by) at least two things:

- having to learn a completely new set of symbols, moving in an unfamiliar direction;
- 2 having to cope with potential irregularities in the relationship between the

symbols and the sounds they represent.

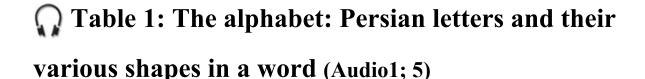
On (1), I cannot say much except to assure you that the comparatively 'phonetic' nature of the Persian alphabet greatly facilitates the learning of the writing system. In terms of the relation between what you see and how you pronounce it, Persian is much more consistent than English. Most sounds are represented by only one letter in Persian.

In Persian, the maximum number of letters representing the same sound is four. These are the letters that represent the sound **z**. Significantly, wherever you see any of these four letters, you can be absolutely certain that the sound represented is **z**.

The alphabet (including the consonants)

There are 32 letters in the alphabet. They help to represent 24 consonants and 11 vowels. English speakers will need to learn two new (consonant) sounds. The remaining consonants and vowels are more or less familiar to English speakers. The letter * vāv is mute in certain words.

Please do not be intimidated by what I am going to show you now – the entire alphabet! The purpose is to give you a bird's-eye view of all the Persian letters, and their various shapes, in their natural (alphabetical) order. This is the order in which you will need to remember the letters if you wish to make good use of your Persian-English dictionary. Furthermore, it will be used as a reference later when individual letters are introduced.



-				
C	hn	2	-	•
O	Пa	IJ	ᆮ	S

Name

		Final separate	Final joined	Medial	Initial	
1	(See vowels)	1	1	1	(See vowels)	alef
2	b	ب	ب	ب	ب	be
3	р	پ	پ	پ	پ	pe
4	t	ت	ت	ت	٦	te
5	s	ث	ث	ث	ث	se
6	j	3	3	<u> </u>	<u>ج</u>	jim
7	С	₹	3	چ	<u>پ</u>	се
8	h	ح	ح	_>	_>	he-jimi
9	x	خ	خ	خـ	خـ	xe
10	d	٥	٥	٥	٥	dāl
11	z	ડે	٤	i	ن	zāl
12	r)))	ر	re
13	z	ز	ز	ز	ز	ze
14	ĝ	ژ	ژ	ژ	ژ	ĝe
15	s	س	س		ــــ	sin
16	ŝ	ش	ش	شــ	شــ	ŝin
17	s	ص	ص	صـ	صـ	sād
18	z	ض	ض	ضـ	ضـ	zād
19	t	ط	ط	ط	ط	tā
20	z	ظ	ظ	ظ	ظ	zā
21	•	ع	_ع	•	عـ	ein

22	q	غ	_غ	<u>.</u>	غـ	qein
23	f	ف	ف	ف	ف	fe
24	q	ق	ق	ق	ق	qāf
25	k	ک	ک	5	2	kāf
26	g	گ	گ	گ	گ	gāf
27	1	J	J	١	١	lām
28	m	۴	م	_م	_	mim
29	n	ن	ن	نـ	نـ	nun
30	v	9	9	9	9	vāv
31	h	٥	_ه	~	_&	he-do-ceŝm
32	у	ی	ےی	یـ	یـ	ye

A bird's-eye view of the alphabet reveals the following facts.

On sounds

Two consonant sounds are unfamiliar to English speakers: \mathbf{x} (letter 9) and \mathbf{q} (letters 22 and 24).

Persian \mathbf{x} is very similar to the sound represented by 'ch' in (Scottish) 'loch' and in German 'Bach'. Persian \mathbf{q} is very close to French 'r', only a bit harder.

Most Persian sounds are represented by one letter each.

- t is represented by 2 letters: te and tā
- q is represented by 2 letters: ¿ qein and ق qāf
- h is represented by 2 letters: [₹] he-jimi and [♣] he-do-ce\$m
- s is represented by 3 letters: a se, sin and sād
- z is represented by 4 letters: 5 zāl, 5 ze, 6 zād and 5 zā
- 'is represented by letter ε ein and *hamze* (see Glottal Stop, pp. xxxi–xxxiii).

On shapes

Each letter may have one, two, three or four shapes for various positions in a word. Nine letters have more or less the same shape for all positions in a word. These are:

```
l alef, ه dāl, هُ zāl, ر re, j ze, ژ ĝe, ط tā, غ zā, و vāv
```

Nineteen letters have two shapes: small (for the beginning or middle of a word) and large (for the end of a word):

```
ب be, پ pe, ت te, ث se,   jim,   ce,   he-jimi,   xe,   sin,       sād,       jād,     gāf,     dāf,     gāf,   lām,   mim,   nun
```

Letter • ye has three shapes: small (for the beginning or middle of the word) and two large ones (one for final joined position, and the other for final separate).

Letters he-do-cesm, ein and ein have four shapes: initial, medial, final joined and final separate. Within the same word, all but seven letters can be connected to the letters on either side – in handwriting and in print. These seven letters can only be connected to the preceding (not the following) letter. These are:

```
l alef, ع dāl, s zāl, ع re, ; ze, ; ĝe, و vāv
```

Note: As we go through the examples, you will note that the final shapes of some letters (when occurring after a connectable letter) are very slightly modified to make the 'connection' easier (and nicer). In the introduction to Persian letters, some of the most common European loanwords and names will be used. However, please bear in mind that these non-Persian words are not always pronounced by Iranians exactly as they are pronounced in their language of origin.

Word stress normally falls on the last syllable of a word. Underlining indicates stress. Stressed or unstressed, a Persian vowel is normally pronounced in full.

The vowels

Persian vowels are fairly similar to their English counterparts. Letters 1, 30, 31 and 32 play a major part in representing vowels. These are: | alef, • vāv, - he-do-cesm and • ye.

Table 2: Persian vowels and their various shapes in a word (Audio1; 3)

No.		Vowel shapes				
	Final separate	Final joined	Medial	Initial	symbol	
1	1	1	1	Ĩ	ā	
2	9	9	9	او	u	
3	ی	-ى	یـ	ایـ	i	
4	٥	4_		Ĺ	а	
5	٥	_ه	_	ļ	е	
6	9	9	_	Í	0	
7	ای	ای	ایـ	آیہ	āi	
8	_ ی	<u> </u>	ب_ يـ	إيـ	ei	
9	ؤ	<u>`</u> ؤ	<u>-</u> ۋ	ٱۅ۫	ou	
10	وى	وى	ويـ	اویـ	oi	
11	وى	وى	ویـ	اویـ	ui	

In addition to their roles as consonants, letters 9 \mathbf{vav} , ${}^{-\mathbf{b}}$ he-do-cesm and 6 ye (see Table 1 on pp. xviii–xix) are used to represent vowels in the medial and final positions. Thus, the shape of a vowel may slightly change depending on where it occurs in a word: beginning, middle or end. When the word begins with a vowel, the first letter, † alef, is used as a prop: † = ${}^{\bullet}$ Sometimes, depending on the spelling of the word, letter ${}^{\xi}$ ein acts as a prop. In Table 2 (p.

xxi), the first six are called pure vowels. The remaining five are compound vowels (diphthongs).

Vowels $\bar{\mathbf{a}}$, \mathbf{u} and \mathbf{i} are long. Vowels \mathbf{a} , \mathbf{e} and \mathbf{o} are short. Vowels $\bar{\mathbf{a}}\mathbf{i}$, $\bar{\mathbf{e}}\mathbf{i}$, $\bar{\mathbf{o}}\mathbf{u}$ and $\bar{\mathbf{o}}\mathbf{i}$ are more or less similar to their English counterparts. Vowelui is similar to the sound represented by '-ooey' in the English word 'gooey' but pronounced as one syllable – $\bar{\mathbf{g}}\mathbf{u}\mathbf{i}$ rather than $\bar{\mathbf{g}}\mathbf{u} + \bar{\mathbf{i}}$.

Most vowels are represented by letters and are therefore incorporated into the word. Other vowels use add-on symbols that are placed above or below the letters they follow. A stroke placed above a letter (—) represents the sound **a**; below it, represents **e**. This comma-shaped symbol () placed above a letter (—) represents the vowelo. These symbols are placed above, or below, the consonant they follow, e.g. $\mathbf{p} = \mathbf{ba}$, $\mathbf{p} = \mathbf{be}$, $\mathbf{p} = \mathbf{be}$.

In the medial and final shape columns, the horizontal line (–) has been used as a dummy consonant to show the position of the Persian vowel symbols (–) in relation to the consonant they follow – i.e. above or below it. Unlike the long vowels, these short-vowel symbols are not incorporated into the main body of the word. The final versions of these vowels, however, make use of proper letters and are therefore incorporated into the word.

The final shapes of letter he-do-cesm (i.e. he-do-cesm (i

Unjoinable letters

We begin with the seven unjoinable letters referred to earlier. These are consonant letters: adal, a zal, re, ze, ge, vav and the first letter in the alphabet, alef, which is used in vowels. Some of the vowels are also introduced in this section. You are reminded that these seven letters cannot be connected to the following letter, but can be connected to a preceding letter, if it is a joinable one. To write the word dad 'she/he gave', we need:

```
\mathbf{d} = \text{letter } \mathbf{d}\mathbf{\bar{a}} = \mathbf{a}
\mathbf{\bar{a}} = \text{medial shape of vowel } \mathbf{\bar{a}} = \mathbf{a}
\mathbf{d} = \text{letter } \mathbf{d}\mathbf{\bar{a}} = \mathbf{a}
Here is the result: \mathbf{a}
```

To write the word **āzād** 'free', we need:

```
    ā = initial shape of vowel ā =
    z = letter ze =
    ā = medial shape of vowel ā =
    d = letter dāl =
    The result is: كَازَا
```

To write the word **dud** 'smoke', we need:

```
      d = letter dāl
      =
      5

      u = medial shape of vowel u
      =
      9

      d = letter dāl
      =
      5

      Here is the result:
      29
      2
```

To write the word **did** 'he/she saw', we need:

```
d = letter dāl = . .
i = medial shape of vowel i = ____ d = letter dāl = s
Here is the result: دید
```

Note: The medial shape of vowel **i** uses letter **ye** which is a joinable letter. This is why - and are connected.

To write the word **dad** 'beast', we need:

```
d = letter dāl
=
3

a = medial shape of vowel a
=
_____

d = letter dāl
=
3

Here is the result:
33
```

To write the word reĝe 'parade', we need:

To write the word **roz** 'rose' (flower), we need:

To write the word **dāiv** 'diving board', we need:

```
d = letter dāl = عالم القاط = القاط = قاط = القاط = قاط = ق
```

To write the word **dei** (the tenth month in the Iranian calendar), we need:

```
d = letter dāl = ع
ei = final separate shape of vowel ei = ع
Here is the result: دى
```

To write the word **dou** 'running', we need:

```
d = letter dāl = ວ

ou = final shape of vowel ou = ໍ່ງ ____

Here is the result: ໍ່ງລັ
```

The short vowel symbols (______) which are placed above or below the line are normally dropped. This should not cause much difficulty once the skeleton of the word has become familiar to us.

Joinable letters

So far, we have been introduced to the unjoinable letters together with the various shapes of some of the more common vowels. In this section, we will see joinable letters and their various shapes, as well as the remaining vowels, in action. An attempt has been made to include all possible shapes of letters, beginning with smaller words.

Letters • be, • pe, • te, • se use a more or less similar skeleton. difference is in the number and position of dots. Letter • nun may also be included here, although its final shape is deeper and rounded.

To write **bād** 'wind', we need:

```
b = initial shape of letter be
                                            1
ā = medial shape of vowel ā
d = letter däl
یاد :Here is the result
```

To write **tip** 'brigade', we need:

```
t = initial shape of letter te
i = medial shape of vowel i
p = final shape of letter pe
Here is the result: تيپ
```

To write **na** 'no', we need:

```
n = initial shape of letter nun
a = final joined shape of vowel a = 4_
نه :Here is the result
```

To write **bad** 'bad', we need:

```
b = initial shape of letter be
a = medial shape of vowel a
d = letter dāl
                                   = 3
كد :Here is the result
```

Note: The medial shape of vowel **a** is not a letter and therefore not included in the skeleton of the word. This is why - and are - connected. This rule applies to all instances where a vowel is represented by a sign placed above or below a preceding letter.

Letters [©] jim, [©] ce, [©] he-jimi, [†] xe use the same skeleton. Their difference is in the number and position of dots. To write cap 'printing', we need:

```
c = initial shape of letter ce
ā = medial shape of vowel ā
p = final shape of letter pe
Here is the result: چاپ
```

To write **jip** 'jeep', we need:

```
i = initial shape of letter jim
i = medial shape of vowel i
p = final shape of letter pe
Here is the result: حیب
```

To write **jet** 'jet', we need:

To write **pic** 'screw', we need:

Letters sin and sin use the same skeleton. Their difference is in dots.

To write the English loanword sāiz 'size', we need:

```
s = initial shape of letter sin = ____

āi = medial shape of vowel āi = ___!

z = letter ze = ;

Here is the result: سایز
```

To write **ris** 'beard', we need:

Letters • fe and • qāf use a more or less similar skeleton. The final shape of • qāf is deeper and rounded. To write fis 'fiche', 'docket', we need:

To write **faqir** 'beggar', we need:

To write rafiq 'friend', we need:

Letters $\leq k\bar{a}f$ and $\leq g\bar{a}f$ use the same skeleton – the latter has an additional stroke close to, and parallel with the original. To write jak 'jack', we need:

```
j = initial shape of letter jim = جـ ع = medial shape of vowel a = له = final shape of letter kāf = ك
Here is the result: جَک
```

To write kaj 'tilted', we need:

To write **gac** 'chalk', we need:

```
g = initial shape of letter gāf = گـ
a = medial shape of vowel a = ___
c = final shape of letter ce = = =
Here is the result: گچ
```

To write barg 'leaf', we need:

```
ب ع ا المنافع المنافع
```

To economise on space, we will use a slightly different method of presenting examples for the remaining letters. Reading from right to left, you will see the 'ingredients' of each word separated by a space. This is followed by the word in its normal shape.

Note the two shapes of letter J lām in the following examples:

```
لـ ـى = لى Lee li
كـ يـ لـ و = كيلو kilo kilu
فـ يـ ل = فيل elephant fil
آيـ لـ يـ ن = آيلين Eileen āilin
```

Note: A combination of letter J lām and the first letter (I alef) used in the vowelā often looks like this I when standing alone; and like this I when joined up to a preceding letter, e.g.

```
دار = لار a town lār
کے لاا س = کِلاس class kelās
```

Note the two shapes of letter **f** mim in these examples:

Letter he-do-cesm has four shapes:

```
هـال = هال hall hāl
هـ تـ ل = هُتل hotel hotel
هـ تـ ل = هُتل spring (season) bahār
بـ هـار نـهـايـت = فارِنهايت Fahrenheit fārenhāit
بـ مه = به quince (fruit) beh
```

Note: After an unjoinable letter, the initial shape is used in the middle of a word; and the final separate shape at the end of a word:

```
دَ هـان = دَهان mouth dahān
دَ ه = دَه ten dah
دَ ه = دَه king ŝāh
شـاه = شاه mountain kuh
```

The vowel **oi** is very rare in Persian. The only example normally given is **xoi**, the name of a town in Iran. Here is how it is written:

```
خـ وى = خوى town) xoi)
```

Vowel **ui** occurs mostly in literary Persian, as in ويداد **gui** 'ball' and 'smell'. A more common example is رويداد **ruidād** 'event'.

Letters $\overset{\omega}{\sim}$ sād and $\overset{\omega}{\sim}$ zād use the same skeleton. The latter has one dot over it. Note their two shapes:

```
hundred sad مُ فَ دَ لَ لَ مِي الْحَالِي الْح
```

Letters \mathbf{b} $\mathbf{t}\mathbf{\bar{a}}$ and $\mathbf{\bar{b}}$ $\mathbf{z}\mathbf{\bar{a}}$ use the same skeleton but the latter has a dot over it. They have only one shape:

Letters \mathcal{E} ein and $\dot{\mathcal{E}}$ qein use the same skeleton. The latter has a dot over it. They have four shapes:

Note: After an unjoinable letter, the initial shape is used in the middle of a word; and the final separate shape at the end of a word:

```
thunder ra`d عـد = رَعد thunder ra`d مـد = ورَعد divine law $ar` مـرُ رع = شُرع gardener bāqbān بـاغـبان = باغبان garden bāq مـرُ غ = مُرغ chicken, hen morq
```

The glottal stop (Audio1; 8)

The glottal stop (') is the sound of 't' in words like 'water' when pronounced with a Cockney (east London) accent. The glottal stop can occur in all three positions: beginning, middle or end of a word. At the beginning of a word, it may be represented by:

- the initial form of any of the vowels described above using the first letter in the alphabet: I (see Table 2 on p. xxi); or by:
- the initial form of letter **ein** (see Table 1 on pp. xviii–xix).

Occurring in the medial or final position, the glottal stop may be represented by:

- An appropriate shape of letter ٤ ein (e.g. معن ba'd 'then'; معن ra~d 'thunder'); or by:
- A feature called *hamze*, which will be explained below.

The generic shape of *hamze* is (*). In Persian, the *hamze* sign occurs in the middle or at the end of a word. Depending on the spelling of the word, it is placed over one of these letters (carriers):

ئ ۋ

Examples:

```
head, apex ra's رَ أَ س = رَأْس head, apex ra's تَ أَ تُ ي ر = تَأْثير impact, effect ta'sir مرَ تُ ي س = رَئيس boss ra'is مرَ سُ تُ و ل = مَسئول responsible mas'ul مرَ و ل = مَسئول question so'āl سرُ و ال = سُؤال faithful, a believer mo'men
```

In the final position, the *hamze* sign may occur on its own:

```
ســ و ، = سوء ' عسوه ' an essay enŝā' انــ شــ ا ، = انشاء ' object, thing ŝei' مُــ عني ، = شيء
```

The glottal stop is often replaced by a softer sound, or omitted altogether, when it occurs in the middle or at the end of a word – particularly in casual speech. Consider the word ba'd 'then', which is pronounced ba:d in casual speech. To compensate for the loss of the glottal stop, the preceding vowel a is prolonged. (Note: The spelling is not affected.) It is this increased length of the vowel that distinguishes this word from: bad 'bad'. The hamze occurring between vowels may be replaced by y,

```
د ا ر ا ئـــى = دارائى asset dārā'i
د ا ر ا يـــى = دارايي asset dārāyi
```

or simply ignored resulting in a soft glide from the first vowel to the second, e.g.

being pronounced erāe. Spelling is not affected.

In the final position, it is completely ignored, even in spelling:

Note: Vowels occurring at the beginning of a word use the first letter of the alphabet $\,^{\dagger}$ alef or letter $\,^{\epsilon}$ ein as a 'carrier'. Since all vowels occurring nitially normally begin with a glottal stop regardless of the 'carrier' used, the use of the glottal stop symbol (`) in the initial position was considered unnecessary and therefore omitted from the English transcription.

So far, we have seen the last letter in the alphabet, **ye**, representing different vowels (see Table 2 on p. xxi). But it can also act as a consonant. When it does, it sounds like 'y' in such English words as: 'yes', 'you', 'yard'. What distinguishes 'east' from 'yeast' is the presence of the 'y' sound in the latter! The symbol used to represent Persian sound **s** is **y**. This sound can occur before a vowel or after a consonant or a 'glottal stop'. Examples:

```
ر ا = یا one yek

د ک = یک e یک one yek

کُاندادایی Canadian kānādāyi

نَاندادایی e کانادایی negation nafy (pronounced as one syllable)

ناند ف سی = نفی (pronounced as one syllable)

ساست عدی = سعی vote ra`y (pronounced as one syllable)
```

Other signs used in the Persian script

tssdid (gemination) = ()

Gemination is the double pronunciation of a sound (normally a consonant) within a word. The letter representing that sound is written only once, but with a **taŝdid** sign over it to show that the sound of that letter should be pronounced long. Examples:

Sometimes the presence of taŝdid creates a difference in meaning, as in:

```
a building banā بُ نَـا = بَنَا

builder bannā بُ نِنّا = بَنّا

female (animal) māde ماده

عداده = ماده substance, matter mādde
```

tanvin = (*)

This sign normally appears over an **alef** (†). The combination is pronounced **an.** Examples:

```
حــُ د و د أَ = حُدوداً about (in the region of) hodudan
تــقــر يـــــــاً = تَقريباً approximately taqriban
```

sokun = (*)

Normally placed over a consonant, this sign shows that the consonant is not followed by a vowel. It may be used to prevent confusion. For instance, to ensure that the English loanword 'mask' is pronounced correctly in Persian, i.e. as one syllable **māsk** (rather than **māsek**, etc.), a *sokun* may be placed over the **māsek**, thus:

```
ما سئ ک = ماسک mask mask
```

This sign has been used with the letter $v\bar{a}v$; to represent a w sound in the vowel ou, e.g.

The short alef = (')

Used in words of Arabic origin, this sign represents an $\bar{\mathbf{a}}$ sound. Its most common position is over letter ye (ε) The combination is pronounced $\bar{\mathbf{a}}$. Examples:

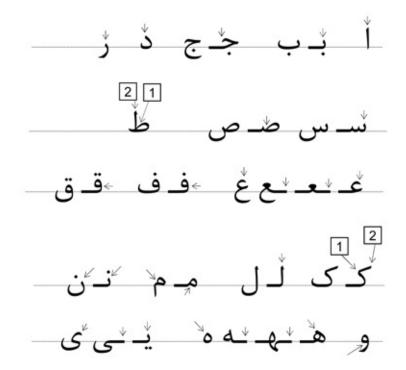
We have now covered all the various shapes of Persian vowels and consonants, as well as the other signs used in the script. Here are some brief guidelines for Persian writing.

Guidelines for Persian writing

The sample below shows three things: How to write each letter, i.e. where to begin (the arrow shows the starting point).

- 2 How to position each letter in relation to the 'carrier line' on which we write.
- 3 Proportions: how large or small each character should be.

Note: To economise on space, only the first member of each family of letters sharing the same skeleton is shown here.



Reading exercise The exercise below is to help revise all

of the above. Tables 1 and 2 on pp. xviii—xix and xxi may be used as a source of reference in the future and, if needed, when attempting the following exercise. (The answers are given at the end of 'Key to the exercises', p. 360.) Match the English-Persian equivalents.

,	e i	
1 hard saxt	25 boss ra`is	49 Pope pāp
2 e.g. masalan	26 photograph aks	50 AIDS eidz
3 nail mix	27 asphalt āsfālt	51 bottle botri
4 essence zāt	28 poor faqir	52 decision tasmim
5 sauce sos	29 Tehran tehrān	53 question so`āl
6 good xub	30 nine noh	54 responsible mas`ul
7 guarantor zāmen	31 gas gāz	55 hall hāl
8 five panj	32 rival harif	56 spoon qāŝoq
9 mask māsk	33 furniture mobl	57 cheque cek
10 yard yārd	34 lamp lāmp	58 passport pāsport
11 downside zir	35 shah ŝāh	59 atom atom
12 posing ĝest	36 size sāiz	60 often aqlab
13 a minor saqir	37 pilgrim hāji	61 building banā
14 service servis	38 greedy haris	62 asset dārā`i
15 parrot tuti	39 ill mariz	63 apex, head ra's
16 protection hefz	40 citizen t1be `	64 no na
17 tasty laziz	41 a blade tiq	65 oppressed mazlum
18 then ba'd	42 nearly taqriban	66 fuse fiuz
19 beard riŝ	43 hundred sad	67 morning sobh
20 oppression zolm	44 a fly magas	68 badness su`
21 signature emz1`	45 believer mo`men	69 child bacce
22 builder bannā	46 visa vizā	70 agent ma`mur
23 one third sols	47 kilo kilu	
24 asset dārāyi	48 absorption jazb	

ماسئک	صَد	ذات	تُصميم	أتُم
مُبل	صَغير	رَئيس	تَقريباً	آسفالت
مَثَلاً	ضامِن	رَأْس	تِهران	أغلَب
مَريض	طوطی	ريش	تيغ	اِمضاء
مَسئول	ظُلم	زير	ثُلث	اِيدز
مَظلوم	عَكس	ژِست	جَذب	بَچّه
مَگَس	فَقير	سُؤال	چک	بُطری
مُؤمِن	فيوز	سايز	حاجی	بَعد
ميخ	قاشُق	سَخت	حَريص	بَنا
نه	کیلو	سِرويس	حَريف	بَنّا
نُه	گاز	ىئىس	حِفظ	پاپ
ويزا	لامپ	سوء	خوب	پاسپورت
ھال	لَذيذ	شاه	دارائی	پَنج
يارد	مَأمور	صُبح	دارایی	تابِع

Unit One

سلام

salām

Greetings

In this unit we will look at how to:



- exchange greetings at various times of the day and say 'goodbye'
- introduce yourself
- say 'thank you'
- use the polite form for 'you', 'he', 'she'
- ask simple 'yes/no' questions in the present tense





Greeting and leave-taking (Audio1; 12)

It's 8 a.m. at the office. Members of staff greet each other briefly and go into their offices. Later in the evening, they say goodbye.

- A: سلام، صبح بهخیر.B: سلام، صبح بهخیر.
- A: خدا حافظ، شب بهخیر.B: خدا حافظ، شب بهخیر.

- salām. sob(h) be-xeir. A:
- B: salām. sob(h) be-xeir.
- xodā (h)āfez. ŝab be-xeir. A:
- xodā (h)āfez. ŝab be-xeir. B:

- A: Hello. Good morning.
- B: Hello. Good morning.
- A: Goodbye. Goodnight.
- B: Goodbye. Goodnight.



Language and culture notes



How to say 'good morning'

Here is the formula:

```
sob(h) morning + بهخیر be-xeir may it be good = مبح sob(h) be-xeir Good morning
```

The same formula can be used to say:

```
شب بهخیر sab be-xeir Goodnight شب بهخیر safar be-xeir (Have a) good journey
```

More formal:

```
روز بهخير Good day zohr be-xeir Good mid-day/noon asr be-xeir Good (late) afternoon
```

Note: Younger people are expected to say مسلام salām 'hello' first.

Exercise 1

Match a letter with a number. Follow the example.

```
[b] (a) night
         salām سلام
salām [ ] (b) morning

$ab [ ] (c) hello

xodā hāfez [ ] (d) good morning

sob(h) be-xeir [ ] (e) goodnight
                                      [ ] (b) morning
sab be-xeir [ ] (f) goodbye شب به خیر
```

Exercise 2

Can you say these in Persian?

- Good day. 1
- 2 Good afternoon.
- 3 (Have a) good journey.
- Good mid-day/noon. 4



National introducing yourself (Audio1; 14)

Mr Reza Hooshangi (H) has just been called by the information desk officer (O) at the airport in Tehran.

- H: سلام خانم.
- صلام آقا. بفرمایید.
- н: ببخشید، من هوشنگی هستم. رضا هوشنگی.
 - ٥: آها بله، این تلفن برای شماست.
 - H: مرسى خانم. الو؟ ...

- H: salām xānom.
- O: salām āgā. befarmāyid.
- H: bebaxŝid, man huŝangi hastam. rezā huŝangi.
- O: āhā bale, in telefon barāye ŝomāst.
- H: mersi xānom. alou? ...
- H: Hello madam.
- O: Hello sir. What can I do for your?
- H: Sorry (to bother you). I am Hooshangi. Reza Hooshangi.
- O: Ah yes, this telephone call's for you.
- H: Thank you madam. Hello? ...

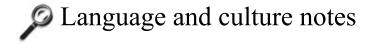
ÇB

Vocabulary

خانم	xānom	madam	
آقا	āqā	sir, gentleman	
بفرماييد	befarmäyid	Please go ahead. OR: What can I do for you?*	
ببخشيد	bebaxŝid	sorry, forgive (me)*	
من	man	1	
هوشنگی	huŝangi	Hooshangi (surname)	
رضا	rezā	Reza (male name)	

```
hastam هستم
                            (I) am
           āhā
                            Ah, Aha, Oh
           bale
                            yes
                            this
                            telephone (call)
           telefon
           barāye
                            for
                            you (f)
barāye ŝomāst (it)'s for you
          mersi
                            thanks
        alou الو
                            hello (telephone)
           budan
                            to be
                            fine, good, well
                            is (normally emphatic)
           ammā
                            but
                            s/he (polite); (originally) they
      xānom-e خانم
                            Ms/Mrs
      äqāye آقاي
                            Mr
  xoŝ-hāl خوشحال
                            happy
      peiqām ييغام
                            message
      hedye هدیه
                            present, gift
           baste
                            parcel, gift
           kāmrān
                            Kamran (male name or surname)
    كامران
                            Ahmadi (surname)
           ahmadi
           belit
                            ticket
                            too, also
                            very; many; much
                            obliged, grateful
           mamnun
```

^{*}Both of these are 'imperative' forms. For a grammatical explanation, please see 'Imperative' on pp. 93ff, 100ff, 374.



Personal pronouns

من	man	1	ما	mā	we
تو	to	you (inf)	شما	ŝomā	you (f, pl
او	u	he, she	آنها	ānhā	they
آن	ān	it, that	0		

Verb 'to be' in the present simple tense

How to say 'I am fine'; 'you are fine'; etc.

Verb بودن **budan** 'to be'

```
من خوب هستم.
                    man xub hastam.
                                           I am fine.
                    to xub hasti.
                                           You (inf) are fine.
  تو خوب هستي.
   او خوب است.
                                           He/She is fine.
                    u xub ast.
   آن خوب است.
                    ān xub ast.
                                           It/That is fine.
  ما خوب هستيم.
                    mā xub hastim.
                                           We are fine.
                                           You are fine.
شما خوب هستند.
                    ŝomā xub hastid.
آنها خوب هستند.
                                           They are fine.
                    ānhā xub hastand.
```

The verb normally comes at the end of the sentence.

The word ast is the normal equivalent for the English word 'is' when there is no emphasis on it. However, when the English word 'is' does carry a stress for emphasis, its Persian equivalent would be hast. Compare:

```
او د کتر است. U doktor ast. S/he is a doctor. [No stress on 'is'] او د کتر هست امّا ... S/he <u>is</u> a doctor but . . . [e.g. s/he doesn't have a surgery.]
```

After some vowels (such as \bar{a}) ast 'is' often loses its vowel. Thus, som \bar{a} 'you' followed by ast becomes som \bar{a} st, as in this sentence from Dialogue 2:

```
.تىن تلفن براى شماست. in telefon barāye ŝomāst.
This telephone call's for you. (Note a similar shortening of 'is' in the English translation.)
```

In colloquial Persian, the sequence of sounds **ān** is often pronounced **un**. Thus, نا **ān** 'that'/'it' and اون **ānhā** 'they' will be written as اون **un** and اون **unhā** in this book to reflect their colloquial pronunciation. Similarly, the sound combination **ām** is often pronounced **um** in some words, e.g. کدام **kodām**

'which' and أرام **ārām** 'calm', which are pronounced كدوم **kodum** and أروم **ārum** respectively.

Polite forms of 'you', 'he', 'she'

to 'you' and its verb forms are generally used among children and between close friends and relatives of similar age or social status (spouses, siblings). دماه somā 'you' and its verb forms are used between strangers and those who have a formal relationship, such as business people in formal meetings. A senior in age or status may use خوب to, and receive مما somā, when talking with a junior (compare with French tu and vous). If unsure, use somā.

A more polite form for و u 'he'/'she', would be ايشون i**sun** used with a plural verb form. For example, when introducing Ms or Mr Johnson, we can say:

```
ایشون خانم جانسون هستند. iŝun xānom-e jānson hastand.
She is Ms Johnson.
ایشون آقای جانسون هستند. iŝun āqāye jānson hastand.
He is Mr Johnson.
```

Note: A direct Persian translation of 'This is Ms/Mr Johnson' would be impolite in this context. It would, however, be acceptable when introducing a person in a photograph (see U2D2).

Questions

While a statement has a falling tone, a 'yes/no' question uses a rising tone, as in English. Unlike English, no change in word order is necessary. Compare:

```
شما دکتر هستید. (Falling tone) somā doktor hastid. You are a doctor. (Falling tone) somā doktor hastid? Are you a doctor? (Rising tone)
```



Using the information in the box on p. 6, replace the word ** xub 'fine' with

xoŝ-hāl 'happy', to produce the Persian equivalents of 'I am happy'; 'you are happy', and so on.



Can you say these in Persian?

- 1 Hello sir. I am Peter Brown.
- 2 Oh yes, this message is for you.
- 3 This present is for you.
- 4 This present is for Mr Ahmadi.
- 5 This parcel is for Ms Ahmadi.
- 6 This is Ms Ahmadi. (introducing)
- 7 This is Mr Kamram. (introducing)
- 8 Are you Ms Johnson?

Comprehension (Audio1; 16)

A has just called into a travel agency. B is the travel agent.

- A: سلام أقا.
- B: سلام خانم. عصر به خیر. بفرمایید.
- A: عصر بهخیر. ببخشید، شما آقای کامران هستید؟
 - B: بله، بفرمایید.
 - A: من احمدی هستم.
- B: آها بله، خانم احمدی، این بلیت برای شماست. این پیغام هم برای
 - A: خیلی ممنون.
 - B: سفر بهخیر.
 - A: مرسى. خدا حافظ.
 - B: خدا حافظ.

- A: salām āqā.
- B: salām xānom. asr be-xeir. befarmāyid.
- A: asr be-xeir. bebaxŝid, ŝomā āqāye kāmrān hastid?
- B: bale, befarmāyid.
- A: man ahmadi hastam.
- B: āhā bale, xānom-e ahmadi, in belit barāye ŝomāst. in peiqām ham barāye ŝomāst.
- A: xeili mamnun.
- B: safar be-xeir.
- A: mersi. xodā hāfez.
- B: xodā hāfez.
- 1 What time of the day is it?
- 2 What does A want to know?
- Who is A? (What's her name?)
- 4 What two things is B offering A?
- 5 What is B wishing?

Unit Two

احوالپرسى

ahvālporsi

Enquiring about health

In this unit we will look at how to:



- say 'How are you?' and respond to a similar question
- introduce yourself, say 'Pleased to meet you', and reciprocate
- enquire about other people
- express possession



Dialogue 1



How're you? (Audio1; 17)

Bahman (B) is ringing his close friend Ali (A). Here are extracts from their conversation.

- 9 all :A
- B: على جان، سلام.
- A: سلام، چطوری؟
- B: خوبم، مرسى. تو چطورى؟
- A: بد نیستم، مرسی. بابا چطورند؟ مامان خوبند؟
- B: بد نیستند، ممنون. شما چطورید؟ خانواده خوبند؟
 - A: همه خوبند، مرسی. خب، احمد چطوره؟
 - B: یک کم خسته است.
 - A: از چی؟ از زندگی؟
 - B: نه بابا! از کار! خیلی تنبله.

[a few minutes later]

- B: خب، فعلاً خدا حافظ.
 - A: خدا حافظ.

- A: alou?
- B: ali jān, salām.
- A: salām, ceto(u)ri?
- B: xubam, mersi. to ceto(u)ri?
- A: bad nistam, mersi. bābā ceto(u)rand? māmān xuband?
- B: bad nistand, mersi.ŝomā ceto(u)rid? Xānevāde xuband?
- A: hame xuband, mersi. xob, ahmad ceto(u)re?
- B: yek kam xaste ast [xastast].
- A: az ci? az zendegi?
- B: na bābā! az kār! xeili tanbale.

[a few minutes later]

- A: xob, fe(`)lan xodā (h)āfez.
- A: Hello?
- B: (lit) Dear Ali, hello.
- A: Hello, how're you?
- B: I'm fine, thank you. How're you? [singular, informal]
- A: I'm not bad, thanks. How's [your] dad? Is [your] mum well?
- B: They're not bad, thanks. How're you [plural, i.e. people on your side]? Are [your] family well?
- A: They're all fine, thanks. So, how's Ahmad?
- B: *He's a little tired.*
- A: Of what? Of life?
- B: Oh no! [He's tired] of work! He's very lazy.

[a few minutes later]

- B: Goodbye.
- A: *OK, goodbye for now.*



CB Vocabulary

على	ali	male name
جان	jān	dear
چطور	ceto(u)r	how
چطوری	ceto(u)ri	how're you (inf)
خوب	xub	good, well, fine
خوبم	xubam	I'm fine
بد	bad	bad
نيستم	nistam	I'm not
بابا	bābā	dad
چطورند	ceto(u)rand	how's s/he (f)
مامان	māmān	mum, mom
خوبند	xuband	s/he's well (f)
نيستند	nistand	they're not
ممنون	mamnun	grateful; thank you; thank
چطورید	ceto(u)rid	how're you (plural)
خانواده	xānevāde	family
خوبند	xuband	they're well
همه	hame	all

خب	xob	So; OK (then)
احمد	ahmad	male name
چطوره	ceto(u)re	how's
یک	yek	a, an; one
کم	kam	little
خسته	xaste	tired
از	az	of; from
چی	ci	what
زندگی	zendegi	life
نه	na	no
نه بابا!	na bābā!	Oh no! [Certainly not! No way!
کار	kār	work
خیلی	xeili	very
تنبل	tanbal	lazy
N. i	fe`lan	for now

Language and culture notes Q



COHU ACHOH

How to say 'I'm fine', 'you're fine', etc.

Verb بودن **budan** 'to be' in reduced form

```
(man) xub-am.
                                        I'm fine.
  (من) خوبم.
   (تو) خوبي.
                  (to) xub-i.
                                        You're fine. (sing, inf)
    (او) خوبه.
                  (u) xub-e.
                                       He/She's fine.
  (اون) خوبه.
                  (un) xub-e.
                                        It/That's fine.
                  (mā) xub-im.
                                        We're fine.
  (ما) خوبيم.
(شما) خوبید.
                  (ŝomā) xub-id.
                                       You're fine. (pl/f)
(اونها) خوبند.
                  (unhā) xub-and.
                                        They're fine.
```

In the box above, what comes after the word with the reduced forms of the verb budan 'to be' introduced on p. 6 – compare. They also act as **personal endings** for other verbs. Since these endings indicate 'person', the personal pronouns are often omitted as redundant – hence the brackets. These unstressed endings are *very important* and must be learned at an early stage.

Note: In casual speech, the second-and third-person plural endings -id and -and are slightly modified as -in and -an, respectively. So, here are the more casual forms of the last two lines in the box on p. 13:

```
(شما) خوبين. (somā) xub-in. You're fine. (unhā) xub-an. They're fine.
```

To avoid confusion, these casual forms will not be used in this book. For added clarity, and only at this introductory stage, these endings have been written after a hyphen (–) in the English transcription. However, in the rest of the book, they will appear without a hyphen to reflect the Persian spelling. Exercise 1 below should provide good practice.

Exercise 1

Using the box on p. 13, replace the word خوث **xub** 'fine' with خوث **xoŝ-hāl** 'happy', to produce the Persian equivalents of 'I'm happy', 'you're happy', and

so on. Example:

```
(من) خوش حالم. (man) xoŝ-hālam. I'm happy.
```

Note: Two vowels do not normally follow each other 'comfortably' within the same word – they create an inconvenient sound known as a 'glottal stop' (see pp. xxxi–xxxiii). [Try saying 'a egg' in English!] So, we either put a buffer between them (e.g. a soft y sound) or get rid of one of the vowels, often the shorter one. Reduced forms of the verb אפנים budan 'to be' (see the box on p. 13) begin with a vowel. So, if the word before them ends in a vowel, such adjustment is normally made. The most notorious of these vowels are \(\bar{1}\) \(\bar{a}\) and \(\bar{e}\) e, as demonstrated in the two following boxes.

*Note: For the third person singular ('s/he, it') the original ast is used with a slight modification.

Reduced forms of verb 'to be' after the vowel أ ā (e.g. اينجا injā here)

```
man injām l'm here
كراية المنابع المن
```

Reduced forms of verb 'to be' after vowel • e (e.g. گرسنه gorosne hungry)

```
man gorosn(e)am l'm hungry
to gorosnei You're hungry
* u gorosn(e)ast S/he's hungry
mā gorosneim We're hungry
شما گرسنهاید
sôomā gorosneid You're hungry
unhā gorosn(e)and They're hungry
```

Negative forms of the verb 'to be' in the present tense

How to say 'I am not', 'you are not', and so on.

Negative forms of verb אניט budan 'to be'

Note: Unlike English, the Persian verb بون **budan** 'to be' has no reduced negative forms. Therefore, ما سنيستيم **mā ... nistim** would be an equivalent to these English sentences:

```
We are not ...; We aren't ...; We're not ...
```



We all had lunch an hour ago. None of us are گرسنه **gorosne** 'hungry' now. Complete the following sentences to express this.

1	I am not hungry. Example: من گرسنه نیستم.
	man gorosne nistam.
2	w ā gorosne We are not hungry.
3	You are not hungry. (<i>inf</i>)
4	اون ها گرسنه unhā gorosne They are not hungry.
5	You are not hungry. شما گرسنه
6	او گرسنه u gorosne S/he is not hungry.

Questions

While a statement has a falling tone, a 'yes'/'no' question uses a rising tone, as in English. Unlike English, no change in word order is necessary.

```
$omā xubid. You're good/well/fine/OK. (falling)

Somā xubid? Are you good/well/fine/OK? (rising)

Somā xasteid? Are you tired? (rising)

Are you tired? (rising)

Are you (a) doctor? (rising)
```

As in English, questions beginning with the following question words have a falling tone.

چه	ce	what	چى	ci	what (col)
کی	ki	who	کی	kei	when
چرا	cerā	why	كدوم	kodum	which
چطور	ceto(u)r	how	چگونه	cegune	how (more literary)
كجا	kojā	where	کو	ku	Where is it? (col)
چند	cand	how many	چندتا	cand tā	how many (more
					col)
چقدر	ceqadr	how much	چند وقت	cand vaqt	how long

Note: The above question words normally carry the sentence stress. After cand tā/cand 'how many', the noun takes a singular form.

چيه؟	cie?	What is it?
کیه؟	kie?	Who is it/he/she?
چطوره؟	ceto(u)re?	How is it/he/she?
كْجاييد؟	kojāyid?	Where are you?
چندتا ماشین؟	cand tā māŝin?	How many cars?

Exercise 3

Can you say these in Persian?

1	How're you? (inf)	I'm not bad, thank you.
2	How're you? (f)	I'm a little tired.
3	How's Mum/Dad?	S/he's fine, thanks.
4	How're the family?	They're fine, thanks.
5	How's Parviz?	He's fine, thanks.

Are you OK/well/fine? 6 I'm fine, thanks.

Are you tired? 7 No, I'm not. I'm a bit hungry



Pleased to meet you! (Audio1; 20)

Ahmadi (A) is mingling among his guests. He's just met a new face (B).

A: سلام. من احمدی هستم. اسم شما چیه؟

B: سلام. من بهزادی هستم.

A: خب، حالتون چطوره؟

B: خوبم، مرسى. شما چطورید؟

A: بد نیستم، ممنون.

[pointing to some pictures on the wall, B asks]

A: اون یدرمه.

اند! پدرتون ماشاءالله خیلی خوش تیپاند!

B: این خانم کیه؟

A: اون مادرمه.

salām. man ahmadi hastam. esm-e ŝomā cie? A:

salām. man behzādi hastam. B:

xoŝ-vaqtam. A:

man (h)am hamin-to(u)r. B:

xob, hāletun ceto(u)re? A:

xubam, mersi.ŝomā ceto(u)rid? B:

A: bad nistam, mamnun.

[pointing to some pictures on the wall, B asks]

- B: ināqā kie?
- A: un pedarame.
- B: pedaretun māŝā(a)llā(h) xeili xoŝ-tipand!
- A: xeili mamnun.
- B: in xānom kie?
- A: un mādarame.
- A: Hello. I am Ahmadi. What's your name?
- B: Hello. I am Behzadi.
- A: I'm pleased (to meet you).
- B: Same here. (or; Me too.)
- A: So, how're you? (lit How's your health?)
- B: I'm fine, thank you. How' re you?
- A: I'm not bad, thank you.

[pointing to some pictures on the wall, B asks]

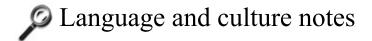
- B: Who's this gentleman?
- A: That's my father.
- B: Your father is very handsome, may God preserve him!
- A: Thanks very much.
- B: Who's this lady?
- A: That's my mother.

Vocabulary



احمدي	ahmadi	Ahmadi (family name)
اسم	esm	name
چی	ci	what
چیه	cie	what's
بهزادي	behzādi	Behzadi (family name)
خوشوقت	xoŝ-vaqt	pleased
خوشوقتم	xoŝ-vaqtam	I'm pleased
هم	ham	too, also
همينطور	hamin-to(u)r	same way
حال	hāl	health
حالتون	häletun	your health
ممنون	mamnun	grateful, obliged
این	in	this
آقا	āqā	gentleman
کی	ki	who
کیه	kie	who's (who is)
اون	un	that
پدر	pedar	father
يدرم	pedaram	my father

پدرتون	pedaretun	your father
ماشاءائله	māŝā(a)llā(h)	May God preserve him
خیلی	xeili	very
خوشتيپ	xoŝ-tib	handsome
خانم	xānom	lady
مادر	mādar	mother
مادرم	mādaram	my mother
أپارتمان	āpārtemān	flat, apartment
كامپيوتر	kāmpiuter	computer
آدرس	ādres	address
ملیّت	melliyat	nationality
شماره تلفن	ŝomāre telefon	telephone number
تاريخ	tārix	date
تولّد	tavallod	birth
تاريخ تولّد	tārix-e tavallod	date of birth
9	va (col o)	and



Complimenting

It is generally unacceptable for a man to compliment another man on the appearance of his female folks (wife, sister, mother, etc.). A socially acceptable compliment is normally preceded by the Arabic phrase māŝā(a)llā(h). Literally, it means 'Whatever God wills' but functionally it is intended to ward off the evil eye!

Politeness

We use plural verb forms when talking about an older person. Examples:

The magical functions of 'ezāfe'

Here is an exciting piece of Persian grammar. It is efficient, consistent and easy to learn. Compare it with English, and judge for yourself!

Put simply, **ezāfe** is the vowel sound **e** which is normally added to a noun. When you add **ezāfe** to a word, you are in fact sending the following message to your listener:

I'm going to give you more information about the word you have just heard!

Here is the generic formula for the use of $\mathbf{ez\bar{a}fe}$: NOUN + \mathbf{e} + more information

In the English transcription, **ezāfe** will be shown as **-e**.

Note: ezāfe does not carry a stress.

Some of the main functions of ezāfe are outlined below.

Expressing possession: How to say 'your name'

Formula: Belonging + e + owner

Examples:

تلفنِ جک telefon-e jak Jack's telephone تلفنِ شما telefon-e ŝomā your telephone (f) esm-e ŝomā your name (f)

Exercise 4

Can you give the Persian equivalents of these phrases using **ezāfe?** Follow the example.

1	My car	ماشین من	māŝin-e man
2	My telephone		
3	His/her name		
4	Our flat/apartment		
5	Their computer		

Linking a forename to a surname

With foreign names, no linking sound is normally added:

Linking two nouns

Examples:

the film Titanic فيلمِ تايتنيک xiābān-e āksford Oxford Street
ميدانِ آکسفورد meidān-e āksford Oxford Circus
ميدانِ آکسفورد meidān-e rāsel Russell Squre

Vanak Square (Tehran)
محلِ تولّد mahall-e tavallod place of birth
ل tārix-e tavallod birthday celebration/party

Linking a noun and an adjective

Formula: noun + e + adjective

Examples:

ilm-e bad bad film bad film bad film bad film bad film mobile telephone telefon-e hamegāni public telephone آپارتمان قشنگ apārtemān-e qaŝang nice apartment/flat

Note: Regardless of its function, **ezāfe** is slightly modified as **ye** when it comes after a vowel.

سینما	sinemā	cinema
سینما <i>ی</i> ایران	sinemā-ye irān	Iran's cinema
جا	jā	place/seat
جاي شما	jā-ye ŝomā	your place/seat
بابا	bābā	dad
بابایِ خوب	bābā-ye xub	good dad
مو	mu	hair
موي من	mu-ye man	my hair
خونه	xune	house
خونهي ما	xune-ye mā	our house
شماره	ŝomāre	number
شمارهي تلفن	ŝomāre-ye telefon	telephone number



Choose a word from each set and make pairs using the appropriate form of

ezāfe. The first two have been done for you.

	Set (a)					Set (b)			
	filr فيلم		film			بد	bad	bad	
			dad			خوب	xub	good	
	0-		car			بلند	boland	long	
	mı مو		hair			بزرگ	bozorg		
	0 .		clothe	s, dres	SS	مشكى	meŝki	black	
	bu بو		smell			بور شیک	bur	blond(e)	
	xu خونه	ne	house			شيک	ŝik	chic	
1	Bad fil	m		=	م بد	فيل		film-e bac	d
2	Good o	lad		=	فوب	بابای -		bābā-ye x	ub
3	Black	car		=					
4	Blond(e) ha	air	=					
5	Chic d	ress		=					
6	Good s	mel	l	=					
7	Long h	air		=					
8	Large l	nous	e	=					

Possessive endings

We can also show possession by using the following (unstressed) **possessive** endings. Here, they are used with the word you sup 'soup'.

سويَم	supam	my soup
سويت	supet	your soup (inf)
سوپش	supeŝ	his/her/its soup
سوپمون	supemun	our soup
سوپتون	supetun	your soup (f)
سويشون	supeŝun	their soup

In literary Persian, some of the above are written and pronounced slightly differently:

```
سوپَت supat your soup (inf)

supaŝ his/her/its soup

supemān our soup

supetān your soup (f)

supeŝān their soup
```

The pattern *حالتون چطوره hāletun ceto(u)re? 'how're you?' in Dialogue 2 above literally means 'How's your health?' The word for 'health' is حال hāl.



Repeat Exercise 4 using appropriate possessive endings. Follow the example.

1	My car	ماشينم	māŝinam
2	My telephone		
3	His/her name		
4	Our flat/apartment		
5	Their computer		

How to say 'mine', 'yours', and so on

Ezāfe is also used to produce **possessive pronouns**. For example:

مال	māl	property
مال من	māl-e man	mine (lit property of me)
مال شما	māl-e ŝomā	yours (lit property of you)
مالؑ کی	māl-e ki	whose (lit property of whom

Demonstratives

How to say 'this'/'these'; 'that'/'those'

Examples:

این چیه؟ in cie? What's this?

dun telefone. That's/it's (a) telephone.

for intelefone māl-e kie? Whose telephone is this?

(lit Whose property is this telephone?)

un telefon māl-e That telephone is mine

Note how we say 'these/those telephones' in Persian:

این/ اون تلفنها in/un telefonhā these/those telephones (lit this/that telephones)

(For plural markers, see pp. 33ff.)

How to say 'so/nor am I', 'so/nor do I', 'so/nor have I', and so on

For all the above, and other similar ones, Persian uses:

man (h)am hamin-to(u)r Same here (lit l also in the same way)

Note: The only part that changes is the subject:

ما هم همينطور mā ham hamin-to(u)r So are we, etc. ali ham hamin-to(u)r So is Ali, etc.

Exercise 7

Respond to the statements in Persian. Follow the example

I'm hungry.

1	So am I.	من هم همينطور.	man ham hamin-to(u)r
2	So are we.		
3	So is Peter.		

I live in London.					
4	So do I.				
5	So does s/he.				
I'v	e seen <i>Titanic</i> .				
6	So have I.				
I di	dn't sleep well last	night.			
7	Nor did we.				
I w	on't come to this r	estaurant again	!		
8	Nor will I.				
T.	Exercise 8				
Coı	mplete these question	ons with the help	of the English translations.		
1	cie?ديه؟	What's your na	me? (f)		
	Example: متون چیه؟	esmetun cie?	What's your name? (f)		
2	cie? ?عیه cie	What's his/her	address?		
3	cie?عيه؟	What's their na	tionality?		
4	cie?ديه؟	What's your da	te of birth? (f)		
5	caı	nde? What's you	or phone number? (inf)		
Exercise 9					
Can you say these in Persian?					
1	How's your mothe	r?	She's fine, thanks.		
2	What's your job?		I'm a doctor.		
2	T 7 M 1 1 1 1	•	TP1 1		

Y our flat is pretty/nice. I nank you. 3

4 Who's this? That's my brother.

What's that? It's my lunch. 5

Where's your car? It's here. Where's yours? 6

Whose car is this? It's mine. 7

Comprehension (Audio1; 22)

This morning, B, a Londoner, received a phone call from an Iranian colleague, Ahmad Kazemi (A).

- A: سلام. احمد كاظمى هستم.

- د. نه، پدر، مادر، خواهر و برادرم هم اینجا هستند. B: هتلتون کجاست؟ A: خیابان ریجنت. نزدیک میدان آکسفورد. B: هتل چطوره؟ A: بد نیست. کوچکه امّا قشنگه.

- salām. ahmad-e kāzemi hastam. A:
- salām, hāletun ceto(u)re? B:
- xubam, mersi. hāl-e ŝomā ceto(u)re? A:
- bad nistam, mersi. kojāyid? B:
- landan. A:
- В: kodum hotel?
- hotel(-e) tehrān. A:
- tanhāyid? B:
- na, pedar, mādar, xāhar va barādaram ham injā hastand. A:
- hoteletun kojāst? B:

- A: xiābān-e rijent. nazdik-e meidān-e āksford.
- B: hotel ceto(u)re?
- A: bad nist. kuceke ammā qaŝange.
- 1 From which city is a phoning?
- 2 Who is he with?
- Where is he staying?
- 4 What do we know about the location/landmarks?
- 5 How does he feel about the accommodation?

Unit Three

کجایی هستید؟

kojāyi hastid?

Where are you from?

In this unit we will look at how to:



- seek and give personal details: gender, nationality, marital status,
- place of birth, hobbies, occupation, place of work introduce B to C
- pay, and respond to, compliments
- talk about age
- use numbers



Dialogue 1



Party game: Who am I? (Audio1; 23)

At an Iranian party held in London, each guest is given the picture of a well-known figure. The winner will be the first person to identify another guest by merely asking questions.

- A: شما زن هستید؟
 - B: نه.
 - 4: مليتتون چيه؟
- в: بریتانیایی هستم.
 - A: شما متأهليد؟
 - B: بله.
- A: خانمتون کجایی هستند؟
 - B: اون هم بریتانیاییه.
- A: محل تولدتون كجاست؟
 - B: لندن.
 - A: سرگرمی هاتون چیه؟
- в: موسیقی، ورزش، مطالعه.
 - A: کارتون چیه؟
 - B: كارمند هستم.
 - A: محل کارتون کجاست؟
- اندن، خیابان داونینگ، پلاکاندن، خیابان داونینگ، پلاک
 - A: شما نخستوزیر هستید؟
 - B: بله، متشكّرم.

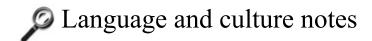
- A: ŝomā zan hastid?
- B: na.
- A: melliyatetun cie?
- B: beritāniāyi hastam.
- A: ŝomā mota`ahhelid?
- B: bale.
- A: xānometun kojāyi hastand?
- B: un (h)am beritāniāyie.
- A: mahall-e tavallodetun kojāst?
- B: landan.
- A: sargarmihātun cie?
- B: musiqi, varzeŝ, motāle'e.
- A: kāretun cie?
- B: kārmand hastam.
- A: mahall-e kāretun kojāst?

- B: landan, xiābān-e dāwning, pelāk-e dah.
- A: ŝomā noxost-vazir hastid?
- B: bale, mot(a)ŝakkeram.
- A: Are you a woman?
- B: *No*.
- A: What's your nationality?
- B: I'm British.
- A: Are you married?
- B: Yes.
- A: Where does your wife come from?
- B: *She too is British*.
- A: Where's your place of birth?
- B: London.
- A: What are your hobbies?
- B: Music, sport, reading.
- A: What's your job?
- B: I'm a (civil) servant.
- A: Where's your place of work?
- B: London, Downing Street, No. 10.
- A: Are you the Prime Minister?
- B: Yes, thank you.

Vocabulary



زن	zan	woman
ته	na	no
مليّت	melliyat	nationality
چى	ci	what
چیه	cie	what's
بريتانيايي	beritāniāyi	British
متأهل	mota`ahhel	married
بله	bale	yes
خانم	xānom	wife, madam
كجا	kojā	where
كجايى	kojāyi	where from
هم	ham	too, also
محل	mahall	place
تولّد	tavallod	birth
كجاست	kojāst	where's
لندن	landan	London
سر گرمی	sargarmi	hobby
سرگرمیها	sargarmihā	hobbies
موسيقى	musiqi	music
ورزش	varzeŝ	sport
مطالعه	motāle`e	reading
کار	kār	job, work
كارمند	kārmand	(civil) servant
خيابان	xiābān	street
خیابان داونینگ	xiābān-e dāwning	Downing Street
پلاک	pelāk	(house) number
نخستوزير	noxost-vazir	Prime Minister
متشكّر	mot(a)ŝakker	thankful, grateful



How to describe nationality

Here is the formula:

```
Place name + ن البران → Native of that place
البران irān | Iran → البران irān | Iran البران irān | Irani | Iranian | Iranian | انگلیس engelis | England → انگلیس eskātland | Scotland | اسکاتلندی وskātland | Pakistan | Pakistani | Pakistani | Pakistani | Pakistani | نالستان gāpon | Japan → نالستان gāpon | Japanese
```

When a name ends in a vowel, the ending -yi is used:

```
beritāniā Britain → بريتانيا beritāniāyi British بريتانيا āmrikā America → أمريكايى Āmrikāyi American أمريكا

kānādā Canada → كانادايى kānādāyi Canadian كانادا osterāliā Australia
```

If a place name already ends in **i**, the following forms may be used:

```
ليبى libi Libya →
1 ليبيايى libiāyi Libyan (person)
2 اهل ليبى
3 ساختُ ليبى sāxt-e libi made in Libya
```

Word stress is shifted over to the suffix in all the above cases.



Fill in the right column. Follow the example.

```
Place name Native

1 تهرانی tehrān Tehran تهرانی tehrāni From Tehran لندن landan London Londoner

2 پاریس pāris Paris Paris Parisian

4 مشهد maŝhad Mashhad From Mashhad From Esfahan

5 اصفهان esfahān Esfahan From Esfahan
```

Exercise 2

You have met a Persian speaker at a social gathering. Find out:

1 If he/she is Iranian.

- 2 If he/she is married.
- Where he/she was born.
- 4 Where he/she works.
- 5 Where his wife/her husband comes from.
- 6 What his/her hobbies are.

Plural of nouns

The most common way to make a noun plural is by adding the suffix har. -hā:

```
telefonhā telephone تلفن telefonhā telephones تلفن sargarmi hobby → سرگرمی sargarmihā hobbies
```

With inanimate nouns, the verb can take a singular form:

The h of the plural marker is often dropped in speech, hence the brackets in the English transcription above.

For animate nouns, the suffix $\sqrt{-a}$ -an (or $\sqrt{-y}$ -yan after a vowel) is normally used in more formal contexts.

```
مردان mard man مردان mardān men دوست dust friend دوستان dustān friends قاقایان āqā gentleman دانشجویان dāneŝju students
```

Adjectives can also be pluralised in Persian:

```
خوب xub good خوبان xubān the good (i.e. good people)
bozorg big; great بزرگان bozorgān great people
```

The plural endings introduced above carry the word stress.



Write the plural of these nouns. Follow the example.

		āpārtemān	flat	غ آپارتمانها → āpārte	emānhā flats
2	ماشين	māŝin	car	→	cars
3	روزنامه	ruznāme	newspaper	\rightarrow	newspapers
4	ايراني	irāni	Iranian	→	Iranians
5	دوست	dust	friend	→	friends
6	خوشرو	xoŝ-ru	friendly	→	friendly people



Can you say these in Persian?

- 1 Where are you from?
- 2 I'm from London/Manchester.
- 3 I'm Italian/German/Spanish/French.
- 4 My place of birth is London/Paris/New York.
- 5 My hobbies are music and reading.
- 6 My watch is made in Japan.





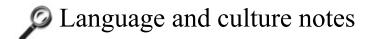
Introducing B to C (Audio1; 25)

Mr Ahmadi (A) has invited his colleague, Mr Morris (B), for dinner. a introduces Mr Morris to his wife, Shahin (C).

- آقای موریس همکارم (هستند)، و ایشون خانمم هستند.

 - ت خوشوقتم.
 عن هم همینطور. آپارتمان قشنگی دارید.
 متشکّرم. لطف دارید.
- āgā-ye moris hamkāram (hastand), va iŝun xānomam hastand. A:
- xoŝvaqtam. C:
- man (h)am hamin-to(u)r. āpārtemān-e qaŝangi dārid. B:
- mot(a)ŝakkeram. lotf dārid. C:
- Mr Morris (is) my colleague, and this (lit she) is my wife. A:
- I'm pleased (to meet you). C:
- So am I. You have a nice flat. B:
- Thank you. That's very kind of you (lit You have kindness). C:

Voca			AB
آقای	āqā-ye	Mr	C.
همكار	hamkār	colleague	
ايشون	iŝun	he, she (pol)	
خانم	xānom	wife	
خوشوقت	xoŝvaqt	pleased	
أپارتمان	āpārtemān	apartment, flat	
قشنگ	qaŝang	nice, pretty	
داريد	dārid	you have	
داشتن (دار)	dāŝtan (dār)	to have	
متشكّر	mot(a)ŝakker	grateful	
لطف	lotf	kindness	



The verb 'to have'

All Persian verbs (infinitives) end with these two sounds -an, e.g. budan 'to be', dāŝtan 'to have'. Persian verbs have two stems (or roots): present stem and past stem, used for present and past tenses, respectively. The past stem is regularly obtainable from the infinitive by omitting the last two sounds -an. The present stem of most verbs is irregular. Therefore, with every new verb introduced, its present stem is placed in round brackets after it. (Note: Where applicable, the literary form of a present stem will appear in square brackets.)

```
بودن (هست) budan (hast) to be (For this verb, see p. 6.) dāŝtan (dār) to have
```

To say 'I have', 'you have', etc., in Persian, follow this formula: Present stem + Personal ending (For personal endings, see pp. 13ff.)

```
man māŝin dāram. I have (a) car.
You (inf) have (a) car.
You (inf) have (a) car.
He/she (inf) has
(a) car.

mā māŝin dārim.
We have (a) car.
You have (a) car.
You have (a) car.
They have (a) car.
They have (a) car.
```

To make this verb negative, add ina- to the beginning:

```
man māŝin I don't have (a) car.
nadāram.
```

Note: The stress is shifted over to ina-.

As will be seen below, we do not need the Persian equivalent of 'a' (indefinite article) for this pattern. Hence, the word 'a' appears in brackets in the English translations.

The verb داشتن dāŝtan 'to have' is used to talk about age, for example:

```
من ۲۰ سال دارم. man bist sāl dāram.
I am 20 years old. (lit I have twenty year(s).)

$\frac{\partial \text{somā cand sāl dārid?}}{\text{man you?}}$

How old are you? (lit How many year(s) do you have?)
```

Note: Nouns following numbers come in the singular.

Exercise 5

Match a letter with a number to produce the equivalents of 'I have', 'you have', etc. Follow the example.

```
1 من man [c] (a) دارى dāri
2 تو to [] (b) تو dārim
3 داريم (c) (c) او dāram
4 داريد (d) (c) ما طقتاط
5 ما $$ somā [] (e) دارند dārand
6 داره (f) (e) اهنها dāre
```

Exercise 6

Make these sentences negative, by following the example.

Cardinal Numbers (Audio1; 28)

You will note that from 21 onwards we add 9 o 'and' between numbers.

0		صفر	sefr
1	١	یک ُ	yek
2	۲	دو	do
3	٣	سه	se
4	۴	چهار	cahār (co/ cār)
5	۵	ينج	panj
6	۶	شش	ŝeŝ (col ŝiŝ)

7	γ	هفت	haft
8	٨	هشت	haŝt
9	٩	نه	noh
10	١.	ده	dah
11	11	یاز ده	yāzdah
12	17	دوازده	davāzdah
13	14	سيزده	sizdah
14	14	چهارده	cahārdah (col cārdah)
15	۱۵	یانزده	pānzdah (col punzdah)
16	18	شانزده	ŝānzdah (col ŝunzdah)
17	17	هفده	hefdah (co/ hivdah)
18	١٨	هجده	hejdah (col hiĝdah)
19	19	نوزده	nuzdah
20	۲.	بيست	bist
21	17	بیست و یک	bist o yek
22	77	بیست و دو	bist o do
29	44	بیست و نه	bist o noh
30	٣.	سی	si
31	41	سی و یک	si o yek
40	4.	چهل	cehel (col cel)
50	۵٠	چھل پنجاہ	panjāh
60	9.	شصت	ŝast
70	٧.	هفتاد	haftād
80	٨.	هشتاد	haŝtād
90	9.	نود	navad
100	1	صد	sad
101	1 - 1	صد و یک	sad o yek
110	11.	صد و ده	sad o dah
199	199	صد و نود و نه	sad o navad o noh
200	۲	دويست	devist (col divist)
300	٣	سيصد	sisad
400	4	چهارصد	cahārsad (col cārsad)
500	۵.۰	پانصد	pānsad (co/ punsad)
600	۶	ششصد	ŝeŝsad
700	٧	هفتصد	haftsad (col hafsad)
800	٨	هشتصد	haŝtsad (col haŝsad)
900	9	نهصد	nohsad
1,000	1	هزار	hezār
1,001	1 1	هزار و یک	hezār o yek

```
1,985 ۱۹۸۵ و پنج اهتاد و پنج ا۹۸۵ هزار و نهصد و هشتاد و پنج او پختم د و هزار و هفتصد و شصت و نه ۱,985 عن ملور و هنار و هفتصد و شصت و نه او هزار و پانصد و بیست و چهار ۱۰۵۲۴ ده هزار و پانصد و بیست و چهار ۱۰۵۲۴ مناصد و معنال مناصد و بیست و پختا می او پختا
```

After a number or size cand tā 'how many', the noun comes in the singular.

```
cand tā māŝin? How many cars (lit car)? چند تا ماشین؟ panj māŝin five cars (lit car)
```

Indefinite and definite articles

Generally, Persian does not distinguish between 'a car' and 'the car', as in:

```
māŝin xarābe. The car is broken.
ماشین خرابه.
māŝin dārid? Do you have a car?
```

Here is another example:

```
قَارِتمان قشنگه. āpārtemān qaŝange. The flat is nice. āpārtemān dārid? Do you have a flat?
```

To indicate the indefinite, we use $\sqrt[3]{ye(k)}$ 'one' before the noun:

```
یک آپارتمان در تهران داره و یک خونه در مشهد.
ye(k) āpārtemān dar tehrān dāre va ye(k) xune dar maŝhad.
He has a flat in Tehran and a house in Mashad.
```

A less colloquial form uses the unstressed suffix -i (or -yi if the noun ends in a vowel):

```
قارتمانى āpārtemāni a flat, an apartment
بابا bābā dad
bābāyi a dad
dāneŝju student
دانشجو
dāneŝjuyi a student
```

When the noun is qualified by an adjective, the ending goes after the adjective:

آپارتمان قشنگی دارید. **āpārtemān-e qaŝangi dārid.** You have a nice flat.

Exercise 7

Can you say these in Persian?

- 1 You have a nice car/garden/house!
- 2 That's very kind of you (to say so).
- 3 I'm sorry, I don't have time.
- 4 How old is he? He's 30 years old.
- 5 This is my friend Peter. He's English. This is my mother.
- 6 Pleased to meet you. So am I.
- 7 How many Iranian friends do you have?
- 8 I have five Iranian friends.

Comprehension (Audio1; 30)

You have received a recorded message from your Iranian Internet friend.

سلام. من پرویز علیزاده هستم. من متأهّل هستم. خانمم معلّم انگلیسیه. ما مسلمان هستیم. محلّ تولّد من مشهده. من کارمند هستم. ۳۵ سال دارم. خانمم ۳۱ سال داره. محلّ تولّدش آمریکاست اما ملّیتش ایرانیه. سرگرمی من سینما و سرگرمی خانمم نقّاشیه. ما یک آپارتمان کوچک ولی قشنگ در تهران داریم.

salām. man parviz-e alizāde hastam. man mota`ahhel hastam. xānomam mo`allem-e engelisie. mā mosalmān hastim. mahall-e tavallode man maŝhade. man kārmand hastam. si o panj sāl dāram. xānomam si o yek sāl dāre. mahall-e tavallodeŝ āmrikāst ammā melliyateŝ irānie. sargarmi-e man sinemā va sargarmi-e xānomam naqqāŝie. mā yek āpārtemān-e kucek vali qaŝang dar tehrān dārim.

- 1 What is your friend's full name?
- 2 What does he do for a living?
- 3 Where was he born?
- 4 What is his wife's job?
- 5 Where was she born?
- 6 What is her nationality?
- 7 What religion do they follow?
- 8 What do we know about their age?
- 9 What do they do in their spare time?
- 10 What type of home do they have, and in which town?
- 11 Identify a word that shows he is happy with his home.

Unit Four

آخر هفته چهکار کردید؟

āxar-e hafte ce-kār kardid?

What did you do at the weekend?

In this unit we will look at how to:



- talk about past events
- ask, and respond to, questions about last weekend
- talk about a film you saw, a birthday party you attended
- make comments about food
- talk about what happened on each day of the week
- make longer sentences in Persian



Pol-e Khajoo, Esfahan. Photograph by Donal O'Leary.

Dialogue 1



Wish you were there! (Audio1; 31)

Simin (s) and her colleague Parviz (P) are talking about what they did last weekend.

- s: آخر هفته خوش گذشت؟
 - جاتون خالی بود!
- s: خب، چه کار کردید؟ کجا رفتید؟
- P: شب جمعه رفتیم سینما. یک فیلم ایرانی دیدیم.
 - s: خوب بود؟
- P: کمدی بود. خیلی خندیدیم. شما چه کار کردید؟
- s: پنجشنبه بعد از ظهر، مهمون داشتیم. جشن تولد پسرم بود.
 - P: بهبه! تولدش مبارك!
 - ۵: ممنون.
 - P: غذا چطور بود؟
 - s: عالى! دست پخت شوهرم بود!
 - P: البته، بدون شك!

- S: āxar-e hafte xoŝ gozaŝt?
- P: bale, jātun xāli bud!
- S: xob, ce-kār kardid? kojā raftid?
- P: ŝab-e jom`e raftim sinemā. ye(k) film-e irāni didim.
- S: xub bud?
- P: komedi bud. xeili xandidim. ŝomā ce-kār kardid?
- S: panj-ŝanbe ba`d-az-zohr, mehmun dāŝtim. jaŝn-e tavallode pesaram bud.
- P: bah-bah! tavallodeŝ mobārak!
- S: mamnun.
- P: qazā cetour bud?
- S: āli! dast-poxt-e ŝouharam bud!
- P: albatte, bedun-e ŝak!
- B: Did you have a good weekend? (lit Did the weekend pass pleasantly?) Yes,
- S: you should have been there! (lit Your place was vacant!) So, what did you do? Where did you go?
- P: On Thursday evening (lit eve of Friday) we went to the cinema. We saw an Iranian film.
- S: Was it good?
- P: It was a comedy. We laughed a lot. What did you do?

- S: On Thursday afternoon, we had (some) guests. It was my son's birthday celebration/party.
- B: Wow! Happy Birthday to him! (lit May his birth be blessed.) Thanks.
- P: How was the food?
- S: Excellent! It was my husband's cooking/cuisine!
- P: Of course, without a doubt!



Vocabulary

آخر	āxar	end
هفته	hafte	week
آخر هفته	āxar-e hafte	weekend
خوش	xoŝ	pleasant(ly)
گذشتن (گذر)	gozaŝtan (gozar)	to pass
بله	bale	yes
جا	jā	place
جاتون	jātun	your place
خالى	xāli	vacant
بودن	budan	to be
خب	xob	so
چەكار	ce-kār	what activity
كردن	kardan	to do
كجا	kojā	where
رفتن	raftan	to go
شب	ŝab	night, eve
جمعه	jom`e	Friday
سينما	sinemā	cinema
یک	yek	one, a, an

film film irāni Iranian didan to see good komedi comedy a lot, very خنديدن xandidan to laugh Thursday ينجشنيه panj-ŝanbe بعد از ظهر ba'd-az-zohr afternoon mehmun guest jaŝn celebration tavallod birth(day) son, boy pesar bah-bah! Wow! mobārak blessed مبار ک (I'm) grateful, thank you mamnun food cetour how excellent dast-poxt cooking, cuisine husband ŝouhar شوهر albatte of course without bedun-e بدون doubt

Language and culture notes Q



Past simple tense

How to say: 'I went'

Here is the formula:

Past stem of verb + personal ending (see pp. 13ff)

All Persian verbs (infinitives) end with the sounds -an. To get the past stem of a verb, we omit these two sounds. The verb 'to go' is رفت raftan. Its past stem is raft.

من رفتم من رفتم من رفتم rafti You (inf) went تو رفتی u raft He/she went ما رفتیه mā raftim We went ما رفتید somā raftid You went اونها رفتند un(h)ā raftand They went

*In this tense, no personal ending is used for the third-person singular (i.e. he, she, it, etc.) For the negative, we add the (stressed) prefix ina-:

من نُرفتم man naraftam I didn't go to narafti You didn't go تو نُرفت u naraft He/she didn't go

If the verb begins with a vowel, the negative prefix is slightly modified as: **nay-**:

اومد umad He/she came نيومد nayumad He/she didn't come

Days of the week (Audio1; 34)

\$anbe Saturday (first day of the week)
عكشنبه yek-ŝanbe Sunday
عكشنبه do-ŝanbe Monday
عدوشنبه se-ŝanbe Tuesday
حهارشنبه c(ah)ār-ŝanbe Wednesday
پهارشنبه panj-ŝanbe Thursday
عبار شنبه panj-ŝanbe Friday (weekend)

Examples:

أروز) ruz day (ruz-e) jom'e (on) Friday (one-off event: past or future) jom'ehā (on) Fridays (regular events) ruzhā-ye jom'e on td')days (lit (on the) days of Friday) sab-e jom'e Thursday wening/night (lit eve of Friday) (one-off event: past or future) sabhā-ye jom'e Thursday evenings/nights (lit eves of Friday) (regular events)

Note: (d) and (e) are the forms commonly used in Iran. Alternatively, you can use a direct translation of the forms used in English:

(ها) پنجشنبه شب panj-ŝanbe ŝab(hā) Thursday evening(s)

Exercise 1

Tell a Persian speaker what happened on different days of the week. Follow the example.

- 1 On Saturday, Ahmad came to London.
 منبه، احمد به لندن اومد. ŝanbe, ahmad be landan umad.
- 2 On Sunday, we went to the supermarket.
- 3 On Monday, we went to an Iranian restaurant.
- 4 On Tuesday, I went to a birthday party. Ahmad didn't come.
- 5 On Wednesday, we went to a swimming pool.
- 6 On Thursday, Ahmad went to Iran.
- 7 On Friday, my parents came to my home.

Reduction

In casual speech, the sentence من به سينما رفتم **man be sinemā raftam** 'I went to the cinema' is often reduced to:

```
رفتم سينما. raftam sinemā. I went to the cinema.
```

In this reduction, three things happen:

- (a) The subject is omitted because the personal ending attached to the verb indicates the subject.
- (b) The preposition 4 be 'to' is omitted.
- (c) The verb رفتم **raftam** 'I went' is placed before سينما **sinemā** 'cinema'.
- (b) and (c) normally occur when verbs of motion are involved (such as 'to go', 'to come', 'to take', 'to bring'). Here is an example with the verb 'to come': Ahmad came here yesterday.

```
Full form: ديروز، احمد به اينجا diruz, ahmad be injā
اومد.
Reduced form: ديروز، احمد اومد اينجا. diruz, ahmad umad injā.
```

Exercise 2

Repeat Exercise 1, this time using the reduced form. Example:

1 On Saturday, Ahmad came to London.

```
. شنبه، احمد اومد لندن sanbe, ahmad umad landan.
```

How to say 'Did you have a good weekend?'

We literally say: 'Did the weekend pass pleasantly?'

The verb used is گذشتن **gozaŝtan** to pass.

Here is the sentence:

```
?<u>axar-e hafte</u> xos gozast
```

This is a very versatile pattern. It can be used to ask the following questions simply by replacing the underlined bits:

```
irān xoŝ gozaŝt?
Did you have a good time in Iran? (Did you enjoy your visit to Iran?)

ta`tilāt xoŝ gozaŝt?

Did you enjoy [your] holiday?

mehmuni xoŝ gozaŝt?

Did you enjoy the party?
```

A common reply to the above question is:

```
.(بود). bale, jātun xāli (bud).
```

(lit) Yes, your place (was) vacant. (Wish you were there. OR: You should have been there.

OR: You were missed!)

The verb used is: بودن **budan** to be. However, this is often omitted – hence **bud** 'was' is in brackets.

Note: This is a polite, almost socially expected, response. It is not as dramatic as suggested by the literal translations in English! It is used when we talk about a pleasant experience. It is an Iranian way of sharing that pleasant experience with others, albeit verbally. It does not cost much; but it does a lot in creating rapport.

How to say 'What did you do?'

We use the word کار kār which has various meanings: work, job, activity. We ce-kār 'what activity' or چه کار ce-kār 'what activity' or simply 'what' in English. The verb used is: کردن kardan 'to do'. Here is the result:

How to say 'I went to London by taxi yesterday.'

Here is the formula:

- (a) من رفتم. **man raftam**. I went.
- (b) من به لندن رفتم. **man be landan raftam**. I went to London.
- (c) من ديروز به لندن رفتم. man diruz be landan raftam. I went to London yesterday.
- (d) من ديروز با تاكسي به لندن رفتم. man diruz bā tāksi be landan raftam. I went to London by taxi yesterday.

Note: We use the same pattern to say:

man diruz bā ahmad be landan raftam.

I went to London with Ahmad yesterday. ($^{\mathbf{L}}_{\mathbf{p}}$ $\mathbf{b}\bar{\mathbf{a}} = \mathbf{b}\mathbf{y}$, with)

man emruz dir be kelās umadam.

I came to the class late today. OR: I was late. (22 dir = late) Exercise 3



Put these jumbled sentences in order, and then translate them into English. The

first one has been done for you.

mā diruz bā metro be landan raftim.

We went to London by metro yesterday.

How to say 'I saw a film in London yesterday.'

Here is the formula:



I saw a film in London yesterday.

Can you say these in Persian? The first one has been done for you.

1 I ate/had lunch in a restaurant yesterday.

man diruz dar resturān nāhār xordam.

- 2 I read a book in the library yesterday.
- 3 I saw a film in the cinema last night.
- 4 I ate a sandwich at work this morning.
- 5 I cooked an Iranian dish at home today.
- 6 I saw a good programme on TV this afternoon.
- 7 What did you do at the weekend?
- 8 Nothing! I slept all day! I was tired.
- 9 I went to a birthday party on Friday.
- 10 We had a good time wish you were there!

Dialogue 2



Nothing to write home about! (Audio1; 36)

Two cousins are talking about last weekend. Saman (s) male; Marjan (M) female.

- s: آخر هفته خوش گذشت؟
 - M: تعریفی نداشت!
 - s: چطور مگه؟
- کار خاصی نکردم. تو خونه موندم و تلویزیون تماشا کردم. آخر هفتهی تو چطور بود؟
- اند نبود. برای شام از سوپرمارکت یک ساندویچ و یک پیتزا خریدم.
 من ساندویچو خوردم؛ دوستم پیتزارو خورد. بعد تا صبح شطرنج بازی کردیم!
 - M: بردی یا باختی؟
 - s: مساوی شدیم!

- S: āxar-e hafte xoŝ gozaŝt?
- M: ta`rifi nadāŝt!
- S: cetour mage?
- M: kār-e xāssi nakardam. tu xune mundam o televizion tamāŝā kardam. āxar-e hafte-ye to cetour bud?
- S: bad nabud. barāye ŝām az supermārket ye(k) sāndevic o ye(k) pitzā xaridam. man sāndevic-o xordam; dustam pitzā-ro xord. ba`d tā sobh ŝatranj bāzi kardim!
- м: bordi yā bāxti?
- S: mosāvi ŝodim!
- S: Did you have a good weekend?
- M: Nothing to write home about!
- S: But why? (How come?)
- M: I didn't do anything special. I stayed at home and watched TV. How was your weekend?
- S: It wasn't bad. For dinner I bought a sandwich and a pizza from the supermarket. I ate the sandwich; my friend ate the pizza. Then we played chess until the (following) morning!
- M: Did you win or lose?
- S: We drew!



Vocabulary

ساندويج

تعريف ta`rif compliment ta`rifi a compliment تعريفي داشتن dāŝtan to have نداشت nadāŝt it did not have ta`rifi nadāŝt nothing to write home about تعريفي نداشت (lit it didn't have any compliment) cetour how چطور but مگه mage But why? How come? (lit How but?) چطور مگه؟ cetour mage? hic none; nil هيج kār work, job, activity کار خاص xāss special, specific kardan to do كردن I didn't do nakardam نكردم in tu تو خونه xune house, home mundan to stay موندن television تلويزيون televizion tamāŝā watching تماشا كردن tamāŝā kardan to watch (lit to do watching) budan to be بودن bud (it) was بود nabud (it) wasn't نيود barāye for براي ŝām dinner from supermärket supermarket سوپرمار کت sandwich sāndevic

pitzā pizza xaridan خريدن to buy xaridam I bought xordan to eat خوردن xordam I ate friend dust dustam my friend xord (s/he) ate خورد ba'd then, afterwards tā until صبح sobh morning شطرنج ŝatranj chess bāzi kardan بازی کردن to play bordan to win bordi you won yā or bāxtan to lose bāxti you lost mosāvi equal ŝodan to become mosāvi ŝodim we drew (lit we became equal)

Language and culture notes



Compound verbs

One-word verbs, such as خوردن **xordan** 'to eat', oddan 'to see' are called 'simple verbs'. The bulk of Persian verbs are of a compound nature. A compound verb normally consists of two (or more) words. Here is the formula:

noun/adjective/adverb/preposition + simple verb = **compound verb**

Perhaps the largest number of compound verbs are produced with the help of these two verbs:

کردن kardan to do; to make شدن ŝodan to become

Examples:

```
telefon kardan تلفن کردن
                              to telephone; to make
                                 a telephone call
                               work
  kār kardan کار کردن
                               to work
                               open
  bāz kardan باز کردن
                              to open (something);
                                lit to make open
  bāz ŝodan باز شدن
                               (for something) to open;
                                 lit to become open
    hāzer حاضر
                               ready
hāzer kardan حاضر کردن
                              to make ready
hāzer ŝodan حاضر شدن
                              to get ready
```

Therefore, it is well worth learning their structural behaviour at an early stage, i.e. now!

Their past stem is مند **kard** and مند **ŝod** respectively. Examples:

```
emruz kār kardam. I worked today. امروز کار کردم.
dar bāz ŝod. The door opened.
```

The compound verbs used in Dialogue 2 above are:

تماشا تماشا تماشا تماشا كردن tamāŝā kardan to watch
تماشا كردن bāzi game; playing
نازى كردن bāzi kardan to play (a game)

Definite article for a direct object ' (rā)

How to say 'I ate the sandwich.'

The word bra plays an important role in Persian grammar. It shows that the word (or phrase) immediately before it, is the direct object of the sentence. Since this concept does not exist in English, let us familiarise ourselves with the idea using English examples first!

Direct or indirect object?

A direct object is one that is affected directly by the verb.

Example:

(a) I bought Peter a sandwich.

In the above sentence, the word 'sandwich' is the direct object because it was the sandwich that was bought, not Peter! ('Peter' is the indirect object: I bought a sandwich for Peter.) When you refer to the same 'sandwich' again, you say 'the sandwich':

(b) He ate the sandwich.

Now the word 'sandwich' is a definite direct object. In Persian, such an object is normally followed by the word \mathbf{r} \mathbf{r} \mathbf{r} is needed for (a) because 'a sandwich' is indefinite.

One more condition: If there is a preposition before the object, no **rā** is used after it: He looked at <u>the sandwich</u>. (Preposition 'at') I said to <u>Peter/him/them</u>... (Preposition 'to') To sum up, when the object is 'definite/specific' and known to both the speaker and the listener, we normally use **rā** after the object. Consider this pair: (a) I ate <u>lunch</u> at 1 o'clock.

(b) I ate my lunch at 1 o'clock.

In a Persian translation of the above sentences, \mathbf{b} $\mathbf{r}\mathbf{\bar{a}}$ is not used in (a) because the speaker is talking about 'lunch' in general; while it is used in (b) because he is referring specifically to 'his lunch'.

More examples:

In the Persian equivalents of the following sentences, we use $\sqrt[l]{\mathbf{r}}$ after the object (underlined): He ate it.

I saw Peter.

I invited <u>him/his brother/them</u>.

She called me/us.

For ease of reference, the word $\sqrt{r\bar{a}}$ will be called the 'object marker'.



Based on the above, which of the objects (underlined) in the followingsentences would be followed by the object marker \mathbf{r} \mathbf{r} if they were translated into Persian? Tick the appropriate box \mathbf{r} .

Note: This exercise is purely in English! It is intended to help us understand the concept.

	[Yes]	[No]
1 I saw <u>James</u> .	[1	[]
2 I bought him <u>a drink</u> .	[]	[]
3 I bought Susan a sandwich and a cake.	[]	[]
4 She ate <u>the sandwich</u> .	[]	[]
5 But she didn't eat the cake.	[]	[]
6 I looked at <u>her</u> .	[]	[]
7 I said to <u>her</u>	[]	[]
8 I had/ate dinner at 8 o'clock.	[]	[]
9 I had/ate my dinner at 8 o'clock.	[]	[]
10 I didn't invite them.	[]	[]

The 'Golden Rules' for the use of the object marker:

rā is used after a word if all these conditions are met:

- 1 The word must be the object of the sentence.
- 2 It must be the direct object of the sentence.
- 3 It must be definite or specific (i.e. not general).
- 4 It must not be preceded by a preposition.

In casual speech, $\sqrt[5]{r\bar{a}}$ is reduced to $\sqrt[9]{ro}$ after a vowel, and $\sqrt[9]{o}$ after a consonant. In the English transcription, these will be shown as -ro and -o respectively.

Note: The colloquial pronunciation of 9 va meaning 'and' is also ${}_{0}$. To prevent confusion between this and ${}_{0}$ (as the colloquial form of 1 ${}_{0}$ a hyphen is placed before the object marker. Furthermore, in the Persian script, the object

marker • -o is connected (or positioned close) to the object, while the • o meaning 'and' is preceded by a space. Examples:

```
diruz ahmad-o I saw Ahmad yesterday. didam.
مروز احمد و پروینو دیدم.
دیروز احمد و پروینو دیدم.
diruz ahmad o parvin-o didam.
I saw Ahmad and Parvin yesterday.
```

You will also note that the direct object marker goes after the last object. Where the colloquial forms 9 -o and 9 -ro are likely to cause confusion in the Persian script, the full form 1 1 2 will be used.

(a)Now, let us consider the examples used in Dialogue 2 above. Saman says: یک ساندویچ و یک پیتزا خریده.

yek sāndevic o yek pitzā xaridam.

I bought a sandwich and a pizza.

- (b) من ساندویچو خوردم. **man sāndevic-o xordam.** I ate the sandwich.
- (c) دوستم پیتزارو خورد. dustam pitzā-ro xord. My friend ate the pizza.

In (a) no object marker is used because the objects are indefinite: 'a sandwich' and 'a pizza'. In (b) and (c) the object marker is used because the objects are now definite: 'the sandwich' and 'the pizza'.

On condition 4 of the 'Golden Rules' mentioned above: There are a few verbs in Persian that can be used with or without a preposition.

```
نگاه کردن negāh kardan to look

(a) به من نگاه کرد. be man negāh kard. S/he looked at me.
(b) منو نگاه کرد. man-o negāh kard. S/he looked at me.

(c) توش کردن be harf-e man guŝ nakard. S/he didn't listen to my advice.
(d) حرف منو گوش نکرد.
(d) منو گوش نکرد. harf-e man-o guŝ nakard. S/he didn't listen to my advice.
```

In (a) and (c) no object marker is used because the object is preceded by a preposition. In (b) and (d) the object marker is used because there is no preposition before the object in the Persian sentences.

Note: Unlike Persian, both English verbs need a preposition – except when you say 'She looked me in the eye!'

How to say 'He bought me a drink.'

We say the equivalent of 'He bought a drink for me.'



With the help of the English translations, put the object marker $\sqrt[l]{\mathbf{r}}$ in the blanks where needed.

1	من امروز او ديدم.
	man emruz u didam. I saw him/her today.
2	من آب زیاد خوردم.
	man āb ziād xordam. I drank a lot of water.
3	من این آب نخوردم چون گرم بود.
	man in āb naxordam con garm bud. I didn't drink this water because it was warm.
4	احمد برای من بستنی و کیک خرید.
	ahmad barāye man bastani o keik xarid. Ahmad bought (some) ice-cream and cake for me.
5	من کیک خوردم.
	man keik xordam. I ate the cake.
6	اما بستنی نخوردم چون حالم خوب نبود.
	ammā bastani naxordam con hālam xub nabud. But I didn't eat the ice-cream because I was not feeling well

Exercise 7

Repeat Exercise 5, but this time translate the sentences into Persian. For vocabulary, you may need to refer to the glossaries at the end of the book.

How to say 'I took Ahmad to London by taxi yesterday.'

A basic formula for this sentence pattern is:

من ديروز احمد را با تاكسى به لندن بردم. man diruz ahmad rā bā tāksi be landan bordam.

Exercise 8

Can you say these in Persian?

- 1 Did you have a good holiday?
- 2 Yes, wish you were there!
- 3 Nothing to write home about!
- 4 We didn't do anything special.
- 5 We stayed at home and watched the rain!
- 6 What was your weekend like?
- 7 I worked on Saturday.
- 8 On Sunday, I went to my friend's home.
- 9 We ate some Iranian food.
- 10 I cooked it!
- 11 We watched an Iranian film.

- 12 We played backgammon.
- 13 On Monday, my parents came to my house.
- 14 We had lunch together.
- 15 My father washed the dishes!

Comprehension (Audio1; 38)

Simin is talking about Mahnaz. Listen to the recording and answer the questions in English.

شب یکشنبه رفتم جشن تولد دوستم مهناز. جاتون خالی خیلی خوش گذشت. منزلش زیاد دور نیست، اما با اتوبوس رفتم چون هوا سرد بود. پنجاه تا مهمون داشت! غذا عالی بود! دست پخت مادر ش بود. شوهرش ظرفهارو شست. من چای درست کردم. چای رو با کیک خوردیم. بستنی هم خوردیم. بعد از شام، یک فیلم کمدی دیدیم. خیلی خندیدیم. بعد به موسیقی ایرانی گوش کردیم و رقصیدیم. بعد هدیههارو به مهناز دادیم. خیلی خوشحال شد.

ŝab-e yek-ŝanbe raftam jaŝn-e tavallode dustam mahnāz. jātun xāli xeili xoŝ gozaŝt. manzeleŝ ziād dur nist, ammā bā otobus raftam con havā sard bud. panjāh tā mehmun dāŝt! qazā āli bud! dast-poxt-e mādareŝ bud. ŝouhareŝ zarfhāro ŝost. man cāi dorost kardam. cāi-ro bŝ keik xordim. bastani ham xordim. ba'daz ŝām, yek film-e komedi didim. xeili xandidim. ba'd be musiqi-e irāni guŝ kardim o raqsidim. ba'd hedyehā-ro be mahnāz dādim. xeili xoŝ-hāl ŝod.

- 1 Where did Simin go?
- 2 When did she go?
- 3 What was the occasion?
- 4 Who is Mahnaz?
- 5 How do we know Simin enjoyed the event?
- 6 How did Simin travel to the venue, and why?

- 7 Who else was at the venue?
- 8 What is Simin's opinion of the food?
- 9 Who was the cook?
- 10 What happened to the dishes?
- 11 How did Simin help?
- 12 What did they have for dessert?
- 13 Why did they laugh after dinner?
- 14 Why does she mention Iranian music?
- 15 Why was Mahnaz happy?

Unit Five

منزلتون كجاست؟

manzeletun kojāst?

Where's your home?

In this unit we will look at how to:



- seek and give your home address, and refer to landmarks ask about the
- availability of facilities express regret
- use ordinal numbers (first, second, etc.) ask and answer questions
- about family and relatives say how often you do things
- make comparisons
- express an opinion





Giving your details (Audio1; 39)

Mrs Rezaee (R) is phoning for an ambulance for her husband, who has just fallen down the stairs. Here's an extract from her conversation with the hospital telephonist (T).

```
T: اسم بیمار چیه؟
```

- T: کجای خیابون مهر هستید؟
- R: سينما حافظ مي دونيد كجاست؟
- R: درست روبهروی سینما هستیم، پهلوی سوپرمارکت.
 - ۲: آسانسور دارید؟
 - R: داریم، امّا خرابه، متأسّفانه.
 - r: ای وای! خب، عیب نداره. شماره تلفنتون چنده؟

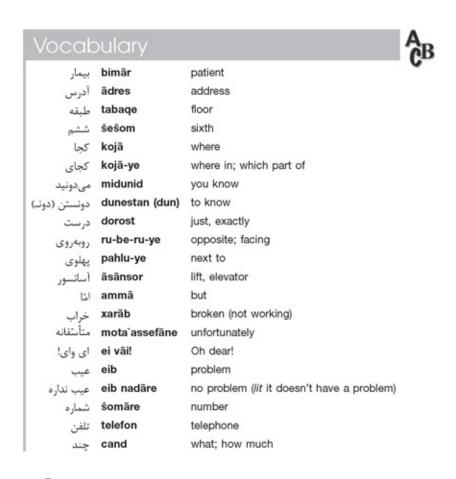
- esm-e bimār cie? T:
- R: hasan-e ahmadi.

R: حسن احمدي.

۲: آدرستون چیه؟

R: تهران، خیابان مهر، پلاک ۸، طبقهی ششم، آپارتمان ۱۲.

- T: ādresetun cie?
- R: tehrān, xiābān-e mehr, pelāk-e haŝt, tabaqe-ye ŝeŝom, āpārtemān-e davāzdah.
- T: kojā-ye xiābun-e mehr hastid?
- R: sinemā hāfez midunid kojāst?
- T: bale.
- **R**: dorost ru-be-ru-ye sinemā hastim, pahlu-ye supermārket āsānsor dārid?
- R: dārim, ammā xarāb-e, mota(`)assefāne.
- T: ei vāi! xob, eib nadāre. ŝomāre telefonetun cande?
- R: si o panj, hefdah, cel o do.
- T: What's the name of the patient?
- R: Hassan Ahmadi.
- T: What's your address?
- R: Tehran, Mehr Street, No. 8, 6th floor, Flat 12.
- T: Where in Mehr Street are you (located)?
- R: Do you know where Hafez cinema is?
- T: Yes.
- R: We're just opposite the cinema, next to the supermarket.
- T: Do you have a lift?
- R: We do, but it's broken, I'm afraid.
- T: Oh dear! OK, never mind. What's your phone number?
- R: 35–17–42.





Language and culture notes

Prepositions

Here are some common prepositions and prepositional phrases. There are more in the glossaries.

Note: In casual speech, the ^c-ye is often dropped

ru-ye on روى zir-e under زير tu-ye in (col) توی dar in (1) jelo-ye in front of بیرون بالای birun-e outside (of) bālā-ye above, over پهلوی pahlu-ye next to poŝt-e behind pāyin-e below, beneath kenār-e by (the side of) dāxel-e inside (of) ru-be-ru-ye opposite, facing (در) طرف چپ (dar) taraf-e cap-e (on) the left side of (on) the right side of (dar) taraf-e räst-e



Fill in the blanks with the appropriate preposition.

		ساندويچتون ميزه.	-1
1	sāndevicetun mize.		
	Your sandwich is on the table.		
		مداد ميزه.	-1
2	medād mize.		
	The pencil is under the table.		
		توالت سوپرماركته.	-4
3	tuālet supermārkete.		
	The toilet is inside the supermarket.		
		پمپ بنزین پارکینگه.	-4
4	pomp-e benzin pārkinge.		
	The petrol station is next to the car park.		

		اپارتمانم سينماست.	-۵
5	āpārtem1nam sinem1st.		
	My flat is opposite the cinema.		c
		تلفن همگانی منزل ماست.	-7
6	telefone hamegāni manzele māst.		
	The public telephone is in front of our house.		
		خونهی احمد سینماست.	-Y
7	xune-ye ahmad sinemāst.		
	Ahmad's house is behind		
	the cinema.		
		آپارتمان علی مال ماست.	-λ
8	āpārtemān-e ali māl-e māst.		
	Ali's flat is above ours.		
		شوفاژ پنجره است.	-9
9	ŝofāĝ panjare ast.		
	The [central heating] radiator is by the window.		
	-	تلفن تلويزيونه.	-1.
10	telefon televizione.		
	The telephone is on the right side of the TV.		

From cardinal to ordinal

Here is how we convert cardinal numbers (one, two, etc.) to ordinal numbers

(first, second, etc.). For the first three, we say:

 Cardinal numbers
 Ordinal numbers

 yek
 one
 one

For all the other numbers, we add the (stressed) suffix - om to the end of the cardinal number to get an ordinal number.



Can you give the Persian equivalents of these ordinal numbers?

(a) first = (d) ninth = _____ (b) second = (e) thirty-first = _____ (f) seventieth = _____ (c) third =

Postal address

A postal address normally begins with the largest unit, i.e. name of the country, city/town, and ends with the smallest, i.e. house/flat number, followed by the name of the recipient, e.g.

irān, tehrān, kod-e posti-e 218603, xiābān-e ābān, pelāk-e 9, manzele āgā-ye ahmadi Iran, Tehran, Postcode 218603, Aban Street, No. 9, home

of Mr Ahmadi



Imagine you are the British premier. You are inviting some Iranian friends to your home at No. 10 Downing Street, London SW1, England. Give your address in Persian.

Present simple tense

How to say 'I know', 'you know', etc.

Here is the formula:

Prefix mi- + present stem of verb + personal ending

Reminder: Present stems are irregular. The present stem of each verb introduced is given in brackets. For personal endings, see pp. 13ff.

The verb we need here is:^(دون) **dunestan (dun)** to know. Its present stem is ^{دون} **dun**.

Note: The prefix **mi-** carries the word stress.

Listen to the audio. (Audio1; 41)



man midunam. I know.
to miduni. You (inf) know.
He/she knows.
mā midunim. We know.
somā midunid. You know.
what a source is a midunid.
They know.

To make the verb negative, we add the prefix \rightarrow **ne-.**

Note: The negative prefix normally carries the word stress.

Listen to the audio. (Audio1; 41)



```
man nemidunam. I don't know.
څما نِمیدونید. somā nemidunid. You don't know.
```

In literary Persian, the personal ending for u 'he/she' and \bar{a} n 'it /that' is \bar{a} ad.

Compare:

```
\mathbf{u} 'he/she eats' (col) mixore \mathbf{u} 'he/she eats' (l) \mathbf{u} 'he/she eats' (l) mixorad
```

The verb used is ^{(خوردن (خور)} **xordan (xor)** 'to eat'.

The next example is a bit more challenging because the verb itself is colloquialised. (See U1D2 for colloquialisation of sounds **ān** to **un**.)

```
dunestan (dun) to know (col) دونستن (دونــ) dānestan (dān) to know (l) to know (l) u midune he/she knows (col) u midānad he/she knows (l)
```



Here is what different people do on different days of the week. Fill in the blanks with the help of the English translations and the verbs provided. Follow the example.

```
raftan (r)
       رفتن (ر)
                                             to go
                   xordan (xor)
   خوردن (خور)
                                             to eat; to drink
                    zadan (zan)
                                             to play (musical
                                               instrument)
                   xundan (xun)
   خوندن (خونـ)
                                             to read
     کردن (کنـ)
                    kardan (kon)
                                             to do
چک کردن (کنہ)
                    cek kardan (kon)
                                             to check
 کار کردن (کنے)
                   kär kardan (kon)
                                             to work
 شنا کردن (کنے)
                   ŝenā kardan (kon)
                                             to swim
تماشا کردن (کنے)
                   tamāŝā kardan (kon)
                                             to watch
```

1	Saturday to Wednesday, I go to university.	
	نبه تا چهارشنبه، به دانشگاه	ش
	ŝanbe tā cahār-ŝanbe, be dāneŝgāh	
	خنبه تا چهارشنبه، به دانشگاه میرم.	ث
	ŝanbe tā cahār-ŝanbe, be dāneŝgāh miram.	
2	On Fridays, we eat dinner in an Iranian restaurant.	
	معهها، در رستوران ایرانی شام	ج
	jom`ehā, dar resturān-e irāni ŝām	
3	On Mondays, Ali plays the piano.	
	وشنبهها، على پيانو	وي
	do-ŝanbehā, ali piāno	
4	On Tuesdays, we read books in the library.	
	هشنبهها، تو(ی) کتابخونه کتاب	س
	se-ŝanbehā, tu(-ye) ketābxune ketāb	
5	What do you (inf) do on Sundays?	
	ئشنبهها چەكار؟	یک
	yek-ŝanbehā ce-kār?	
6	I check my emails in the evening.	
	بها ايميلهامو	ش
	ŝabhā imeilhām-o	
7	On Thursdays, I work in a bank.	
	جشنبهها، تو(ی) یک بانک	پن
	panj-ŝanbehā, tu(-ye) yek bānk	
8	She swims for an hour in the morning.	
	ببحها یک ساعت	0
	sobhhā yek sā`at	

9 On Wednesdays, they watch a TV serial.

چهارشنبهها، یک سریال تلویزیونی

cahār-ŝanbehā, yek seriāl-e televizioni _____

Reading a telephone number

Telephone numbers are normally read in twos or threes. A zero in the middle is a good dividing point.

عدویست و هشتاد و شش، صفر، پنجاه و سه devist o haŝtād o ŝeŝ, sefr, panjāh o se
عدوم two hundred and eighty six, zero, fifty-three
عداد، هفت عداد و چهار، نوزده، دو
عداد، هفت عداد و چهار، نوزده، دو
sefr, ŝast o yek – haftād o cahār, nuzdah,
do sefr, haft

201-7419007 zero, sixty one – seventy-four, nineteen,
double zero, seven

Exercise 5

Can you give these phone numbers to your Persian-speaking friend?

- 1 7102683 2 3413509 3 4455002
- 4 7853412 5 7890635 6 5036797



Can you say these in Persian?

- 1 What's Ahmad's address? No. 24, Hafez Street, Tehran 16372.
- 2 Do you have a lighter? Yes, but it's broken, I'm afraid.
- 3 Which floor is your flat on? Fourth floor.
- 4 Where's my sandwich? It's on the table, in the kitchen.
- 5 The post office is opposite the petrol station, next to thecinema.
- 6 Your pen is under the chair.

- I saw him outside the cinema.
- He doesn't know where we are. 8
- Do they know we are here? 9
- Do you know who she is? 10
- 11 Do you know what this is?
- 12 What do you do on Saturdays/Sundays?
- I go shopping 13



Asking about family (Audio1; 42)

An Iranian (I) and a British tourist (T) met a while ago when they took their seats on an Iran Air flight from London to Tehran. Here is an extract from their conversation.

```
شما هرسال تابستون مى آيد ايران؟
```

ا: کارتون چیه؟

ד: اپراتور کامپیوتر هستم.

ا: کجا کار می کنید؟

تو یک شرکت آمریکایی کار می کنم. شما چه کار می کنید؟

T: چی درس میدید؟

ریاضی درس میدم. ...

T: راستش، سالی دو سه بار میآم.

- T: این آقا پسرتونند؟
 - نه، برادرمه.
- از شما خیلی کوچک تره!
- ا: بله، کوچکترین عضو خانواده است. شما خواهر و برادر دارید؟
 - ד: نه، متأسفانه ندارم.
 - ا: بچه چطور؟
 - T: نه هنوز. شما هر چند وقت یک بار می آید انگلستان؟
- ۱: سالی یک بار می آم برای دیدن خاله ام. تو لندن زندگی می کنه.
 - ۲: برای خرید نمی آید؟!
 - ان جرا، امّا خالهام نمی دونه!

- I: ŝomā har sāl tābestun miāid irān?
- T: rāsteŝ, sāli do se bār miām.
- I: kāretun cie?
- T: operātor-e kāmpiuter hastam.
- I: kojā kār mikonid?
- T: tu yek ŝerkat-e āmrikāyi kār mikonam. ŝomā ce-kār mikonid?
- I: mo`allem hastam.
- T: ci dars midid?
- I: riāzi dars midam....
- T: in āqā pesaretunand?
- I: na, barādarame.
- T: az ŝomā xeili kucektare!
- I: bale, kucektarin ozv-e xānevād(e)ast. ŝomā xāhar o barādar dārid?
- T: na, mota`assefāne nadāram.
- I: bacce ceto(u)r?
- T: na hanuz. ŝomā har cand vaqt yek bār miāid engelestān?
- I: sāli yek bār miām barāye didan-e xāl(e)am. tu landan zendegi mikone.
- T: barāye xarid nemiāid?!
- I: cerā, ammā xāl(e)am nemidune!

- I: Do you come to Iran every summer? (lit every year (in) the summer)
- T: Actually, I come two or three times a year.
- I: What's your job?
- T: I'm a computer operator.
- I: Where do you work?
- T: I work in/for an American company. What do you do?
- I: I'm a teacher.
- T: What do you teach?
- I: I teach maths ...
- T: Is this gentleman your son?
- I: No, he's my brother.
- T: He's much younger than you!
- I: Yes, he's the youngest member of the family. Do you have brothers and sisters?
- T: No, unfortunately I haven't.
- I: How about children? (lit How about child?)
- T: Not yet. How often do you come to England?
- I: I come once a year to see my (maternal) aunt. She lives in London.
- T: Do you not come for shopping?!
- I: Yes, but my aunt doesn't know (this)!

CB Vocabulary

har هر every sāl سال year täbestun تابستون summer miāid میآید you come

rästes راستش actually, to be honest (lit its truth)

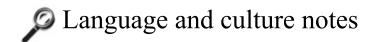
sāli a year; each/per year

bār time(s) بار miām مىآم I come operator اپراتور operator kāmpiuter كامپيوتر computer لار کردن (کنہ) kar kardan (kon) to work

kār mikonam کار می کنم I work

ŝerkat شركت company, firm

?ce-kār mikonid? What do you do چه کار می کنید mo`allem معلم teacher dars lesson (د) دادن (dādan (d) to give (د) درس دادن (د) dars dādan (d) to teach dars midid you teach درس میدید riāzi رياضي maths dars midam درس میدم I teach than از az kucek young; small کوچکتر kucektar younger kucektarin youngest member خانواده xānevāde family xāhar sister brother barādar child bacce yet; still hanuz vaqt time har cand vaqt how often (lit once every هر چند وقت یک بار how much time) yek bär engelestän England barāye for (the purpose of) didan (bin) دیدن (بینہ) to see; seeing xāle خاله maternal aunt barāye didan-e براى ديدن خالهام in order to see my aunt xāl(e)am (lit for the seeing of my aunt) landan لندن London zendegi زندگی life zendegi kardan زندگی کردن (کنــ) to live (kon) xarid خرید shopping 'yes' to a negative question; why cerā



How to say 'I come', 'you come', etc.

The verb is: (أ) **umadan (ā)** 'to come'

The tense is the 'Present simple' introduced in Dialogue 1 above. Here is a reminder of the formula:

Prefix * mi- + present stem of verb + personal ending

Verbs whose present stem ends with a vowel need a little more attention. This is because the personal endings which are added to it all begin with a vowel. Two vowels do not follow each other comfortably – in English, too: try saying 'a egg' instead of 'an egg'! Therefore, some adjustment is needed. The present stem of \mathbf{u} umadan 'to come' is a single vowel: $\mathbf{\bar{a}}$. In literary Persian, this is resolved by adding a soft $\mathbf{\bar{a}}$ y sound as a 'buffer' between the two vowels. In colloquial forms, however, the tendency is to reduce rather than add sounds! Here is the result: Listen to the audio. (Audio1; 45)

Literary (written)	Colloquial	Meaning	
mi+ā+yam مىايم	miām مىآم	I come	
mi+ā+yi میآیی	miāi ميآي	you come (informal)	
mi+ā+yad مىآيد	miād مىآد	he/she/it comes	
mi+ā+yim مى اييم	miāim مىآيم	we come	
mi+ā+yid مىآيىد	miāid مىآيد	you come (formal/plural)	
mi+ā+yand ميآيند	miānd می آند	they come	

To make the verb negative, we add the (stressed) prefix - ne-, e.g.



Listen to the audio. (Audio1; 45)

```
nemiām I don't come نمىآم
nemiāi you don't come (inf)
أمىآد nemiād he/she/it doesn't come
```

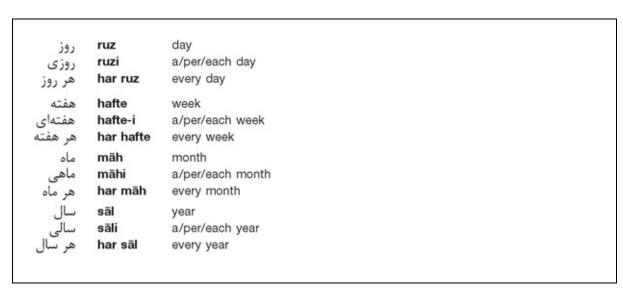
How to say 'every day; once a day; once every two days'

```
every day
every day
ruzi yek bār once a day
har do ruz yek bār once every two days
```

Note: Both of these are unstressed:

• har every the suffix 5 -i meaning: a, per, each Listen to the audio.

(Audio1; 46)



Exercise 7

With the help of the English translations, use the correct form of the verb (أومدن **umadan (ā)** 'to come' in the blanks. Follow the example.

1	Do you	come	here	every	day?

شما هر روز به اینجا _____؟

ŝomā har ruz be injā _____?

Example:

شما هر روز به اینجا می آید؟

ŝomā har ruz be injā miāid?

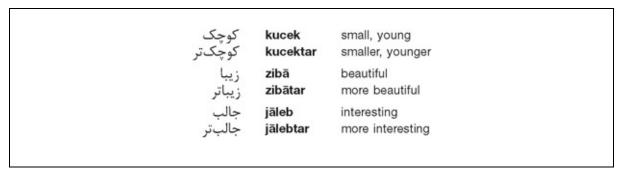
2 I come here two or three times a week.

من هفتهای دو یا سه بار به اینجا

man hafte-i do yā se bār be injā _____

3 Ahmad comes here once a month.

	احمد ماهی یک بار به اینجا
	ahmad māhi yek bār be injā
4	We come to the Farsi class once a week.
	ما هفتهای یک بار به کلاس فارسی
	mā hafte-i yek bār be kelās-e fārsi
5	They come to England every year.
	اونها هر سال به انگلستان
	unhā har sāl be engelestān
6	I come here every week.
	من هر هفته به اینجا
	man har hafte be injā
7	They come to our home twice a year.
	اونها سالی دو بار به منزل ما
	unhā sāli do bār be manzele mā
8	Ahmad comes to the supermarket with me once every two weeks.
	احمد هر دو هفته یک بار با من به سوپرمارکت
	ahmad har do hafte yek bār bā man be supermārket
C	omparative adjective
Н	ow to say 'younger; more beautiful'
ľ	Note: Word stress is shifted over to the suffix.
	Listen to the audio. (Audio1; 47)



How to say 'X is younger than Y.'

Note this irregular form:

xub good بهتر **behtar** better



Provide the missing word. Follow the example.

۱ - فورد از رولزرویس (smaller) _____ ه.

1 **ford az rolz-rois** (smaller) _____ **e**.

A Ford [car] is smaller than a Rolls-Royce.

Example:

۱- فورد از رولزرویس کوچکتره.

1 ford az rolz-rois kucektare.

۲- رولزرویس (than) _____ فورد گرون تره.

2 rolz-rois (than) _____ ford geruntare.

A Rolls-Royce is more expensive than a Ford.

۳- ایران از انگلستان (larger) _____ ه.

3 irān az engelestān (larger) _____ e.

Iran is larger than England.

!	more	beautiful)	تهران	از	- اصفهان	۴
---	------	------------	-------	----	----------	---

4 **esfahān az tehrān** (more beautiful) _____ e!

Esfahan is more beautiful than Tehran!

۵- دست پخت مادرم از دست پخت دوستم (better) _____ ه.

5 dast-poxt-e mādaram az dast-poxt-e dustam (better) _____ e.

My mother's cooking is better than my friend's cooking.

Superlative adjective

How to say 'smallest; youngest'

We add the (stressed) suffix ترین **-tarin** to the adjective. Example: کوچک **kucek** small, young کوچک **kucektarin** smallest, youngest

The word order is similar to English:



Listen to the audio. (Audio1; 48)

kucektarin māŝin smallest car کوچکترین ماشین smallest car kucektarin ozv youngest member hydrosing sahr largest city geruntarin māŝin most expensive car

Also note these irregular forms:

wub good; بهتر behtar better; جوب behtarin best خوب به نظر من، زیباترین شهر ایران مشهد [ببخشید!] اصفهان است.

be nazar-e man, zibātarin ŝahr-e irān maŝhad [bebaxŝid!] esfahān ast.

In my opinion, the most beautiful city in Iran is Mashad [sorry!] Esfahan.



Fill in the blanks. The first one has been done for you.

```
film-e bad → badtarin film bad film → worst film فيلم بد ← بدترين فيلم
1
      \leftarrowماشين گرون mā\hat{\mathbf{s}}in-e gerun \rightarrow
2
     expensive car \rightarrow most expensive car
     \leftarrow آپارتمان ارزون oldsymbol{aparteman-e} arzun oldsymbol{aparteman-e}
3
     cheap flat \rightarrow cheapest flat
     4
     big city \rightarrow biggest city
     ____ خوون جوون خوون خوون خوون zan-e javun →
5
     young woman → youngest woman
     — ضرد مسن mard-e mosenn →
6
     old man \rightarrow oldest man
     \leftarrowفیلم خوب film-e xub 
ightarrow
7
     good film \rightarrow best film
     \leftarrow عنای خوب qazā-ye xub 
ightarrow
8
     good food \rightarrow best food
```

Extended family

To each of the above we add pesar 'son', or doxtar 'daughter', to produce the various meanings of 'cousin', e.g.

```
مختر عمو doxtar(-e)-amu paternal uncle's daughter (cousin)
pesar(-e)-xāle maternal aunt's son (cousin)
```

The linking sound **e** (**ezāfe**) is omitted for convenience.

Exercise 10

Can you say these in Persian?

- 1 Do you have a younger sister?
- 2 I'm three years older than my brother.
- 3 Are you the eldest member of the family?
- 4 My father is two years older than my aunt (his sister).
- 5 In my opinion, the best Iranian food is *chelo-kabab*.
- 6 Where is the nearest Iranian restaurant?
- 7 We come to this restaurant two or three times a month.
- 8 Do you (*formal*) come to this restaurant frequently?
- 9 This is the largest supermarket in this town.
- 10 I don't watch television.
- 11 I listen to the radio.
- 12 Do you (formal) come here every day?
- 13 They don't come to England every year.
- 14 They come here once every two years.
- 15 On Fridays, we come home late.
- We don't come to the Farsi class in (the) summer.



Comprehension (Audio1; 49)

The following is what your Iranian friend wrote in a recent email:

ما یک خانه در غرب شیراز داریم. آدرس ما این است: شیراز، کد پستی ۱۸۲۴۸، خیابان سعدی، کوچهی نرگس، پلاک ۱۵، منزل حسینی.

روبهروی کوچهی ما یک پمپ بنزین است. در طرف راست کوچه یک پیتزا فروشی است. در طرف چپ کوچه نانوایی است. جلوی خانهی ما یک صندوق پست است. داخل کوچه، درب چهارم دست چپ منزل ما است.

خانهی ما زیاد بزرگ نیست امّا اتاق من بزرگترین اتاق در منزل ماست. اتاق خواهرم از مال من کوچکتر، ولی قشنگتر است. او در اتاقش عکس و پوستر زیاد دارد. من در اتاقم فقط یک پوستر بزرگ از شجریان دارم. به نظر من او بهترین خواننده ی ایران است.

من هر شب آوازهای او را گوش می کنم. او هر سه یا چهار سال یک بار در شیراز کنسرت اجرا می کند. عمّه و دایی ام در اصفهان زندگی می کنند. آنها برای دیدن شجریان و شنیدن صدای او به شیراز می آیند. پسردایی ام در ارکستر او تار می زند. جای شما خالی، خیلی خوش می گذرد!

mā yek xāne dar qarb-e ŝirāz dārim. ādres-e mā in ast:

ŝirāz, kod-e posti-e 18248, xiābān-e sa'di, kuce-ye narges, pelāk-e 15, manzele hoseini.

ru-be-ru-ye kuce-ye mā yek pomp-e benzin ast. dar taraf-e rāst-e kuce yek pitzā foruŝi ast. dar taraf-e cap-e kuce nānvāyi ast. jelo-ye xāne-ye mā yek sanduq-e post ast. dāxel-e kuce, darb-e cahārom dast-e cap manzele mā ast.

xāne-ye mā ziād bozorg nist ammā otāq-e man bozorgtarin otāq dar manzele māst. otāq-e xāharam az māl-e man kucektar, vali qaŝangtar ast. u dar otāqaŝ aks va poster ziād dārad. man dar otāqam faqat yek poster-e bozorg az ŝajariān dāram. be nazar-e man u behtarin xānande-ye irān ast.

man har ŝab āvāzhā-ye u rā guŝ mikonam. u har se yā cahār sāl yek bār dar ŝirāz konsert ejrā mikonad. amme va dāyiam dar esfahān zendegi mikonand. ānhā barāye didan-e ŝajariān va ŝenidan-e sedā-ye u be ŝirāz miāyand. pesar-dāyiam dar orkestr-e u tār mizanad. jā-ye ŝomā xāli, xeili xoŝ mig(o)zarad!

- 1 In which part of Shiraz does she live?
- 2 What type of accommodation do they (her family) have?
- 3 What is her address?
- 4 What is opposite their alleyway?
- 5 Where is the pizza shop?
- 6 What is on the left of the alleyway?
- 7 Where is the post box?
- 8 Which side of the alleyway is their home located?
- 9 What comment does she make about the size of their home?
- 10 Who has the largest room?
- 11 What comparisons does she make about rooms?
- 12 What are you likely to see in the rooms mentioned?
- 13 What opinion does she express?
- 14 What does she listen to every evening?
- 15 What happens every three or four years?
- 16 Why does she mention Esfahan?
- 17 Who comes to Shiraz and why?
- 18 Who in her family is a musician?
- 19 Which instrument does s/he play?
- 20 How do we know she is talking about a pleasant experience?

Unit Six

ورود به تهران

vorud be tehrān

Arriving in Tehran

In this unit we will look at how to:



- answer routine questions asked by immigration and customs officers
- wish someone a nice time and reciprocate suggest that you and others
- do something together talk about something you are doing now
- talk about something you will do in the future ask someone (not) to do something
- offer to do something for someone





How long will you stay in Iran? (Audio1; 50)



An Australian tourist (T) has just arrived at Tehran airport. The passport officer (o) begins the conversation.

- ٥: گذرنامه، لطفأ.
- متشکرم. چند وقت تو ایران میمونید؟

 - ٥: هدفتون از این سفر چیه؟
- T: واللا، من زبان شناس هستم. دارم روى لهجهى شيرين اصفهاني

 - کار می کنم. o: عالی اِس! آدرس مشخّصی دارید تو ایران؟
 - ته،میرم هتل.
 - ٥: در كدوم هتل اقامت مى كنيد؟
 - r: هتل امیر در تهران و هتل عبّاس در اصفهان.
 - 0: بفرمایید. به ایران خوش اومدید.
 - T: خیلی ممنون. خدا حافظ.
 - نگهدار.

- T: befarmāyid.
- o: mot(a)ŝakkeram. cand vaqt tu irān mimunid?
- T: hodud-e se māh.
- o: hadafetun az in safar cie?
- T: vāllā, man zabān-ŝenās hastam. daram ru-ye lahje-ye ŝirin-e esfahāni kār mikonam.
- o: āli es! ādres-e moŝaxxasi dŝrid tu irŝn?
- T: na, miram hotel.
- o: dar kodum hotel eqāmat mikonid?
- T: hotel amir dar tehrān va hotel abbās dar esfahān.
- o: befarmāyid. be irān xoŝ umadid.
- T: xeili mamnun, xodā hāfez.
- o: xodā negahdār.
- o: (Your) passport, please.
- T: *Here you are.*
- o: Thank you. How long will you stay in Iran?
- T: *About three months*.
- O: What's the (lit your) purpose of this visit?
- T: Well, I'm a linguist. I'm working on the sweet Esfahani accent.
- O: That's excellent [with an Esfahani accent]! Do you have a known address in Iran?
- T: No, I'll go to a hotel.
- o: In which hotel will you be staying?
- T: Amir Hotel in Tehran and Abbas Hotel in Esfahan.
- o: Here you are. Welcome to Iran.
- T: Much obliged. Goodbye.
- o: Goodbye.



GB Vocabulary

گذرنامه	gozarnāme	passport		
lotfan لطفأ		please		
بفرماييد	befarmāyid	here you are		
متشكّر	mot(a)ŝakker	thankful; grateful		
متشكرم	mot(a)ŝakkeram	I'm grateful; thanks		
چند	cand	how much		
وقت	vaqt	time		
مىمونيد	mimunid	you (will) stay		
موندن (مونـ)	mundan (mun)	to stay/remain		
حدود	hodud-e	about, approximately		
هدف	hadaf	purpose, aim		
از	az	of; from		
سفر	safar	visit, trip		
واللا	vāllā	well [from Arabic والله wallāh by God]		
زبان	zabān	language		
زبانشناس	zabān-ŝenās	linguist		
لهجه	lahje	accent		

sweet

excellent short for است ast 'is' [in Esfahani accent] moŝaxxas specific, known kodum which eqāmat residence اقامت کردن (کنــ) eqāmat kardan (kon) to stay/reside happy; pleasant xoŝ umadid خوش اومدید welcome grateful, obliged mamnun xeili mamnun خیلی ممنون much obliged negahdār نگهدار protector

xodā negahdār خدا نگهدار Goodbye [lit May God be

your protector]

Language and culture notes Q

ŝirin



Future simple tense

The literary form of this tense is explained in the Reference grammar at the end of this book. In colloquial Persian, the present simple tense (see U5D1) is also used to refer to a future act or fact. Therefore, the sentence: چند وقت تو ایران میمونید؟

cand vaqt tu irän mimunid?

can have any of these meanings:

'How long do you stay in Iran?' OR:

'How long will you stay in Iran?' OR even:

'How long will you be staying in Iran?'

To make the verb negative, we add the prefix -; ne-:

ziād nemimunam.

I won't stay long.

Here is another sentence from the above dialogue using a similar structure:

مىرم هتل. I'll go to a hotel.

You will note that this is a reduced version of:

من به هتل میرم. man be hotel miram.

(See 'Reduction' in U4D1.)



With the help of the English translations, fill in each blank with the appropriate form of a verb from the box below. The first one has been done for you.

لردن (کنــ) **kardan (kon)** to do

(موندن (مونــ) **mundan (mun)** to stay (on); to

remain

to watch

	تماشا کردن (کنـ) رفتن (ر)	tamāŝā kardan (kon)	•• ,, ••••	
	رفتن (ر)	raftan	to go	
	سفر کردن (کنـ)	safar kardan (kon)	to travel	
	اقامت کردن (کنـ) برگشتن (گرد)	eqāmat kardan (kon)	to stay (re	eside)
	برگشتن (گرد)	bar gaŝtan (gard)	to return	
1	What are you (or	r: will you be) doing	g next week	tend?
				آخر هفتهی آینده چهکار؟
	āxar-e hafte-ye	āyande ce-kār	?	
	Example:			
				آخر هفتهی آینده چهکار میکنید؟
	āxar-e hafte-ye	āyande ce-kār mik	konid?	
2	Nothing! I'll stay	y at home and watch	n TV.	
			-	هیچّی! تو خونه و تلویزیون
	hicci! tu xune _	? o televizion	ı?	
3	I'll go to Paris fo	or shopping.		
				برای خرید به پاریس
	barāye xarid be	p1ris		
4	How will you tra	ivel?		
				با چی؟
	bā ci?			
5	Who will you tra	evel with?		

bā ki _____?

6 Where will you stay in Paris?

در پاریس، کجا _____؟

dar pāris, kojā?

7 How long will you stay in Paris?

چند وقت در پاریس _____؟

cand vaqt dar pāris _____?

8 When will you return to London?

کی به لندن _____؟

kei be landan _____?

Exercise 2

More practice with the verb (أومدن \mathbf{madan} ($\mathbf{\bar{a}}$) 'to come'. Can you say the following to a Persian-speaker? See U5D2 for help with this verb.

- 1 Will you come with me?
- 2 I'll come with you.
- 3 She'll come with us.
- 4 We'll come with you.
- 5 They'll come with me.
- 6 I'll come to your office tomorrow.
- Will you come to my party next weekend?

Descent continuous

r resent continuous

How to say 'I'm eating lunch.'

You will be delighted to know that colloquial Persian uses the same structure (i.e. the present simple tense, introduced in U5D1) to express all these forms:

```
I eat = present simple
I'll eat = future simple
I'm = present continuous
eating
```

(Who said Persian was a difficult language?!)

The verb needed is my favourite one: خوردن (خور) **xordan (xor)** 'to eat'.

```
nāhār I'm eating lunch. mixoram.
```

To emphasise the fact that we are in the middle of doing something, we add the verb (see $d\bar{a}stan(d\bar{a}r)$) 'to have' (see U3D2) purely as an auxiliary verb:

```
دارم ناهار میخورم. dāram nāhār mixoram.
```

I am (in the middle of) eating lunch.

Note: The object ناهار nāhār 'lunch' is sandwiched between the auxiliary verb dāram and the main verb میخورم mixoram. This can happen with adverbs, too:

```
المشما dāram bidār miŝam!
```

I'm waking up! [I'm beginning to wake up!]

الم كمكم بيدار ميشم! dāram kam-kam bidār miŝam!

I'm gradually waking up!

More examples:

al`ān dārid ce-kār mikonid? الآن داريد چه کار مي کنيد؟ What are you doing right now? الآن دارم تلويزيون تماشا مى كنم. al`ān dāram televizion tamāŝā mikonam. I'm watching TV right now. الآن دارم كار مىكنم. I'm working right now. al'ān dāram kār mikonam. دارم روى لهجهى اصفهانى كار مى كنم. dāram ru-ye lahje-ye esfahāni kār mikonam. I'm working on the Esfahani accent. دارم روى لهجهى شيرين اصفهانى كار مىكنم. dāram ru-ye lahje-ye ŝirin-e esfahāni kār mikonam. I'm working on the sweet Esfahani accent.

(This example appears in Dialogue 1 above.) Exercise 3



With the help of the English translations, complete the following sentences by putting appropriate numbers and letters in the boxes. Each sentence needs one item from each of the columns below to become complete. The first one has been done for you.

(1) داره (2) طقت المريد (2) طاريد (3) المرم (4) طقت المرب (5) طاريد (5) طاري (6) طاري طقت المرب (6) طاري طقت المرب المرب المرب (5) طاري طقت المرب الم	(a) بازی میکنند (b) میکنی اسلامی اسل
1 I'm going to the office. ما اداره. 3 d edāre.	5 We're watching a film فيلم film .
2 He/she's coming here. اینجا. injā.	6 Are you eating dinner? ا شام الله الله الله الله الله الله الله ال
3 What are you doing? إلى الله الله الله الله الله الله الله ال	7 They're playing tennis تنيس tenis
4 He/she's swimming.	

Main verbs



Auxiliary verbs

Put these jumbled sentences in order, and then translate them into English.

- مىخورم دارم من سوپ. 1 mixoram - dāram - man - sup.
- بازی می کنیم داریم فوتبال ما. 2 bāzi mikonim - dārim - futbāl - mā.
- شنا می کنند دارند اون ها. 3 ŝenā mikonand - dārand - unhā.
- 4 . وارم. گوش می کنم رادیو دارم. be guŝ mikonam rādio dāram.
- درس میده داره معلّم فارسی. 5 dars mide dāre mo`allem fārsi.
- داره پیانو کی میزنه؟ 6 dāre piāno ki mizane?
- 7 درست می کنیم داریم شام. dorost mikonim dārim ŝām.
- ايميلهاتونو چک ميکنيد داريد؟ 8 emeilhātun-o - cek mikonid - dārid?
- مىشورم ظرفهارو دارم. 9 miŝuram zarfhā-ro dāram.
- روزنامه داره خواهرم میخونه. 10 ruznāme - dāre - xāharam - mixune.

Exercise 5

Can you say these in Persian?

- 1 How long will you stay here?
- 9 Nothing. I'll stay at home.
- 2 I'll stay here for a month.
- 10 I'll go to Iran next year.
- 3 Where will you stay?
- 11 He/she's looking at you.
- 4 I'll rent a flat.
- 12 Are you writing a letter?
- 5 What are you doing 13 They're dancing. right now?
- 6 I'm listening to the news.
- 14 I'm buying a ticket/clothes.
- 7 I'm reading a newspaper.
- 15 I'm shopping for the New Year.

8 What will you be 16 Mahnaz is taking her son to school. doing this weekend?



Going through customs (Audio1; 53)

Participants: customs officer (o) + passenger (P).

- ت چمدونتونو بذارید رو میز، لطفاً.
 - P: این ساک دستی رو هم بذارم؟

 - ٥: چند نفرید؟
 - P: دو نفر: من و خانمم.
- P: چیز خاصّی نداریم. بیشتر لباس و وسایل شخصیه. کمی هم سوغات.

 - 0: خواهش می کنم. خب، لوازم برقی دارید؟
 - ان فقط یک ریش تراش دارم.
 - ٥: متشكّرم. بفرماييد. خوش بگذره.
- camedunetun-o bezārid ru miz, lotfan. O:
- in sāk-dasti-ro ham bezāram? P:
- bale, lotfan. O:
- befarmāyid. Р:
- cand nafarid? O:
- do nafar: man o xānomam. Р:
- ci dārid? O:
- ciz-e xāssi nadārim. biŝtar lebās o vasāyel-e ŝaxsie. kami ham sougāt. P:

- o: barāye man?
- P: qābeli nadāre!
- o: xāheŝ mikonam. xob, lavāzem-e barqi dārid?
- P: faqat yek riŝ-tarāŝ dāram.
- o: mot(a)ŝakkeram. befarmāyid. xoŝ begzare.
- O: Put your suitcase on the table, please.
- P: Shall I put down this holdall as well?
- o: Yes, please.
- P: Here you are.
- O: How many of you are there (together)?
- P: Two people: My wife and I.
- o: What have you got (to declare)?
- P: We haven't got anything special. It's mostly clothes and personal belongings. Also a few souvenirs.
- o: For me?
- P: Be my guest (lit It's not worthy [of you].) No, thanks (lit please). OK, do you have any electric appliances?
- P: I only have a shaver.
- o: Thank you. Please go ahead. Have a nice time.



Vocabulary

جمدون چمدون samedun suitcase چمدونتون camedunetun your suitcase پفارید bezārid (please) put ماکدستی sāk-dasti holdall بذارم bezāram shall I put

how many cand nafar person/people (when counting) ciz thing xāss special biŝtar mostly; more lebās clothes vasāyel means; things ŝaxsi personal vasäyel-e ŝaxsi personal effects/belongings kam little kami a little souqāt souvenir qābel worth; worthy qābeli a/any worth xāheŝ request xāheŝ mikonam I request (you not to say such things) lavāzem appliances barqi electric(al) faqat فقط only beard shaver Have a nice time. xoŝ begzare.

Language and culture notes



Imperative

How to say 'Put it on the table, please.'

The verb we need is: ^(ذار) **gozāŝtan (zār)** 'to put' Here is the formula:

Prefix = be- + present stem of verb

Note: The be- prefix carries the word stress.

Here is the result:

This form is used when asking a close friend to do something. For a more formal request, we add the suffix $\overset{\omega}{=}$ -id:

Now a more complete picture of the sentence:

bezārid ru miz, lotfan.

Put (it) on the table, please.

Now the sentence used in the dialogue:

camedunetun-o bezārid ru miz, lotfan.

Put your suitcase on the table, please.

To make the verb negative, we replace the **be-** prefix with **na-**.

Note: As always, the negative prefix carries the word stress.

camedunetun-o nazārid ru miz, lotfan.

Don't put your suitcase on the table, please.

More examples:

neŝastan (ŝin)	to sit (down)
lotfan injā beŝinid.	Please sit here.
lotfan unjā naŝinid.	Please don't sit there.
bastan (band)	to close
lotfan dar-o bebandid.	Please close the door.
lotfan dar-o nabandid.	Please don't close the door.
zadan (zan)	to play
lotfan kami piāno bezanid.	Please play the piano a little.
	lotfan injā beŝinid. lotfan unjā naŝinid. bastan (band) lotfan dar-o bebandid. lotfan dar-o nabandid. zadan (zan) lotfan kami piāno

Special cases

It is all about the 'Present stem' (PS for short). Some PSes are not colloquialised at all, while others are to varying degrees. Here are the verbs exemplified in the table on p. 96: **Note:** PSes normally appear in (...). Where there is a difference between the colloquial PS and the full literary PS, the latter is placed in [...].

Verbs 1 and 2: Such verbs are the easiest to learn as their PSes are not colloquialised.

Verb 3: The PS is not colloquialised, but the **be-** prefix is.

Verb 4: The PS loses its first syllable.

Verb 5: The PS loses its vowel.

Verb 6: Has two literary PSes:

(b) dah Generic: This is colloquialised as: deh Used with imperative informal 'you'. It is not colloquialised.

Verb 7: Has two literary PSes:

(b) rav Generic: This is colloquialised as: r rou Used with imperative informal 'you'. It is not colloquialised, but note the vowel change in the prefix!

Verb 8: Has two literary PSes:

- (a) مُو sav Generic: This is colloquialised as: \$
- (b) sou Used with imperative informal 'you'. It is not colloquialised.

Note: With compound verbs, the be- prefix is often dropped. See

below.

Verb 9: Has two stems:

- (b) مست hast (generic) باث bāŝ (used with all imperative forms) Verb 10: Has two stems:
- (b) دار dār (generic) داشته باشه dāŝte bāŝ (used with all imperative forms)

No	Literary		Colloquial		Meaning	
	Formal	Informal	Formal	Informal		
1	بينديد bebandid	ببند beband	ببندید bebandid	ببند beband	Close!	
2	ببینید bebinid	ببين bebin	ببينيد bebinid	ببين bebin	See/Look!	
3	ېخوريد bexorid	پخور bexor	بُخوريد boxorid	بخور boxor	Eat!	
4	ېگنارىد begozārid	بگذار begozār	بذارید bezārid	بذار bezär	Put!	
5	بگویید beguyid	بگو begu	بگید begid	ېگو begu	Tell/Say!	
6	بِدهيد bedahid	بده bedeh	بدید bedid	بده bedeh	Give!	
7	پروید beravid	borou	برید berid	borou	Go!	
8	بلند شوید boland ŝavid	بلند شُوْ boland ŝou	بلند شيد boland ŝid	بلند شُوْ boland ŝou	Get up!	
9	باشید bāŝid	باش bāŝ	باشید bāŝid	باش bāŝ	Be!	
10	داشته باشید dāŝte bāŝid	داشته باش dāŝte bāŝ	داشته باشید däŝte bäŝid	داشته باش däŝte bäŝ	Have!	

Examples for 9 and 10:

sabur bāŝ/bāŝid! Be patient! (inf/f) عليد! عليه معلم المسلم المس

For the negative, the prefix is used:

```
naband
                  Don't close
                  Don't eat
naxor
nazār
                  Don't put
                  Don't tell/say
nagu
nadeh
                  Don't give
                  Don't go (inf)
narou
boland naŝou
                  Don't get up
                 Don't worry (lit Don't be worried)
negarān nabāŝ
```

Note what happens to the **be-** prefix when the present stem of the verb begins with the vowel أَ عَ: (أَ) المحن الله with the vowel أَ وَدِدْنَ (أَرَ) المحن الله avordan (ār) to bring

```
biāid Come (inf) بيايد biāid Come (f) بيايد biār Bring (inf) بياريد biārid Bring (f)
```

Also note the negative forms:

```
inayā Don't come (inf) نيايد nayāid Don't come (f) نياد nayār Don't bring (inf) نياريد nayārid Don't bring (f)
```

Some compound verbs find it more convenient to drop the **be-** prefix. Among them are برداشتن (علاد) bar dāŝtan (dār) 'to pick up'; bar gaŝtan (gard) 'to return'; and those formed with the help of the verbs كردن (كن) kardan (kon) 'to do' and شدن (ش) ŝodan (ŝ) 'to become':

```
lotfan guŝi-ro لطفأ گوشي رو برداريد.
                                                  Please pick up the
                           bar dārid.
                                                    receiver/phone.
     لطفاً بر گردید.
لطفاً تلفن کنید.
لطفاً باز کنید.
                        lotfan bar gardid.
                                                  Please return.
                        lotfan telefon konid. Please telephone.
                        lotfan bāz konid.
                                                  Please open.
      لطفأٍ صبر كنيد.
                        lotfan sabr konid.
                                                  Please wait.
      لطفأ بلند شيد.
                        lotfan boland ŝid.
                                                  Please get up.
                        lotfan bidar ŝid.
                                                  Please wake up.
```

.لطفأ بلند نشيد lotfan boland naŝid. Please don't get up.

prefix For the negative, we add the na-: lotfan guŝi-ro لطفأ گوشىرو برنداريد. Please don't pick up bar nadārid. the receiver/phone. .lotfan bar nagardid. Please don't return لطفأ برنگردید. lotfan telefon لطفاً تُلُفنُ نُكنيد. Please don't nakonid. telephone. . لطفاً باز نكنيد. lotfan bāz nakonid. Please don't open.

```
Also note these interesting cases: (Audio1; 55)
sālādet-o boxor. (Intonation: low fall) سالادتو بخور.
Eat your salad. (Request/order)
sālādet-o boxori! (Intonation: high fall) سالادتو بخوري!
Eat your salad! (Don't forget! Make sure you do!)
. درو باز نکن dar-o bāz nakon. (Intonation: low fall)
Don't open the door. (Request/pleading)
dar-o bāz nakoni! (Intonation: high fall) درو باز نکنی!
Don't open the door! (Warning! Be careful not to!)
sālādetun-o boxorid. (Intonation: low fall) سالادتونو بخوريد.
Eat your salad. (Request/order)
sālādetun-o boxorid! (Intonation: high fall) سالادتونو بخوريد!
Eat your salad! (Don't forget! Make sure you do!)
dar-o bāz nakonid. (Intonation: low fall) درو باز نکنید.
Don't open the door. (Request/pleading)
dar-o baz nakonid! (Intonation: high fall) درو باز نکنید!
```

As in English, when we are asking someone to do us a favour, it is perhaps more polite to use a question form (rather than the imperative). Compare:

Don't open the door! (Warning! Be careful not to!)

un dar-o mibandid, Will you close that lotfan? door, please?

un dar-o bebandid, Close that door, please.

Exercise 6

With the help of the English translations, fill in each blank with the correct verb form.

1	Please sit here. (f)		
	الطفأ اينجا lotfan injā		
	Example:		
	. لطفاً اينجا بشينيد lotfan injā beŝinid.		
2	Please close the window. (inf) ——— الطفا پنجرهرو lotfan panjara-ro		
3	Please play the violin a little. (f) لطفاً كمى ويولن		
4	Please tell (me) your name. (f) لطفأ اسمتونو		
5	Please give (me) your telephone number. (f) لطفاً شماره تلفنتونو		
	lotfan ŝomāre telefonetun-o		
6	Please go to Room 10. (f)		
6			
	Please go to Room 10. (f)		
	Please go to Room 10. (<i>f</i>) . اتاق ده. otāq-e dah.		
	Please go to Room 10. (f) منا اتاق ده. Please go out! (inf)		
7	Please go to Room 10. (f) .ه. اتاق ده. Please go out! (inf) الطفأ الطفا الله الله الله الله الله الله الله ال		
7	Please go to Room 10. (f) .ه. اتاق ده. اتاق ده. Please go out! (inf) الطفأ الطفا الله الله الله الله الله الله الله ال		

- 10 Please bring some water. (f) _____ الطفأ كمى آب lotfan kami āb _____
- 11 Please open the door. (inf) _____ لطفأ درو _____
- 12 Please wait a moment. (f)

_____ lotfan yek lahze لطفأ يک لحظه



Make the sentences in Exercise 6 negative. The first one has been done for you.

1 Please don't sit here. (f)

.lotfan injā naŝinid لطفأ اينجا نشينيد



Change the requests made in Exercise 6 into question forms. The new requests will be more polite! The first one has been done for you.

1 Will you sit here, please? (f) اینجا می شینید، لطفاً؟ injā miŝinid, lotfan?

A polite 'go ahead' signal

The verb used is فرمودن (فرما) **farmudan (farmā)** which originally meant 'to command/order'. Put in the imperative form, this is how it looks: بفرمایید **befarmāyid**. In modern Persian, this conveys the meaning 'please go ahead' and is used in various situations including: when answering the phone, offering a seat or food to a guest, handing something to someone, asking someone to come in, or go in/out first, inviting others to say what they wish to say, etc. Naturally, this is often accompanied by an appropriate gesture.

How to say 'Let's go.'

The imperative form can be extended to first and third persons by adding the appropriate personal ending:

berim. Let's go.

. **berand** Let them go home.

چند دقیقه صبر کنند، زود برمی گردم.

cand dagige sabr konand, zud bar migardam.

Let them (or: ask them to) wait a few minutes, I'll return soon.

The same form can be used for consultation or suggestion:

?berim بريم؟ Shall we go? emŝab berim امشب بریم سینما؟ Shall we go to the cinema tonight? ?dar-o bebandam? Shall I close the door درو ببندم؟ qahve dorost قهوه درست کنم؟ Shall I make (some) konam? coffee? ?mive biāram ميوه بيارم؟ Shall I bring (you some) fruit? ?cāi berizam چای بریزم Shall I pour (you some) ریختن (ریز) ?tea rixtan (riz) to pour yek cāi-e dige یک چای دیگه بریزم؟ Shall I pour (you) another (cup of) tea?



What proposals (or consultations) are being made?

Vocabulary needed:

rouŝan/xāmuŝ to turn on/off روشن / خاموش کردن (کنــ) kardan (kon) xābidan (xāb) خوابيدن (خوابـ) hālā to (go to) sleep now

- ? ŝām boxorim شام بخوريم؟ 1
- emŝab berim resturān. امشب بریم رستوران. 2
- 3 Skodum resturān berim?
- 4 ؛ تلویزیونو روشن کنم
- 5 ببینیم تلُویزیُونَ چی داره. bebinim televizion ci dāre. 6 حالا کمی تلویزیون تماشا کنیم. hālā kami televizion tamāŝā
- ? televizion-o xāmuŝ konam تلويزيونو خاموش كنم؟
- hālā beŝinim o bebinim حالا بشينيم و ببينيم بأبا بزرگ چي مي گند. 8 bābā bozorg ci migand.
- nālā bexābim.

How to say 'Have a nice time.'

Vocabulary needed:

```
موش خوش pleasant(ly)
gozaŝtan (gozar) (for something, e.g. time)
to pass
```

The pattern is: خوش بگذره! **xoŝ begzare!** reduced to **xoŝ begzare!**

It literally means: 'Let (or) may (the time) pass pleasantly (to you).'

Or simply: 'Have a nice time!' This can be used in various contexts such as:

```
ta`tilāt xoŝ Have a nice begzare. holiday.

āxar-e hafte xoŝ Have a nice holiday.

āxar-e hafte xoŝ Have a nice weekend.

weekend. Have a nice (time xoŝ begzare. at the) party.

irān xoŝ begzare. Have a nice time in Iran.
```

A common reply is:

```
mamnun, ŝomā Thanks, you too.
ham hamintour.
```



Ask a Persian speaking friend:

- 1 To eat (some) fruit.
- 2 To come and sit next to you.
- 3 To pass (*lit* give) the salad/salt.
- 4 To bring (you) some water.
- 5 To close/open the door/window.
- 6 To make (some) tea.
- 7 To turn on/off the light.
- 8 To pick up their book.
- 9 To put their pen in their pocket.

- 10 To (go to) sleep!
- 11 To wake up!

Sequencing

Note this sequencing difference between English and Persian:

من و پيتر		Peter and I (lit I and Peter)
من و دوستم	man o	my friend and I (lit I and
	dustam	my friend)
من و شوهرم	man o	my husband and I (lit I and
	ŝouharam	my husband)
من و خانمم	man o	my wife and I (lit I and my wife)
	xānomam	

Be my guest!

When the customs officer jokingly asks if the souvenirs are for him, the passenger replies: qābeli nadāre! Literally, this means 'it doesn't have any/much worth', but functionally, it conveys this message: 'You'd be more than welcome to have them as a gift, although they're not worthy of you.' This is a very common, almost socially/culturally expected, response to a comment made by others about one of our belongings. See the dialogue for a common reply to this.

Exercise 11

Can you say these in Persian?

- 1 Where shall I put your sandwich?
- 2 Bring (it) here, please!
- 3 Will you bring (me) some souvenirs from Iran?
- 4 Will you play the guitar at/in my birthday party?
- 5 Don't eat that apple it's bad/rotten.

- 6 Will you pass (*lit* give) the mayonnaise, please?
- 7 What did you do last weekend? Tell (me)!
- 8 Don't go to his party.
- 9 What shall we eat for dinner?
- 10 Don't tell (say to) Ahmad (about it).
- 11 Don't listen to him.
- 12 Close/open your eyes.
- 13 Enjoy the party.
- 14 Have a nice weekend. Thanks, you too.
- 15 My father and I will go to Iran next summer. Have a nice time.
- 16 Shall we go to the supermarket this afternoon?
- 17 How many of you are there?
- 18 There are four of us: my wife and I and two children.
- 19 Please come to our house and bring your children, too.
- 20 Please don't worry (*lit* Don't be worried.) Please wait a few moments, I'll return home soon.
- 22 Shall I bring your dinner?
- 23 Which film shall we watch/see?
- 24 Please don't come here again!

Comprehension (Audio1; 56)

Listen to the conversation between James (J) and a taxi driver (D) and answer the questions in English.

- این چمدونو کجا بذارم؟
- D: بذارید تو صندوق عقب. ... خب، کجا میرید؟
 - هتل فردوسی، لطفاً. میدونید کجاست؟
 - D: بله. ... اهل كجاييد؟
 - استرالیا.
 - D: چند وقت تو ایران میمونید؟
- دو هفته. ... لطفاً همینجا جلوی سوپرمارکت نگه دارید.
 - D: چشم، بفرمایید.
 - ۱: خیلی ممنون. چند شد؟
 - D: هزار تومن.
 - ن بفرمایید.
 - D: مرسى. خوش بگذره.

- J: in camedun-o kojā bezāram?
- D: bezārid tu sanduq(e) aqab ... xob, kojā mirid?
- J: hotel ferdousi, lotfan. midunid kojāst?
- D: bale ... ahl-e kojāyid?
- J: osterāliā.
- D: cand vaqt tu irān mimunid?
- J: do hafte... lotfan hamin-jā jelo-ye supermārket negah dārid.
- D: caŝm, befarmāyid.
- J: xeili mamnun. cand ŝod?
- D: hezār toman.
- J: befarmāyid.
- D: mersi. xoŝ begzare.
- 1 What advice does J seek and get?
- 2 Why doesn't J give D the address of his destination?
- 3 Where is J from?
- 4 How long does he intend to stay in Iran?
- 5 Where does he want to get off?

- 6 How much does he pay for his fare?
- What does the driver say at the end of the dialogue?

Unit Seven

در ایران

dar irān

In Iran

In this unit we will look at how to:



- get a taxi to your destination
- talk about what might/may/can/should/must happen ask someone if
- he/she wants you to do something for him/her book and check into a hotel
- complain about the standard of a hotel



Persepolis, Shiraz. Photograph by Donal O'Leary.



Getting a taxi (Audio1; 57)

Getting (hunting for!) a taxi in Tehran is an art! In the unlikely event of finding a completely empty taxi, here is a potential conversation a passenger (P) may hold with the driver (D).

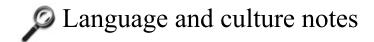
- P: تا شمرون چند؟
- D: پنج هزار تومن.
- P: سه هزار تومن میبرید؟
- ت چهار (هزار) و پونصد آخرش.
 باشه. این چمدون خیلی سنگینه. می تونید بذارید تو صندوق عقب، لطفأ؟
 - ت خواهش می کنم. ...
- е: همین جاها پیاده میشم، خیلی ممنون. بفرمایید، چهار هزار و

- tā ŝemrun cand? P:
- panj hezār toman. D:
- se hezār toman mibarid? P:

- D: cā?r (hezār) o punsad āxareŝ.
- P: bāŝe. in camedun xeili sangine. mitunid bezārid tu sanduq(e) aqab, lotfan?
- D: xāheŝ mikonam ...
- P: haminjāhā piāde miŝam, xeili mamnun. befarmāyid, cā?r hezār o punsad toman.
- P: How much to Shemrun (Shemran)?
- D: 5,000 tumans.
- P: Will you take (me there for) 3,000 tumans?
- D: 4,500 (tumans is) the last (price).
- P: OK. This suitcase is very heavy. Can you put (it) in the boot, please?
- D: By all means ...
- P: I'll get out somewhere here, thank you. Here you are, 4,500 tumans.



up to col for شمیران Shemiran (a place) tuman Iranian currency = 10 rials will you take/carry to take/carry bordan (bar) last, end āxareŝ the final (price) bāŝe OK (lit let it be; so be it) sangin heavy سنگين mitunid can you tunestan (tun) to be able bezārid (for you to) put sanduq(-e) aqab car boot xāheŝ mikonam by all means hamin-jä right here hamin-jāhā somewhere here piāde miŝam I'll get off/out piāde ŝodan (ŝ) to get off/out



Simple subjunctive

How to say 'Can you put it ...?'

The mi-prefix (introduced in U5D1, also used in U6D1) suggests that the act or fact expressed by the verb is definite, as in:

```
امشب میریم سینما. emŝab mirim sinemā.
We'll go (or: we're going) to the cinema tonight.
Verb used: (ر) raftan (r) to go
```

When the 'definiteness' of the act or fact expressed by the verb is somehow affected by a preceding verb, the second verb takes a - be- prefix, as in:

```
امشب مى تونيم بريم سينما. emŝab mitunim berim sinemā.
We can go to the cinema tonight.
```

Additional verb used: تونستن (تون tunestan (tun) to be able Thus, when two verbs follow each other, the second verb takes a به be- prefix.

```
تونستن (تونـ) :Verb 1
گذاشتن (ذار) :Verb 2
                                              to be able
                           tunestan (tun)
                           gozāŝtan (zār)
                                               to put
                      mitunid
                                            you can
         مىذاريد
                      mizārid
                                            you put
   مى تونيد بذاريد
                      mitunid bezărid
                                            you can put
   میتونید بذارید تو صندوق عقب؟
   mitunid bezārid tu sandug agab?
   Can you put (it) in the boot?
```

For ease of reference, the form taken by the second verb will be referred to as the 'subjunctive'. (Compare with the imperative, U6D2.) **Note**: With some compound verbs, the → **be-** prefix is dropped: مى تونم پنجرورو باز كنم؟

mitunam panjara-ro bāz konam?

Can I open the window?

How to say: 'I want to go'.

Here, again, we have two verbs to deal with:

```
Verb 1: [خواهـ] خواستن (خوا) [خواهـ] xāstan (xā) [xāh] to want
Verb 2: رفتن (ر) [رَوا to go
```

The formula is similar to the above. However, since the reduced colloquial/spoken form of Verb 1 is slightly different from its full literary/written form, first let us familiarise ourselves with both in the following table.

Literary (written)	Colloquial (spoken)	Meaning
mi+xāh+am مىخواھم	mixām مىخوام	I want
ml+xāh+i مىخواھى	mixāl میخوای	you want (informal)
mi+xāh+ad مىخواھد	mixād مىخواد	he/she/it wants
mi+xāh+im میخواهیم	mixāim مىخوايم	we want
mi+xāh+id مىخواھىد	mixāid مىخوايد	you want (formal/plural)
mi+xāh+and میخواهند	mixānd مىخواند	they want
من میخوام برم.	man mixām beram.	I want to go.
تو میخوای بری.	to mixāi beri.	You (inf) want to go.
او میخواد بره.	u mixād bere.	He/she wants to
ما مىخوايم بريم.	mā mixāim berim.	We want to go.
شما میخواید برید.	ŝomā mixāid berid.	You want to go.
اونها ميخواند برند.	unhā mixānd berand	 They want to go.

* You will have noticed that different personal endings have been used for the two verbs. Here is an explanation. When the present stem of Verb 1 is colloquialised, it loses the letter $-\mathbf{h}$, leaving a present stem which ends in a vowel. In such instances, colloquial Persian uses the literary ending $-\mathbf{ad}$ with the initial vowel dropped. (Compare with the verb $-\mathbf{umadan}$ $-\mathbf{ad}$ with the initial vowel dropped. (Compare with the verb $-\mathbf{umadan}$ $-\mathbf{ad}$ in U5D2.) To make the above sentences negative, we add $-\mathbf{ne}$ - before $-\mathbf{mi}$:

Compare these literary forms with their colloquial counterparts above:

```
man mixāham beravam. I want to go. you want to go. You want to go. (inf)

u mixāhad beravad. He/she wants to go.
```

Note the following examples where the subject of the second verb is a different person: مع خواید برم؟

mixāid beram?

Do you want me to go?

?مىخوايد پنجرەرو ببندم **mixāid panjara-ro bebandam?**Do you want me to close the window?

Important: The verbs بودن budan 'to be' and داشتن dāŝtan 'to have', have their own special subjunctive stems, باشه bāŝ and داشته باشه dāŝte bāŝ respectively.

```
مىخوام نوروز در ايران باشم.

mixām nouruz dar irān bāŝam.

I want to be in Iran (on) New Year's Day.

مىخواد دو تا ماشين داشته باشه.

mixād do tā māŝin dāŝte bāŝe.

He/she wants to have two cars.
```

A verb occurring after these special verbs and verb forms normally takes the subjunctive form. Also note their negative forms.

Vocabulary used: بايد **bāyad** must, should; مايد **ŝāyad** maybe, perhaps, might; ممكنه **momken** possible; ممكنه **momken** it's possible, may; **behtar** better; بهتر **behtare** it's better.

```
باید برم.
              bāyad beram.
                                    I must/should go.
 نباید برم.
              nabāyad beram.
                                    I mustn't/shouldn't go.
 شايد برم.
              ŝāyad beram.
                                    I might go.
 شايد نرم.
              ŝāyad naram.
                                    I might not go.
ممكنه برم.
              momkene beram.
                                    I may go.
ممكنه نرم.
              momkene naram.
                                    I may not go.
              behtare beram.
                                    I'd better go.
 بهتره برم.
 بهتره نرم.
              behtare naram.
                                    I'd better not go.
```

More examples:

sāyad xune bāŝand. (at) home.

sāyad xune bāŝand. They might be bāŝand. (at) home.

They might not be nabāŝand. (at) home.

momkene māŝin dāŝte bāŝe. have a car.

momkene māŝin have a car.

momkene māŝin have a car.



Write the correct form of the verb in the blanks.

, , 11	the the confect form of the vero in the ordina
1	Do you want to go?
	mixāid? raftan (r) مىخوايد وفتن (ر) وmixāid berid?
2	Can we go to a restaurant tonight? امشب می تونیم رستوران؟ رفتن (ر) emŝab mitunim resturān? raftan (r)
3	I must sit down.
	باید ؟ نشستن (شینــ)

4 I'd better close the window.

bāyad _____. neŝastan (ŝin)

5 Do you want me to open the window?

6 Can you be here early morning tomorrow?

```
مىتونىد فردا صبح زّود اينجا ُ بودن (باشــ) بودن (باشــ) mitunid fardā sobh-e zud injā
```

7 He might know her name.

	شايد اسمشو دونستن (دونــ) ŝāyad esmeŝ-o dunestan (dun)
8	Do you want to see a film? میخوای یک فیلم ؛ دیدن (بینـ) mixāi yek film ? didan (bin)
9	I might have his phone number. (مايد شماره تلفنشو داشتن (داشته باشــ) \$ قayad \$ omāre telefone\$-o dā\$tan (dā\$te bā\$
10	He may not have time. (داشتُه باشــ) المكنه وقت داشتن (داشتُه باشــ) momkene vaqt dāŝtan (dāŝte bāŝ)
11	He may be tired. (باشـ) ممكنه خسته بودن (باشـ) momkene xaste budan (bāŝ)
12	He may not be at home. (باشـ) ممكنه خونه بودن (باشـ) momkene xune budan (bāŝ)

Exercise 2

Use one of these words in each sentence and make the necessary changes. Follow the example.

```
bāyad must/should نباید nabāyad mustn't/

sāyad might shouldn't shouldn't ممکنه behtare it's better ممکنه momkene may
```

1 emruz ahmad-o mibinam. o emruz bāyad ahmad-o bebinam.

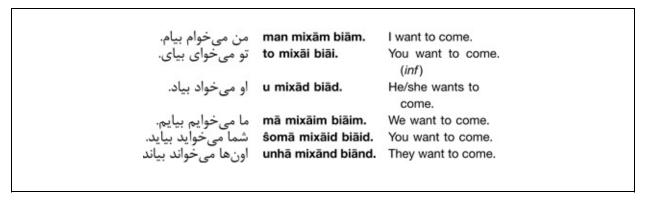
I will see Ahmad today. \rightarrow I must see Ahmad today.

Tomorrow the weather will become better. → Tomorrow the weather might

become better.

How to say 'I, you, etc, want to come.'

It has already been mentioned that verbs whose present stem ends in a vowel need more attention. We have met two such verbs so far: (\bar{a}) umadan (\bar{a}) 'to come' and ' \bar{a} \bar{a} \bar{a} \bar{a} \bar{a} 'to want'. They are now brought together in the box below. Please pay particular attention to the way in which the \bar{a} beprefix is slightly modified when it is connected to the present stem of the verb 'to come'.



Exercise 3

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate form of ($\bar{\mathbf{a}}$) 'to come'. Follow the example.

1	man mixām bā to	۱- من میخوام با تو
	I want to come with you.	
	Example:	من میخوام با تو بیام.
	man mixām bā to biām.	من میخوام با تو بیام.
2	mixāid bā man	٣- او مىخواد با ما
	Do you want to	٣- او مىخواد با ما

3 u mixād bā mā

She wants to come with us.

4 mā mixāim bā s;omā _____.

We want to come with you.

5 unh1ā mixānd bā man _____.

They want to come with me.

Exercise 4

Can you say these in Persian?

- 1 Can I see the news? By all means.
- 2 Must you see this film right now? No, I can see (it) tomorrow.
- We'd better not sit here.
- 4 I might have his phone number/address.
- 5 You must/should have patience.
- 6 You must be very 222:5:





Checking into a hotel (Audio1; 60)

Mr Gowhari (G) booked a room when he telephoned the hotel last week. He has just arrived at the hotel where he is greeted by the receptionist (R). The porter is Parviz (P).

- G: سلام خانم.
- R: سلام آقا.
- G: خسته نباشید.
- G: من گوهری هستم. هفتهی پیش به دفتر تون تلفن کردم و یک اتاق برای پنج روز رزرو کردم.
- R: اجازه بدید دفترو نگاه کنم. بله، درسته قربان. شماره ی اتاقتون سی

- G: متشكّرم. ببخشيد، ممكنه لطفأ بگيد اين چمدونهارو بيارند بالا؟
 - الله قربان. پرویز جان، لطفاً چمدونهای آقارو ببر اتاق ۳۸.
- بفرمایید آقا، از این طرف لطفاً. ... این هم شمارهی ۳۸. اتاق خوبیه.
 رو به پارکه. منظرهاش خیلی قشنگه.
 - G: چمدونها سنگین بود. دست شما درد نکنه.
 - P: سر شما درد نکنه.
 - G: بفرمایید، این قابل شما نیست.
 - P: خيلي ممنون.

- G: salām xānom.
- R: salām āqā.
- G: xaste nabāŝid.
- R: salāmat bāŝid. befarmāyid.
- G: man gouhari hastam. hafte-ye piŝ be daftaretun telefon kardam va yek otāq barāye panj ruz rezerv kardam.
- R: ejāze bedid daftar-o negā(h) konam. bale, doroste qorbān. ŝomāre-ye otāqetun si o haŝte.
- G: mot(a)ŝakkeram. bebaxŝid, momkene lotfan begid in camedunh?-ro biārand bālā?
- R: bale qorbān. parviz jān, lotfan camedunhā-ye āqā-ro bebar otāq-e si o haŝt.
- P: befarmāyid āqā, az in taraf lotfan. ... in ham ŝomāre-ye si o haŝt. otāq-e xubie. ru be pārke. manzaraŝ? xeili qaŝange.
- G: camedunhā sangin bud. dast-e ŝomā dard nakone.
- P: sar-e ŝomā dard nakone.
- G: befarmāyid, in qābel-e ŝomā nist.
- P: xeili mamnun.
- G: Hello madam.
- R: *Hello sir*.
- G: [lit] May you not be tired [Small talk].
- R: [lit] May you be in health [Small talk]. What can I do for you?

- G: I'm Gowhari. Last week I telephoned your office and booked a room for five days.
- R: Allow me to have a look in the book. Yes, that's right sir. Your room number is 38.
- G: Thank you. Excuse me, could you please ask someone to bring the suitcases upstairs?
- R: Yes sir. Dear Parviz, please take the gentleman's suitcases to room 38.
- P: Let's go sir, this way please. ... Here's number 38. It's a good room. It's facing the park. It has a very nice view.
- G: The suitcases were heavy. Thank you.
- P: You're welcome.
- G: Here you are, this (tip) is not worthy of you.
- P: *Much obliged*.



AB Vocabulary

خسته	xaste	tired
نباشيد	nabāŝid	may you not be
سلامت	salāmat	health
باشيد	bāŝid	may you be
هفته	hafte	week
پیش	piŝ	last, ago
دفتر	daftar	office; book
تلفن کردن (کنــ)	telefon kardan (kon)	to telephone
اتاق	otāq	room
رزرو کردن (کنـ)	rezerv kardan (kon)	to book/reserve
اجازه	ejäze	permission
اجازه دادن (د)	ejāze dādan (d)	to allow (lit to give permission)
نگاہ کردن (کنے)	negāh kardan (kon)	to look
درست	dorost	correct, right
قربان	qorbān	Sir (used by a junior in rank addressing a senior)
ممكن	momken	possible
ممكنه	momkene	is it possible
	begid	(for you to) tell/ask
بيارند	biārand	(for them to) bring
آوردن (آر)	āvordan (ār)	to bring
كالإ	bālā	up, upstairs

take/carry (بر) bordan (bar) to take/carry in ham این هم here's (lit this also) rube روبه facing manzare منظره view manzaraŝ منظرهاش its view dast-e ŝomā dard دست شما درد نکنه. Thank you. sar-e ŝomā dard سر شما درد نکنه. You're welcome. nakone. qābel قابل worthy

Language and culture notes Q



Jiliali tain

```
A: خسته نباشید. xaste nabāšid. May you not be tired.

B: سلامت باشید. salāmat bāšid. May you be in health.
```

This is one of the most common mini dialogues used by Persianspeakers in various social as well as work situations. A's sentence is an expression of appreciation of B'S hard work – in the office, or in the kitchen preparing delicious meals for guests. Something functionally similar is used in English when a guest says to his host: 'You must be exhausted going to all this trouble (preparing all this food for us)!'

So there is a shared reference to 'fatigue' in both cases, as a mark of appreciation.

Structured infinitive

How to say 'to telephone someone'

A structured infinitive (SI for short) is a verb pattern that gives all the structural elements needed to construct a sentence, with each element shown in its appropriate place. For instance 'to telephone someone' is an SI in English, on which basis you can make a sentence like: 'I telephoned Peter.' If we have the Persian equivalent of this SI, we should be able to make a similar sentence in Persian, with equal ease! Here it is:

```
په 'someone' تلفن کردن (کنے)
```

be 'someone' telefon kardan (kon)

to telephone 'someone'

Based on the above Persian SI, let us make a sentence.

be piter telefon kardam.

I telephoned Peter.

You will note that the above Persian SI needs a preposition, **be** 'to', while its English equivalent does not. This is what makes the notion of SI all the more important, since bilingual dictionaries often provide little structural help on what other elements, if any, are needed, and where to put them. They may give an

equivalent for the word 'happy' in Persian, but that is where the learner is 'abandoned'. If the learner wanted to say, for example, 'I'm happy with my car/flat/job, etc.', he would have no idea as to what preposition is used in Persian, if any, and where to put it. However, if we have the Persian equivalent of 'to be happy with X', we should have little difficulty in producing the above sentence in Persian. This and two further examples are given below.

```
از 'X' راضی بودن (هست)

az 'X' rāzi budan (hast) to be happy with 'X'

از 'X' عصبانی بودن (هست)

az 'X' asabāni budan (hast) to be angry with 'X'

(یک سؤال) از 'someone' پرسیدن (پرســ)

(yek so'āl) az 'someone' porsidan (pors) to ask 'someone'

(a question)
```

Examples:

- (a) من از ماشین راضی هستم. man az māŝin rāzi hastam. I'm happy with the car.
- (b) \$amā az man asabāni hastid? من عصبانى هستيد؟ Are you angry with me?
- (c) من یک سؤال از اُحمد پرسیدم. man yek so`āl az ahmad porsidam. I asked Ahmad a question.

You will note that in all the Persian examples above, the preposition is az is used, which is a dictionary equivalent for the English word 'from'. In (a) and (b), English uses the preposition 'with', and in (c), none. A dictionary equivalent for 'with' in Persian is bā. A typical mistake made by English speakers learning Persian is when they use bā instead of az in (a) and (b) above. If it is any consolation, Iranian learners of English make a similar mistake when they say: 'I'm satisfied from [instead of with] my job!' Obviously, both are influenced by their respective mother tongues.

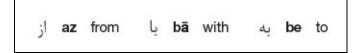
Here is another useful SI:

... montazer-e منتظر ... بودن (هست) to be waiting budan (hast) for . . . montazer-e ki hasti? منتظر کی هستی؟ Who are you waiting for? .montazer-e ahmadam منتظر احمدم I'm waiting for Ahmad. montazer-e ci hasti? منتظر چی هستی؟ What are you waiting for? .montazer-e axbāram. I'm waiting for the news.

Exercise 5

Fill in each blank with a preposition from the list below.

Warning: Please do not be influenced by English structure!



١- امروز صبح _____ خانمم تلفن كردم.

1 emruz sobh _____ xānomam telefon kardam.

This morning I phoned my wife.

۲- او _____ کارش راضی نیست.

2 u ____ kāreŝ rāzi nist.

She is not happy with her job.

٣- چند سؤال ____ او پرسيدم.

3 cand so`;āl _____ u porsidam.

I asked her some questions.

۴- او _____ من عصبانی بود.

4 u ____ man asabāni bud.

. " 6	1	۔:ا خ	· ^
رصم.	سينما	خانمم	۵- من

man _____ xānomam sinemā raftam. 5

I went to the cinema with my wife.

An idiom for 'thank you'

The expression دست شما درد نکنه **dast-e ŝomā dard nakone** 'thank you' (lit May

your hand not ache!) is used to thank someone for something they have done for us, particularly with the use of their hands – e.g. handing something to us, or صر شما درد نکنه cooking a delicious meal for us, etc. An echo reply is normally

sar-e somā dard nakone 'you're welcome' (lit May your head not ache!) Other exchange versions this would be:

. دستتون درد نکنه. dastetun dard nakone. Thank you. saretun dard nakone. You're welcome. . دستت درد نکنه. dastet dard nakone. Thank you. (inf) You're welcome. (inf) .saret dard nakone سرت درد نکنه



At the dinner table, an Iranian friend has passed you the salt.

- How do you thank them?
- How would they respond?

Expressions used to book a hotel (Audio2; 1)



hotel-e panj setāre five-star hotel otāq-e yek-nafare dārid? Do you have a single room? a double room a twin room how much is it for each night? for each person

چک / کارت اعتباری قبول می کنید؟ cek/kārt-e e`tebāri qabul mikonid? Do you accept cheques/credit cards?

اتاق با دوش / حمّام / توالت / تلفن مىخوام. otāq-e bā duŝ/hammām/tuālet/telefon mixām.

I want a room with a shower/bathroom/toilet/telephone.

قيمت شامل صبحانه / ناهار / شام مىشه؟ qeimat ŝāmel-e sobhāne/nāhār/ŝām miŝe? Does the price include breakfast/lunch/dinner?

پنج نفریم: دو تا بزرگسال و سه تا بچّه. panj nafarim: do ta bozorg-sāl va se tā bacce.

We're five: two adults and three children.



Can you translate the following sentences into English?

1 mixām yek otāq-e do-nafare bā duŝ rezerv konam, lotfan.

2 hotel-e cār-set1re mixāim.

3 tarjihan tu markaz-e ŝahr bāŝe.

4 in otāq ŝabi cande?

5 in qeimat ŝāmel-e nāhār ham miŝe?

0

Expressions used to complain about a hotel (Audio2;

2)

ببخشيد، مى تونم با مدير هتل صحبت كنم؟

bebaxŝid, mitunam bā modir-e hotel sohbat konam?

Excuse me, can I speak with the hotel manager?

ملافهما كثيفه malāfehā kasife. The sheets are dirty.

telefon kār The telephone is not nemikone. working.

كامپيوتر / تلويزيون / دوش / شير آب / پريز ريشتراش خرابه.

tāmpiuter/televizion/duŝ/ŝir-e āb/periz-e riŝ-tarāŝ xarābe.

The computer/television/shower/water tap/shaver socket is out of order.



Can you say these in Persian?

- 1 I want a single room with a shower for two weeks.
- 2 Does the price include dinner, too? No, that's separate.
- 3 I'd like to book two seats for Mashhad.
- 4 May I ask you a question? Go ahead.
- 5 May I have a word with the manager?
- 6 The lights in the bathroom are not working/broken.
- 7 The shower has no water.
- 8 I'll phone you tomorrow.
- 9 Who/what are you waiting for?
- 10 I'm waiting for the news.
- 11 I'm waiting for my friend.
- 12 Are you angry with me?
- 13 Are you happy with your income?

Comprehension (Audio2; 3)

Listen to this conversation between a guest (G) and the hotel manager (M).



- G: أقا من از اين هتل اصلاً راضى نيستم.
 - M: مشكل چيه قربان؟
- G: من یک اتاق دو نفرهی بزرگ رزرو کردم، امّا شما یک اتاق یک نفره به ما دادید با یک تخت اضافه. من اتاق با حمّام و وان خواستم، شما اتاق با دوش دادید. تلفن اتاق هم کار نمی کنه.
- ۳۱ جداً معذرت می خوام. واقعاً شرمندهام. امشب یک اتاق دونفره ی بزرگ خالی میشه. می تونم اون اتاقو به شما بدم.
- G: راستش قصد داشتیم سه هفته بمونیم، امّا با این وضع یک هفته هم شاید نمونیم. در ضمن، ممکنه به این مهمونهای اتاق پهلویی بگید شبها یک کم ساکت تر باشند؟
 - M: حتماً. ميل داريد با من بيايد اتاقو ببينيد؟
 - G: الآن منتظر تلفن از انگلستانم. یک ساعت دیگه می آم دفتر تون.
 - M: باشه، منتظرم.

- āgā man az in hotel aslan rāzi nistam. G:
- moŝākel cie gorbān? M:
- man yek otāq-e do-nafare-ye bozorg rezerv kardam, ammā ŝomā yek otāq-e G: yek-nafare be mā d?ādid bā yek taxt-e ezāfe. man otāq-e bā hammām o vān xāstam, ŝomā otāq-e bā duŝ dādid. telefon-e otāq ham kār nemikone.
- jeddan ma `zerat mixām. vāqe `an ŝarmand(e)am. emŝab yek otāq-e do-M: nafare-ye bozorg xāli miŝe. mitunam un otāq-o be ŝomā bedam.
- rāsteŝ gasd d??tim se hafte bemunim, ammā bā in vaz \ yek hafte ham G: ŝāyad namunim. dar zemn, momkene be in mehmunhā-ye ot?q-e pahluyi begid ŝabhā yek kam sākettar bāŝand?
- hatman. meil d?rid b? man biāid otāq-o bebinid? M:
- al(`)ān montazer-e telefon az engelestānam. yek sā `at-e dige miām G: daftaretun.

M: bāŝe, montazeram.

- 1 What three complaints does the guest make in his initial outburst?
- 2 How does the manager respond to this?
- 3 What remedy does the manager propose?
- 4 What change of plan is the guest considering and why?
- 5 What is the guest's fourth complaint?
- 6 What does the manager offer towards the end?
- 7 Why does the guest decline the offer at the time?

Unit Eight

گفتوگوی خیابانی

goft-o-gu-ye xiābāni

Street talk

In this unit we will look at how to:



- ask and tell the time
- ask for and give directions
- ask a Persian speaker to speak more slowly and clearly describe
- location with reference to the points of compass talk about journey time and distance
- enquire about the availability of facilities in the area

Dialogue 1



Asking directions (Audio2; 4)

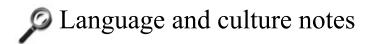
Julie (J) is looking for the home address of an Iranian friend in Tehran. She has difficulty reading the address. She asks a passerby (P) for help.

- اقا ببخشید، ساعت چنده؟
 - : هشت و نیم.
- u: متشكّرم. ببخشيد، مى تونم يك زحمت ديگه به تون بدم؟
 - P: خواهش مي كنم، بفرماييد.
- این آدرس دوستمه. متأسقانه نمی تونم بخونمش. برام میخونیدش،
 لطفاً؟
 - --P: سعی می کنم. خیابان سینا، پلاک هشتاد.
 - ل: خیابون سینا میدونید کجاست؟
 - بیچید دست چپ.
 مستقیم برید تا یک چهارراه بزرگ. اونجا، بپیچید دست چپ.
 خیابون سوم دست راست خیابون سیناست.
- ن. ببخشید، فارسیم زیاد خوب نیست. ممکنه لطفاً یک کم آهسته تر و شمر ده تر صحبت کنید؟
 - P: یعنی از اوّل همهشو دوباره بگم؟
 - ل: اگه ممکنه.
 - P: بله، مستقیم برید تا ...

- J: āqā bebaxŝid, sā`at cande?
- P: hast o nim.
- J: mot(a)ŝakkeram. bebaxŝid, mitunam yek zahmat-e dige be(h)etun bedam?
- P: xāheŝ mikonam, befarmāyid.
- J: in ādres-e dustame. mota`assefāne nemitunam bexunameŝ. barām mixunideŝ, lotfan?
- P: sa'y mikonam. xiābān-e sinā, pelāk-e haŝtād.
- J: xiābun-e sinā midunid kojā st?
- P: mostaqim berid tā yek cār-rāh-e bozorg. unjā, bepicid dast-e cap. xiābun-e sevvom dast-e rāst xiābun-e sināst.
- J: bebaxŝid, fārsim ziād xub nist. momkene lotfan yek kam āhestetar va

- ŝomordetar sohbat konid?
- P: ya'ni az avval hamaŝ-o dobāre begam?
- J: age momkene.
- P: bale, mostaqim berid tā ...
- J: Excuse me sir, what time is it?
- P: Half past eight.
- J: Thank you. Sorry, can I give you one more trouble?
- P: By all means, go ahead.
- J: This is my friend's address. Unfortunately I can't read it. Will you read it for me, please?
- P: I'll try. Sina Street, no. 80.
- J: Do you know where Sina Street is?
- P: Go straight up to a big cross-roads. There, turn left. The third road on the right is Sina Street.
- J: I'm sorry, my Persian isn't that good. Would you please speak a bit more slowly and clearly?
- P: You mean I should say all of it again?
- J: *If possible*.
- P: Yes, go straight up to ...

Vocabulary sā`at ساعت time, hour, clock cand چند how much What time is it? sā`at cande? ساعت چنده؟ half nim دیگه dige other; more be(h)etun بەتون to you xundan (xun) خوندن (خونــ) to read bexunam بخونم (for me to) read bexunames بخونمش (for me to) read it barām برام short for برایم barāyam for me mixunides میخونیدش will you read it (کنے) sa'y kardan (kon) to try xiābān خيابان street (literary/reading style) xiābun col for street xiābān خيابان mostaqim مستقيم straight ៤ tā up to; as far as cār-rāh چهارراه cross-roads; intersection unjā اونجا there bepicid turn dast hand cap left rāst راست right ziād زياد much; many āheste آهسته slow(ly) ŝomorde شمرده clear(ly) sohbat kardan (kon) to speak ya'ni i.e.; you mean all hame hamaŝ all of it all of it (plus rā) hamaŝ-o dobāre again (for me to) say begam age



Object endings

The possessive endings (introduced in U2D2) can also be used as objects after verbs, prepositions or **ezāfe** (see U2D2). Examples: After a verb:

- (a) ساندویچو خوردم. sāndevic-o xordam. I ate the sandwich.
- (b) اونو خوردم. **un-o xordam**. I ate it.
- (c) خوردمش. **xordameŝ**. I ate it.

Note: Comparing (b) and (c) you will note two changes in (c):

- 1 The object ending is placed *after* the verb.
- The object marker $(r\bar{a}, or its colloquial form -ro/-o)$ is omitted.

Object endings are often sandwiched *between* the two elements of a compound (ærb (see U4D2): کامپیوترو روشن کردم. **kāmpiuter-o rouŝan kardam**. I turned on the computer.

- (b) اونو روشن کردم. **un-o rouŝan kardam**. I turned it on.
- (c) روشنش کردم. **rouŝaneŝ kardam**. I turned it on.

After a preposition, (see U5D1)

(م) te the changes between (b) and (c) in each set below: تربر أون zir-e miz under (b) table نير أون zir-e un under it نير أون bein-e ahmad o between Ahmad and Ali بين أحمد و على bein-e unhā between them بين أونها beinesun له beinesun له الله bein-e unhā between them روى كانايه ru-ye kānāpe on the sofa بين أون الله vu-ye un on it rus on the sofa براى أو barāye ahmad for Ahmad براى أو bārāye u for him له barās for him Sometimes a 'linking' or 'intrusive' h comes between the preposition and the fix: به أو كفتم be ahmad goftam I said to Ahmad (or: I told Ahmad) به أو كفتم be u goftam I said to him به أو كفتم be(h)es goftam I said to him به أحمد رفتم سينما. bā ahmad raftam sinemā. I went to the cinema with Ahmad.

- (b) با او رفتم سينما. **bā u raftam sinemā.** I went to the cinema with him.
- (c) الهش رفتم سينما. **bāheŝ/bāhāŝ raftam sinemā.** I went to the cinema with him.

In casual speech

```
بام bām with me بات bāt with you (inf) باش bās with him/her/it باش bāmun with us باتون bātun with you باتون bāŝun with them
```

After ezāfe: (see U2D2)

- نصَفش nesf-e sib half of (an/the) apple نصف سيب nesf-e un half of it
- (b) nesfes half of it همه خريزه hame-ye xarboze all (or: the whole) of the melon
- (c) همه hame-ye un all of it hamas all of it In the light of the above explanations, the following sentences from Dialogue 1 above should now be slightly easier to decipher!

```
.nemitunam bexunameŝ
```

I can't read it.

?barām mixunide

Will you read it for me?

مى تونم يک زحمت ديگه به تون بدم؟

mitunam yek zahmat-e dige be(h)etun bedam?

Can I give you one more trouble?

More examples:

منتظرم.	montazeram.	I'm waiting.
منتظر تو هستم.	montazer-e to hastam.	I am waiting for you.
منتظرت هستم.	montazeret hastam.	I am waiting for you.
منتظرتم.	montazeretam.	I'm waiting for you.
شمارو ديدم.	ŝomā-ro didam.	I saw you.
ديدمتون.	didametun.	I saw you.



Can you provide the shorter version of each of these sentences? Follow the example.

1 ما انارو خوردم. anār-o xordam. I ate the pomegranate.

Can you say: I ate it.

Example:

.xordameŝ. I ate it.

2 مدو ديدم. ahmad-o didam. I saw Ahmad.

Can you say: I saw him.

3 تلويزيونو خاموش كردم. **televizion-o xāmuŝ kardam.** I turned off the TV.

Can you say: I turned it off.

4 چراغو خاموش کنم؟ cerāq-o xāmuŝ konam? Shall I turn off the light?

Can you say: Shall I turn it off?

5 كارتو تموم كن. **kāret-o tamum kon.** Finish your work.

Can you say: Finish it.

6 ميزه؟ **qalamet ru mize?** Is your pen on the desk?

Can you say: No, it's under it!

7 به بچهها گفتم. **be baccehā goftam.** I told the children.

Can you say: I told them.

مى تونم با مدير هتل صحبت كنم؟

mitunam bā modir-e hotel sohbat konam?

Can I speak with the hotel manager?

Can you say: Can I speak with him? (f)

همهی بستنی رو نمی تونم بخورم. و

hame-ye bastani-ro nemitunam boxoram.

I can't eat all of the ice cream.

Can you say: I can't eat all of it. I'll eat half of it.

How to ask: 'What's the matter (or: wrong) with ...?'

Here's the formula:

(See double negative in U9D1.)



Match a number with a letter. The first one has been done for you.

```
midunam cetune. [ e ]
مىدونم چتونه. 2 مىدونم چشه. 2 مىدونم چشه. 3 مىدونم چمه. 3 مىدونم چمه. 4 مىدونم چمه. 4 مىدونم چمه. 5 مىدونم چمه. 5 مىدونم چشونه. 5 مىدونم چشونه. 6 مىدونم چته. 6 midunam cete. [ ]
```

- (a) I know what's wrong with me.
- (b) I know what's wrong with you. (inf) I know what's wrong with him/her/it.
- (d) I know what's wrong with us.
- (£) I know what's wrong with you. (f/pl) I know what's wrong with them.

Exercise 3

A Persian-speaking relative (R) has received a postcard from his Australian friend, but can't read the handwriting. Can you translate this dialogue into Persian?

R: Excuse me, can you read this postcard for me, please.

You: Certainly. Who is it from?

R: From my Australian friend.

[after you have read the postcard]

R: Thank you very much.

You: Pleasure.

Asking and telling the time (Audio2; 5)

?sā`at cande

What time is it? (*lit* How much is the hour?)

.sā`at haŝte ساعت هشته

It's 8 o'clock. (lit The hour is eight.)

Here are some other expressions of time:

sā`at-e haŝt (at) 8 o'clock (lit the hour of eight)

haŝt o nim half past 8 (lit eight and half)

haŝt o rob` هشت و ربع

a quarter past 8 (lit eight and quarter)

haŝt o panj da(q)iqe 5 past 8 (lit 8 and 5 minutes)

يک ربع به هشت ye(k) rob` be hast a quarter to eight

More 'streetwise' expressions

ببخشيد، ساعت داريد؟ bebaxŝid, sā`at dārid?

Excuse me, have you got the time (lit a watch)?

ببخشید، فرودگاه از کدوم طرف باید برم؟

bebaxŝid, forudgāh az kodum taraf bāyad beram?

Excuse me, which way do I go to the airport?

midunid az injā tā forudgāh ceqadr rāh ast (col rāst)?

Do you know how far it is from here to the airport?

bā māŝin/otobus/metro ceqadr tul mikeŝe?

How long will it take by car/bus/metro?

پیاده یک ساعت؛ با ماشین ده دقیقه. tul keŝidan (keŝ) to take (time) طول کشیدن (کش)
piāde ye(k) sā`at; bā māŝin dah da(q)iqe.

One hour on foot; ten minutes by car.

belit-e otobus az kojā bāyad begiram?

(lit) From where should I get a bus ticket?

شمال	ŝomāl	north
جنوب	jonub	south
شرق	ŝarq	east
غرب	qarb	west
شمال شرق	ŝomāl-e ŝarq	north-east
جنوب غرب	jonub-e qarb	south-west
سر نبش	sar-e nabŝ	on the corner

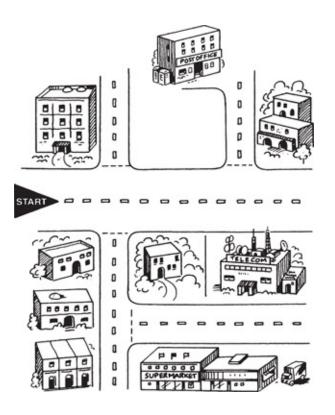
sar-e nabŝ-e ŝomāl-e qarb-e cār-rāh

on the north-west corner of the cross-roads/intersection



Look at the following local map. Can you give directions to:

[A] the post office; [B] the telecom centre; [C] the supermarket



Exercise 5



Can you say these in Persian?

- Where's my cake? I ate it! 1
- The light's off. Turn it on, please. 2
- 3 Shall I sit next to you? No, sit opposite me.
- 4 Shall I tell him (about it)? No, please don't tell him.
- I bought this for you. 5
- 6 Can I come with you?
- Do you know what's wrong with him? 7
- 8 Can you read this email for me, please?
- 9 What time is it, please?
- 10 Half past six.
- 11 A quarter to three.

- A quarter past one. 12
- 13 Five minutes to twelve.
- Five past eleven. 14
- Sorry, I haven't got a watch. 15
- Excuse me, where's the post office? 16
- 17 How far is it from here to the station?
- How long will it take on foot? 18
- 19 It's half an hour's walk.
- It's five minutes' drive. 20



Is there a public phone around here? (Audio2; 7)



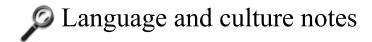
Julie (J) is now looking for a public telephone. She asks a passerby(P) for help.

- ن: ببخشید، این اطراف تلفن عمومی هست؟
 - تو اون یستخونه چند تا هست.
- م. نو اون پستخونه چند تا هست. د: ببخشید زحمت میدم، ۱۰ تومن پول خرد دارید، لطفاً؟ برای تلفن نا
 - میخوام. ۹: شاید داشته باشم. ... بفرمایید، یک پنجتومنی و پنج تا یکتومنی.

- L: خوبه، یک دنیا ممنون. ببخشید، خیلی زحمت دادم.
 - جه زحمتی، شما خارجی هستید؟
- - L: درست حدس زدید..
- وق زیادی ندارند. فقط یادتون باشه بعداز اینکه پولو انداختید، بوق آزادو میشنوید.
 - از راهنماییتون خیلی متشکرم.
 - جواهش مى كنم. موفق باشيد.
- bebaxŝid, in atrāf telefon-e omumi hast? J:
- tu un postxune cand tā hast. P:
- bebaxŝid zahmat midam, dah toman pul-e xord dārid, lotfan? barāye telefon J: mixām.
- ŝāyad dāŝte bāŝam.... befarmāyid, yek panj-tomani o panj tā yek-tomani. Р: xube?
- xube, yek donyā mamnun. bebaxŝid, xeili zahmat dādam. J:
- ce zahmati. ŝomā xāreji hastid? P:
- bale, ceto(u)r mage? J:
- fekr kardam ŝāyad bā telefonhā-ye omumi-e irān āŝ(e)nā nabāŝid. P:
- dorost hads zadid. J:
- farq-e ziādi nadārand. faqat yādetun bāŝe ba'd-az inke pul-o andāxtid, buq-e P: āzād-o miŝ(e)navid.
- az rāhnamāyitun xeili mot(a)ŝakkeram. J:
- xāheŝ mikonam. mo(v)affaq bāŝid. P:
- Excuse me, is there a public telephone around here? J:
- There are a few (of them) in that post office. P:
- Sorry to bother you, can you change (this) 10-tuman note, please? I want J: (it) for the telephone.
- I might have (some). Here you are, one five-tuman piece and five one-P:

- tuman pieces (coins). Is that (any) good?
- J: That's fine, thanks a million. I'm sorry I gave (you) a lot of trouble.
- P: No trouble. Are you from overseas?
- J: *Yes, but why?*
- P: I thought you might not be familiar with public telephones in Iran.
- J: You're right. (lit You guessed correctly.)
- P: They're not much different. Only remember (that) after you've put the money in, you'll hear the dialling tone.
- J: Thank you very much for your advice.
- P: You're welcome. Good luck.

Vocabulary in atrāf این اطراف around here (lit these quarters/sides) public postxune post office cand tā a few (of them) zahmat زحمت trouble دادن (د) dādan (d) to give زحمت دادن (د) zahmat dādan (d) to trouble/bother money xord خرد small mixām مىخوام I want panj-tomani پنج تومنی (a) five-tuman piece donyā world خارجي xāreji from overseas, foreigner fekr thought فکر کردن (کنہ) fekr kardan (kon) to think L bā with أشنا āŝ(e)nā familiar dorost درست correct(ly) hads zadan (zan) حدس زدن (زنـ) to guess farq فرق difference yād ياد memory yādetun bāŝe یادتون باشه remember (lit let it be in your memory) (انداز) andāxtan (andāz) to put/throw (in) buq-e āzād بوق آزاد dialling tone (شنو) **ŝenidan (ŝenav)** to hear rāhnamāyi راهنمایی advice, guidance mo(v)affaq موفّق successful mo(v)affaq bāŝid موفّق باشيد good luck (lit may you be successful)



How to say: 'there is/are', 'there was/were'

hast and bud (from the verb budan 'to be') are used for the present and the past, respectively, often regardless of number (singular or plural):



tu yaxcāl mive hast?

Is there (any) fruit in the fridge?

بله، چند تا سیب و پرتقال هست.

bale, cand tā sib o porteq11 hast.

Yes, there are a few apples and oranges.

ru-ye miz kārd o cangāl hast?

Are there (any) knives and forks on the table? (lit knife and fork) تو کلاس شما چند تا پسر هست؟

tu kelās-e ŝomā cand tā pesar hast?

How many boys are there in your class?

تو كلاس من هشت تا پسر هست.

tu kelās-e man haŝt tā pesar hast.

There are eight boys in my class.

پارسال، تو کلاسم فقط سه تا پسر بود.

pārsāl, tu kel1sam faqat se tā pesar bud.

Last year, there were only three boys in my class.

امّا دختر زياد بود. ammā doxtar ziād bud.

But there were many girls.

تو جشن تولدم ده تا مهمون خارجی بود.

tu jaŝn-e tavallodam dah tā mehmun-e xāreji bud.

In/at my birthday party there were ten foreign guests.

For the negative, "inst and inst and are used for the present and the past,

respectively:

(Audio2; 9) **(**

tu yaxcāl mive nist.

There is no fruit in the fridge.

پارسال، تو کلاسم ایرانی نبود. pārsāl, tu kelāsam irāni nabud.

Last year, there were no Iranians in my class.

Exercise 6



Can you translate these sentences into English?

۱ - تو کلاستون تلویزیون هست؟"

1 tu kelāsetun televizion hast?

۲- تو شهر شما ایرانی هست؟

2 tu ŝahr-e ŝomā irāni hast?

۳- تو محلهی شما رستوران ایرانی هست؟

3 tu mahalle-ye ŝomā resturān-e irāni hast?

۴- تو پارتی پنج تا مهمون انگلیسی بود.

4 tu pārti panj tā mehmun-e engelisi bud.

۵- تو فریزر بستنی هست؟ا

5 tu ferizer bastani hast?

6 bud vali man xordam!

More 'streetwise' expressions (Audio2; 10)



ببخشيد، اين اطراف يستخونه هست؟

bebaxŝid, in atrāf postxune hast?

Excuse me, is there a post office around here?

ببخشید، این نزدیکیها «کافینت» هست؟

bebaxŝid, in nazdikihā 'k1fi-net' hast?

Excuse me, is there an 'Internet café' nearby?

ببخشید، این نزدیکیها دسترسی به «اینترنت» هست؟

bebaxŝid in nazdikihā dastrasi be 'internet' hast?

Excuse me, is there access to the Internet nearby?

مىخوام ايميلهامو چک کنم.

mixām imeilhām-o cek konam.

I want to check my emails.

مى خوام چند تا ايميل بفرستم.

mixām cand tā imeil bef(e)restam.

I want to send a few emails.

هزينهى استفاده از اينترنت چقدره؟ ferestadan (ferest) to send فرستادن (فرست)

hazine-ve estefāde az internet cegadre?

How much is the cost of using the Internet?

.sā`ati hezār o devist toman ساعتی هزار و دویست تومن

1,200 tumans per hour.

مى تونم از اين كامپيوتر استفاده كنم؟

mitunam az in kāmpiuter estefāde konam?

Can/may I use this computer?

... estefāde kardan (kon) to use ... دن (کنــ) az ... estefāde kardan (kon)

ببخشید، از کجا می تونم تلفن همراه کرایه کنم؟

bebaxŝid, az kojā mitunam telefon-e hamrāh kerāye konam?

Excuse me, (*lit* from) where can I hire a mobile phone?

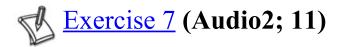
!bebaxŝid, sā`at dārid ببخشيد، ساعت داريد

Excuse me, have you got the time? lit Have you got a watch?

ببخشيد، ساعت خدمتتون هست؟

bebaxŝid, sā`at xedmatetun hast?

Excuse me, have you got the time? (pol/f) lit Is there a watch (at) your service?



Can you play your part in the following dialogue with a passerby (P) and

then with the Internet café assistant (A) in Tehran?

You: Excuse me, have you got the time, please?

بله، خواهش می کنم. پنج و ربع. P:

bale, xāheŝ mikonam. panj o rob`.

Yes, by all means. (It's a) quarter past five.

You: Is there an Internet café around here? I want to check my emails.

bale, yek kam pāyintar, ru-be-ru-ye sinemā.

Yes, a little further down, opposite the cinema.

[At the Internet café]

You: How much is the cost of using the Internet?

A: ساعتی هزار و دویست تومن.

sā`ati hezār o devist toman.

1,200 tumans per hour.

You: Can I use it for half an hour?

بله، خواهش مى كنم. مىشه ششصد تومن.

bale, xāheŝ mikonam. miŝe ŝeŝsad toman.

Yes, by all means. It comes to 600 tumans.

You: Can I use this computer?

A: بفرمایید. **bale, befarmāyid.** Yes, please go ahead.

'After lunch' v. 'After I ate (or) I have eaten lunch'

(b) **ba`d-az** after بعداز اینکه **ba`d-az inke** after We use (a) before a noun, and (b) before a sentence. Examples:

ba`d-az nāhār after lunch بعداز اینکه ناهار خوردمba`d-az inke nāhār xordam (lit) after I ate lunch

Note: The verb in the sentence following (b) is normally expressed in the past simple tense (see U4D1) regardless of the actual time of happening. This is unlike English, where the tense changes depending on the time of occurrence of the main action (past or future). Compare the underlined bits: بعداز اینکه ناهار خوردم، رفتم سینما.

ba'd-az inke nāhār xordam, raftam sinemā.

بعداز اینکه ناهار خوردم، میرم سینما. (past) After I ate lunch, I went to the cinema.

ba'd-az inke nāhār xordam, miram sinemā.

After I <u>have eaten</u> lunch, I will go to the cinema. (future) Here is a sentence from <u>Dialogue 2</u>:

بعداز اینکه پولو انداختید، بوق آزادو میشنوید.

ba'd-az inke pul-o andāxtid, buq-e āzād-o miŝ(e)navid.

After you have put the money in, you will hear the dialling tone.

Note: A literary alternative for (اینکه ba`d-az (inke) is: پساز (اینکه is: پساز اینکه شام خوردم، خوابیدم pas-az ŝām after dinner پساز اینکه شام خوردم، خوابیدم

pas-az inke ŝām xordam, xābidam.

After I had dinner, I slept.

Note: A common alternative for اينكه شام خورديم، خوابيديم. unke: معداز اونكه شام خورديم، خوابيديم. ba`d-az unke ŝām xordim, xābidim.

After we ate dinner, we slept (went to bed).



Write the longer version for each sentence using the appropriate form of the verb in brackets. Follow the example.

بعداز شام، مىرم خونه. [خوردن (خور)]

ba'd-az ŝām, miram xune. [xordan (xor)]

After dinner, I'll go home. [to eat]

How do you say: After I have eaten dinner, I'll go home.

Example:

ba`d-az inke ŝām xordam, miram xune.

After I have eaten dinner, I'll go home.

بعداز شام، رفتم خونه. [خوردن (خور)]

ba'd-az ŝām, raftam xune. [xordan (xor)]

After dinner, I went home. [to eat]

How do you say: After I ate dinner, I went home.

بعداز كلاس، مىريم رستوران. [تموم شدن (شــ)] 3

ba'd-az kelās, mirim resturān. [tamum ŝodan (ŝ)]

After class, we'll go to a restaurant. [to finish]

How do you say: After class has/is finished, we'll go to a restaurant.

بعداز كلاس، رفتيم رستوران. [تموم شدن (ش)] 4

ba'd-az kelās, raftim resturān. [tamum ŝodan (ŝ)]

After class, we went to a restaurant. [to finish]

How do you say: After class finished, we went to a restaurant.

بعداز دوش، صبحونه مىخورم. [گرفتن (گير)]

ba'd-az duŝ, sobhune mixoram. [gereftan (gir)]

After a shower, I'll eat breakfast. [to take]

How do you say: After I've taken a shower, I'll eat breakfast.

بعداز دوش، صبحونه خوردم. [گرفتن (گیر)] 6

ba'd-az duŝ, sobhune xordam. [gereftan (gir)]

After a shower, I ate breakfast. [to take]

How do you say: After I took a shower, I ate breakfast.

بعداز صبحونه، ایمیلهامو چک می کنم. [خوردن (خور)]

ba'd-az sobhune, emeilhām-o cek mikonam. [xordan (xor)]

After breakfast, I'll check my emails. [to eat]

How do you say: After I've eaten breakfast, I'll check my emails.

بعداز صبحونه، ايميلهامو چک کردم. [خوردن (خور)] 8

ba'd-az sobhune, emeilhām-o cek kardam. [xordan (xor)]

After breakfast, I checked my emails. [to eat]

How do you say: After I ate breakfast, I checked my emails.

'Before lunch' v. 'Before I ate (or) eat lunch'

(b) before a sentence. Examples: قبلاز اینکه qabl-az nāhār before a noun, and (b) before a sentence. Examples: qabl-az nāhār before lunch qabl-az inke nāhār boxoram (lit) before I eat lunch Note:

The verb in the sentence following (b) is normally expressed in the subjunctive (see U7D1) regardless of the actual time of happening. This is unlike English where the tense changes depending on the time of occurrence of the main action (past or future). Compare the underlined bits:

قبلاز اینکه ناهار بخورم، رفتم سینما

qabl-az inke nāhār boxoram, raftam sinemā.

قبل از اینکه ناهار بخورم، میرم سینما. Before I ate lunch, I went to the cinema. (past)

qabl-az inke nāhār boxoram, miram sinemā.

Before I <u>eat</u> lunch, I'll go to the cinema. (future) **Note:** A common alternative for قبل قبل **qabl-az** (inke) is: پیشاز (اینکه **piŝ-az** (inke): پیشاز ناهار، به دوستم تلفن کردم.

piŝ-az nāhār, be dustam telefon kardam.

Before lunch, I telephoned my friend.

پیشاز اینکه ناهار بخورم، به دوستم تلفن کردم.

piŝ-az inke nāhār boxoram, be dustam telefon kardam.

Before I ate lunch, I telephoned my friend.



Write the longer version for each sentence using the appropriate form of the verb in brackets. Follow the example.

پیشاز اینکه ناهار بخورم، به دوستم تلفن کردم.

qabl-az sinemā, ŝām mixorim. [raftan (r)]

Before the cinema, we will eat dinner. [to go]

Can you say: Before we go to the cinema, we will eat dinner.

Can you say: Before we go to the cinema, we will eat dinner.

قبل از اینکه بریم سینما، شام میخوریم. Example:

qabl-az inke berim sinemā, ŝām mixorim.

Before we go to the cinema, we will eat dinner.

قبل از سينما، شام خورديم. [رفتن (ر)] 2

qabl-az sinemā, ŝām xordim. [raftan (r)]

Before the cinema, we ate dinner. [to go]

Can you say: Before we went to the cinema, we ate dinner.

قبل از شام، یک فیلم میبینم. [خوردن (خور)] 3

qabl-az ŝām, yek film mibinam.

Before dinner, I will see/watch a film. [to eat]

Can you say: Before I eat dinner, I will see/watch a film.

قبل از شام، یک فیلم دیدم. [خوردن (خور)] 4

qabl-az ŝām, yek film didam.

Before dinner, I saw/watched a film. [to eat]

Can you say: Before I ate dinner, I saw/watched a film.

قبل از فیلم، دوش می گیرم. [دیدن (بین)] 5

qabl-az film, duŝ migiram. [didan (bin)]

Before the film, I will take a shower. [to see]

Can you say: Before I see/watch the film, I will take a shower.

قبل از فیلم، دوش گرفتم. [دیدن (بین)] 6

qabl-az film, duŝ gereftam. [didan (bin)]

Before the film, I took a shower. [to see]

Can you say: Before I saw the film, I took a shower.

قبل از دوش، به دوستم تلفن می کنم. [گرفتن (گیر)] 7

qabl-az duŝ, be dustam telefon mikonam.

Before the shower, I will telephone my friend. [to take]

Can you say: Before I take a shower, I will telephone my friend.

قبل از دوش، به دوستم تلفن کردم. [گرفتن (گیر)] 8

qabl-az duŝ, be dustam telefon kardam.

Before the shower, I telephoned my friend. [to take]

Can you say: Before I took a shower, I telephoned my friend.

امشب قبل از خواب، به ایران تلفن می کنم. [خوابیدن (خواب)] 9

emŝab qabl-az xāb, be irān telefon mikonam. [xābidan (xāb)]

Tonight before sleep (sleeping), I will telephone Iran. [to sleep]

Can you say: Tonight before I sleep (go to bed), I will telephone Iran.

ديشب قبل از خواب، به ايران تلفن كردم. [خوابيدن (خوابـ)]

diŝab qabl-az xāb, be irān telefon kardam. [xābidan (xāb)]

Last night before sleep (sleeping), I telephoned Iran. [to sleep]

Can you say: Last night before I slept (went to bed), I telephoned Iran.

Gerund (verbal noun): 'to eat' v. 'eating'

Both the above often have the same form in Persian:

```
خوردن خوردن raftan 'to eat' as well as 'eating' رفتن raftan 'to go' as well as 'going' ديدن didan 'to see' as well as 'seeing' تماشا كردن tamāŝā kardan 'to watch' as well as 'watching'
```

Examples:

سرگرمیهای من اینهاست: **sargarmihā-ye man inhāst:** My hobbies are these: سرگرمیهای من اینهاست: **raftan be sinemā** going to the cinema خوندن کتاب **xundan-e ketāb** reading books (*lit* reading of book)

Also note these forms:

قبل از رفتن به سینما ba`d-az xordan-e sam after eating dinner بعداز خوردن شام qabl-az raftan be sinemā before going to the cinema

Exercise 10



Using the vocabulary provided in Exercise 8, can you translate these into Persian? Follow the example.

1 After eating dinner, I'll go home.

بعداز خوردن شام، مىرم خونه. Example:

ba'd-az xordan-e ŝām, miram xune.

- 2 After eating dinner, I went home.
- 3 After taking a shower, I'll eat breakfast.
- 4 After taking a shower, I ate breakfast.
- 5 After eating breakfast, I'll check my emails.
- 6 After eating breakfast, I checked my emails.

Exercise 11



Using the vocabulary provided in Exercise 9, can you translate these into Persian? Follow the example.

1 Before going to the cinema, we'll eat dinner.

قبل از رفتن به سينما، شام مىخوريم. Example:

qabl-az raftan be sinemā, ŝām mixorim.

- 2 Before going to the cinema, we ate dinner.
- 3 Before eating dinner, I'll see/watch a film.
- 4 Before eating dinner, I saw/watched a film.
- 5 Before seeing a film, I'll take a shower.
- 6 Before seeing a film, I took a shower.
- 7 Before taking a shower, I'll phone my friend.
- 8 Before taking a shower, I phoned my friend.

Exercise 12



Can you say these in Persian?

- 1 Excuse me, is there a post office/police station/library/supermarket/Internet café around here?
- 2 Is there any milk in the fridge?
- 3 Are there any Iranians in your area?
- 4 Last year there were five Iranians in my class/office.
- 5 Before you go out, turn off the lights please.

- I phoned Ahmad before I left the office. 6
- We'll have dinner after all the guests have come/arrived. 7
- 8 Last night before I slept (went to bed), I checked my emails.
- 9 Before eating breakfast, I took a shower.
- 10 After taking a shower, I had a cold drink.

Comprehension (Audio2; 12)

Yesterday, you got this message on your answering machine.

سلام. جلال هستم. إز هتل اطلس تلفن مي كنم. إز هتل راضي هستم، فقط صدای ترافیک یک کم زیاده. راستی، امشب من و خانمم، بعداز اینکه گردشمون تموم شد، میخوایم بریم سینما. دوست داریم تو هم با ما بیای. فیلم ساعت ۷ شب شروع میشه. پس بهتره ساعت ۶ همدیگهرو ببینیم تا وقت برای صحبت هم داشته باشیم. قبل از اینکه بریم سینما، باهم شام می خوریم. قراره بریم سینما حافظ. روبهروی سینما یک رستوران هست. ساعت ۶ تو رستوران منتظرتيم. فعلاً خدا حافظ.

salām, jalāl hastam, az hotel atlas telefon mikonam, az hotel rāzi hastam, faqat sedā-ye terāfik yek kam ziāde. rāsti, emŝab man o xānomam, ba'd-az inke gardeŝemun tamum ŝod, mixāim berim sinemā. dust dārim to ham bā mā biāi. film sā'at-e haft-e ŝab ŝoru' miŝe. pas behtare sā'at-e ŝeŝ hamdiga-ro bebinim tā vagt barāye sohbat ham dāste bāsim. gabl-az inke berim sinemā, bā-ham sām mixorim. garāre berim sinemā hāfez. ru-be-ru-ye sinemā yek resturān hast. sā'ate ŝeŝ tu resturān montazeretim. fe'lan xodā hāfez.

- Who is calling? 1
- 2 Where is he phoning from?
- How does he feel about the place? 3
- Where is the caller going tonight and with whom? 4
- 5 What time does the event begin?
- 6 What does he intend to do before the event?

- What has the caller been doing during the day?
- 8 What time does he want to see you and why?
- 9 Where will you be seeing him?

Unit Nine

گرسنهاید؟

gorosneid?

Are you hungry?

In this unit we will look at how to:



- talk about food, drinks and your diet order a meal, complain about it,
- pay the bill enquire about various dishes
- seek and give permission to do something apologise for interrupting
- talk about how frequently you do things ask someone if he/she has ever done something

Dialogue 1



At the Dinner Table (Audio2; 13)



Sara (s) is entertaining her mother-in-law (M).

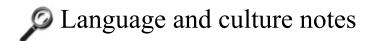
- s: یک کم دیگه مرغ بذارم براتون؟
 - M: نه، متشكّرم. سير شدم.
 - s: هیچّی نخوردید.
 - M: چرا، خیلی خوردم.
 - s: خواهش می کنم تعارف نکنید.
 - اصلاً تعارف نمى كنم.
 - s: مرغ دوست ندارید؟
- M: چرا، خیلی خوشمزه است. اما، راستش، شبها هیچوقت شام نمىخورم - به اصطلاح رژيم دارم!
 - حالا، خونهی ما، رژیمو بذارید کنار، لطفاً.
 - نس، فقط یک تکّهی کوچک بذار، لطفاً.

 - M: دستت درد نکنه.
 - s: سرتون درد نکنه.
 - M: خیلی خوشمزه بود.
 - انوش جان.

- yek kam(-e) dige morq bezāram barātun? S:
- na, mot(a)ŝakkeram. sir ŝodam. M:
- hicci naxordid. S:
- M: cerā, xeili xordam.
- xāheŝ mikonam t(a`)ārof nakonid. S:
- aslan t(a`)ārof nemikonam. M:
- S: morq dust nadārid?
- cerā, xeili xoŝmaz(e) ast. ammā, rāsteŝ, ŝabhā hic-vaqt ŝām nemixoram be M: estelāh reĝim dāram!
- S: hālā, xune-ye mā, reĝim-o bezārid kenār, lotfan.
- pas, faqat yek tekke-ye kucek bezār, lotfan. M:
- befarmāyid. s:

- M: dastet dard nakone.
- s: saretun dard nakone.
- м: xeili xoŝmaze bud.
- s: nuŝ-e jān.
- s: *Shall I serve* (lit put) a little more chicken for you?
- M: No, thanks. I'm full. (lit I became full.)
- S: You didn't eat anything.
- M: Oh yes, I ate a lot.
- s: Please don't stand on ceremony (or: stop being polite.)
- M: I'm not being polite at all.
- s: Do you not like chicken?
- M: Oh yes, it's very tasty. But, to be honest, I never eat dinner at night supposedly I'm on a diet!
- s: Now, in our house, set aside (or: forget about) the diet, please.
- M: Then, put only a small piece, please.
- s: *Here you are.*
- M: Thank you. (lit May your hand not ache!)
- s: You're welcome. (lit May your head not ache!)
- M: It was very tasty (or: really delicious).
- s: I'm glad you liked it. (lit (May it be) enjoyed by (your) life/soul!)

'ocabul	ary	
دیگه	dige	other; more
مرغ	morq	chicken
براتون	barātun	for you
سير	sir	full (fully fed)
هیچی	hicci	nothing
چرا	cerā	'yes' to a negative question/ suggestion
خواهش کردن (xāheŝ kardan (kon)	to request
تعارف کردن (کن	ta'ārof kardan (kon)	to stand on ceremony
دوست داشتن (د	dust dästan (där)	to like
خوشمزه	xoŝmaze	tasty, delicious
هيجوقت	hic-vaqt	never; at any time
به اصطلاح	be estelāh	supposedly
رژيم	reĝim	diet
رژیم دارم	reĝim dāram	I'm on a diet (lit I have diet)
کنار گذاشتن (ذا	kenār gozāŝtan (zār)	to put/set aside
بذاريد كنار	bezārid kenār	set aside
پس	pas	then, so, in that case
تكّه	tekke	piece
نوش جان	nuŝ-e jān	bon appetit; (lit (May it be) enjoyed by (your) life/soul!)



Ta'ārof (colloquially pronounced tārof)

This is a politeness ritual or formula, a 'verbal wrestling' match between a host and a guest, and more generally between: (a) the person offering something, and (b) the person being offered something. is used by the host to make his guest feel welcome, and by the guest to minimise imposition upon, or inconvenience to the host. This is often realised in the form of the host's insistence that the guest must eat (more) food, fruit, etc., and resistance on the part of the guest. This ritual is repeated a few times until one side submits to the will of the other. A 'diluted' form of does occur in English but often stops after the first or second exchange: Would you like some fruit?

- No, thanks.

- Are you sure?
- Positive.

This difference may account for the stories often told about English guests being 'force-fed' to the point of indisposition in Iranian homes; while Iranian guests, upon leaving their English friend's home, plunge into the nearest restaurant – pardon the exaggeration! This is not to say that English hosts are any less hospitable than their Iranian counterparts; they follow different sets of politeness rules, each with equally valid justification.

Here is a sentence often exchanged between a guest and a host:

I'm not ing (I'm not using).

When used by a guest, it conveys this message:

My declining is genuine; I'm not resisting in the expectation of further insistence on your part; I'm not standing on ceremony.

When used by a host, it conveys this message:

My offer is genuine; I mean what I say.

In either case, a functional equivalent in English might be: I'm not just being polite.

Also look at these other variants:

Please stop being polite. (or: Please don't stand on ceremony.) If you compliment an Iranian on one of his belongings, he may say to you: piŝkeŝ 'gift' (meaning: 'you can have it as a gift'.) This is often a ta'ārof never to be taken seriously by the person being offered the thing in question. A 'no-thank-you' reply would be sufficient. If the offer is serious, and not just a politeness ritual, the offerer insists several times.

Adverbs of frequency (Audio2; 14)

hami**ŝe** always

ma'mulan usually, normally

aqlab often

ba`zi- sometimes

vaqthā

gāhi occasionally

benodrat rarely

hic-vaqt never

The above adverbs normally follow the subject:

man hamiŝe tu xune ŝām mixoram.

I always eat dinner at home.

mā ma`mulan qazā-ye irāni mixorim.

We usually eat Iranian food.

sirus o simin aqlab ŝām nemixorand.

Sirus and Simin often don't eat dinner.

sirus ba`zi-vaqthā yek kam sup mixore.

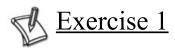
Sirus sometimes eats a little soup.

simin gāhi sālād mixore.

Simin occasionally eats (some) salad.

unhā benodrat guŝt mixorand.

They rarely eat meat.



The word(s) missing from the sentences below can be found in the box above. Can you find them and fit them in?

1	ما به رستوران ایرانی میریم.		
	mā	be resturān-e irāni mirim.	
	We occasion	nally go to an Iranian restaurant.	
	Example:	ما گاهی به رستوران ایرانی میریم	
	1	mā gāhi be resturān-e irāni mirim.	
2	ین به اداره میره.	خانمم با ماش	
	xānomam _	bā māŝin be edāre mire.	
	My wife alw	vays goes to the office by car.	
3	با قطار مىرم.	من	
	man	_ bā qatār miram.	
	I usually go	by train.	
4	به سینما میریم.	ما باهم	
	mā	bā-ham be sinemā mirim.	
	We rarely go	to the cinema together.	
5	سے تماشا می کنه.	شوهرم فيلم يلب	

\$ouharam _____ film-e polisi tamāŝā mikone.

My husband sometimes watches detective films.

ا من ____ جلوی تلویزیون میخوابم!

man ____ jelo-ye televizion mixābam!

I often fall asleep (lit sleep) in front of the TV! [She doesn't like detective

Double negative

films!]

How to say 'I never eat dinner.'

Thus, when used in a positive question, hic-vaqt means 'ever'. When we use hic-vaqt to mean 'never', we put the verb in the negative. All Persian words beginning with the negative prefix hic- (roughly meaning 'not any') fall in the same category. Here are some of the more common ones:

```
hic-jā nowhere, not anywhere میچجیز hic-ciz = میچکیز hic-kār nothing, not anything not anything (no activity) hic-kodum neither or none (of them) میچکس hic-kas nobody, not anyone
```

Examples:

.hic-jā naraftim هیچجا نرفتیم We didn't go anywhere (lit nowhere). hicci nagoft. هیچّی نگفت. He didn't say anything (lit nothing). hic-kār nakardam. I didn't do anything (lit nothing). hic-kodum-o هیچکدومو نمیخوام. I don't want either nemixām. (lit neither) (of them). hic-kas telefon هیچکس تلفن نکرد. Nobody phoned nakard. (lit didn't phone).

Exercise 2

AL-	
Fill	in the blanks with an appropriate word. Follow the example
1	من تنها به رستوران نمیرم.
	man tanhā be resturān nemiram.
	I never go to a restaurant alone.
	من هیچوقت تنها به رستوران نمیرم. Example:
	man hic-vaqt tanhā be resturān nemiram.
2	man من سعوردم. man naxordam.
	I didn't eat anything.
3	. man naraftam من نرفتم.
	I didn't go anywhere.
4	. mā nakardim.
	We didn't do anything.
5	من به تلفن نکردم.
	man be telefon nakardam.
	I didn't phone anyone.
6	خوب نیست. خوب نیست. xub nist. Neither is good.

Exercise 3

kets.
ľ

	۱- آخر هفتهی گذشته، هیچجا (رفتن)
1	āxar-e hafte-ye gozaŝte, hic-jā (raftan) Last weekend, I didn't go anywhere.
	Example: āxar-e hafte-ye gozaŝte, hic-jā naraftam. mā gāhi be resturān-e irāni mirim.
	آخر هفتهی گذشته، هیچجا نرفتم.
	۲- آخر هفتهی گذشته، هیچکار (کردن)
2	āxar-e hafte-ye gozaŝte, hic-kār (kardan) Last weekend, I didn't do anything.
	۳- دیروز، هیچکس به خونهی ما (اومدن)
3	diruz, hic-kas be xune-ye mā (umadan) Yesterday, no one came to our house.
	۴- هیچکس هیچّی (گفتن)
4	hic-kas hicci (goftan) Nobody said anything.
	۵- اونها هیچوقت تو خونه [بودن (هستـ/نیستـ)]
5	unhā hic-vaqt tu xune [budan (hast/nist)] They are never at home.
	۶- هیچکدوم از شما برای این کار مناسب [بودن (هستـ/نیستـ)]
6	hic-kodum az ŝomā barāye in kār monāseb [budan (hast/nist)]
	Neither of you are suitable for this job.

	- هیچّی دربارهی او [دونستن (دونـ)]	-٧
7	hicci dar-bāre-ye u [dunestan (dun)]	
	I don't know anything about him/her.	
	- هيچكس من كجا هستم. [دونستن (دونـ)]	-λ
8	hic-kas man kojā hastam.	
	Nobody knows where I am.	

Exercise 4 (Audio2; 15)

Listen to the dialogue between Ali (A) and Parvaneh (P) and put the appropriate letter in the box, true [T] or false [F].

- A: ma'mulan sobhune ci mixori?
- P: hic-vaqt sobhune nemixoram.
- A: man (h)am hamin-to(u)r. to cerā nemixori? reĝim dāri?
- P: na bābā, reĝim cie?
- A: pas cerā nemixori?
- P: con tanbalam. to cerā nemixori?
- A: man (h)am hamin-to(u)r.
- 1 The relationship between Ali and Parvaneh is formal. [F]

- 2 Parvaneh never has breakfast because she is on a diet. []
- 3 Ali never has breakfast because he is lazy. []
- 4 Their reason for not having breakfast is the same. []

Exercise 5

Can you say these in Persian?

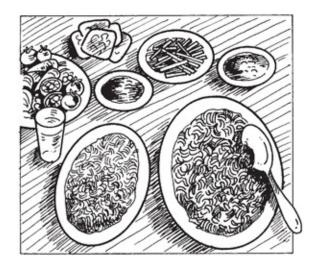
- 1 What do you usually do at the weekend?
- 2 I never stay at home.
- 3 Do you ever go out?
- 4 We rarely go out on Saturdays.
- 5 I always go to the supermarket on Saturdays.
- 6 I don't do anything on Sundays.
- 7 I don't go anywhere in the evening.
- 8 I usually stay at home and watch TV.
- 9 I didn't talk to anyone at the party.
- 10 What do you normally have for lunch?
- 11 I don't eat anything.
- 12 What did you do last weekend?
- 13 I didn't do anything.
- 14 I went shopping.
- 15 I didn't buy anything.
- 16 I never have coffee at night.
- 17 Do you ever go to Iranian restaurants? Yes, sometimes.
- 18 She often comes here with her children.
- 19 I occasionally go swimming with my friends.

به رستوران بهار خوش آمدید

be resturān-e bahār xoŝ āmadid

Welcome to Bahar Restaurant

piŝ	-qazāhā Starters			پیشغذاها
1	māst o mosir	15000 riāl	۱۵۰۰۰ ریال	۱- ماست و موسیر
	Yoghurt & wild garlic	15,000 rials		
2	māst o xiār	14500 riāl	۱۴۵۰۰ ریال	۲- ماست و خیار
	Yoghurt and cucumber	14,500 rials	11 16	1 : NI W
3	sālād-e fasl	16000 riāl	۱۶۰۰۰ ریال	٣- سالاد فصل
ç	Season's salad	16,000 rials		H >H &E
4	sālād-e olivie	16500 riāl	۱۶۵۰۰ ریال	۴- سالاد اليويه
2	Olivie (chicken & potato) salad	16,500 rials	" "	1.1.
5	kaŝk o bādenjān	17000 riāl	۱۷۰۰۰ ريال	۵- کشک و بادنجان
	Evaporated yoghurt on aubergines	17,000 rials	11 156	1. 6
6	nān o panir o sabzi	14000 riāl	۱۴۰۰۰ ريال	۶- نان و پنیر و سبزی
_	Bread & cheese & fresh herbs	14000 rials		4 - V
7	torŝi	10000 riāl	۱۰۰۰۰ ریال	۷– ترشی
	Pickles	10,000 rials		
qaz	zāhā-ye asli Main Dishes			غذاهای اصلی
8	celo-kabāb-e barg	200000 riāl	۲۰۰۰۰۰ ريال	۸- چلوکباب برگ
	Rice & thin steak kebab	200,000 rials		
9	celo-kabāb-e kubide	135000 riāl	۱۳۵۰۰۰ ریال	۹– چلوکباب کوبیده
	Rice & minced meat kebab	135,000 rials		
10	juje-kabāb	145000 riāl	۱۴۵۰۰۰ ریال	۱۰ - جوجه کباب
	Spring chicken kebab	145,000 rials		
11	bāq(e)lā polo bā morq	145000 riāl	۱۴۵۰۰۰ ریال	١١– باقلا پلو با مرغ
	Rice & barberries with chicken	145,000 rials		
12	celo-xoreŝ-e qorme-sabzi	100000 riāl	۱۰۰۰۰۰ ریال	۱۲- چلو خورش قرمەسبزى
	Rice with meat & herb sauce	100,000 rials		
13	celo-xoreŝ-e fesenjān	120000 riāl	۱۲۰۰۰۰ ریال	۱۳- چلو خورش فسنجان
	Rice with walnuts & pomegranate	120,000 rials		
	sauce			
14	celo-xoreŝ-e qeime bādenjān	100000 riāl	۱۰۰۰۰۰ ریال	۱۴– چلو خورش قیمه بادنجان
	Rice with meat & aubergines sauce	100,000 rials		
āŝā	imidanihā va deserhā Drinks and des	serts		آشامیدنیها و دسرها
15	duq	20000 riāl	۲۰۰۰۰ ريال	۱۵ - دوغ
	Yoghurt drink	20,000 rials	0 - 7	C
16	kokākolā / zamzam	10000 riāl	۱۰۰۰۰ ریال	18 - كوكاكولا / زمزم
	Coca-Cola / Zamzam (local drink)	10,000 rials	0 - 7	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,
17	āb(-e) portegāl	20000 riāl	۲۰۰۰۰ ریال	۱۷ – آب پرتقال
	Orange juice	20,000 rials	0 - 7	0 3, .
18	cāi	5000 riāl	۵۰۰۰ ریال	۱۸ – چای
	Tea	5,000 rials	0.5	0 *
19	bastani	12000 riāl	۱۲۰۰۰ ریال	۱۹ - بستنی
	Ice cream	12,000 rials	0 - 7	3
20	pālude-ye ŝirāzi	10000 riāl	۱۰۰۰۰ ریال	۲۰ ـ پالودەي شيرازى
	Shirazi sorbet	10,000 rials	0-,	0,, 0 , ,







(Audio2; 16) **(Audio2**; 16)

The restaurant is full. Two friends have to share a table with two strangers. The waiter (w) then takes their order.

- A: ببخشید، اینجا جای کسیه؟
- B: بله، رفته دستشویی.A: ببخشید آقا، می تونیم اینجا بشینیم؟
 - ت خواهش می کنم. بفرمایید.
- ۳ ببخشید حرفتونو قطع می کنم. غذا سفارش دادهاید؟

 - w: حاضرید سفارش بدید؟
 - A: بله، برای من لطفاً چلوکباب بیارید.
 - D: برای من لطفاً جوجه کباب بیارید.
 - w: پیشغذا چی میل دارید؟
 - A: پنیر و سیزی با نون، لطفاً.
 - D: برای من سالاد بیارید، لطفاً.
 - W: نوشیدنی چی بیارم؟A: دوغ، لطفأ.
 - A: هنوز تصمیم نگرفتهام. بعداً می گی.

- bebaxŝid, injā jā-ye kasie? A:
- bale, rafte das(t)ŝuyi. B:
- bebaxŝid āqā, mitunim injā beŝinim? Α:
- xāheŝ mikonam. befarmāyid. C:
- bebaxŝid harfetun-o qat(`) mikonam. qazā sefāreŝ dād(e)id? W:
- na hanuz. A:
- hāzerid sefāreŝ bedid? W:
- bale, barāye man lotfan celo(u)-kabāb biārid. A:
- barāye man lotfan juje-kabāb biārid. D:
- piŝ-qazā ci meil dārid? W:
- panir o sabzi bā nun, lotfan. Α:
- barāye man sālād biārid, lotfan. D:
- nuŝidani ci biāram? W:

- A: duq, lotfan.
- D: pepsi, lotfan.
- w: deser?
- D: bastani, lotfan.
- A: hanuz tasmim nagereft(e)am. ba(`)dan migam.
- A: Excuse me, is this seat taken? (lit Is this place someone (else)'s seat?)
- B: Yes, he's gone to the toilet.
- A: Excuse me sir, can we sit here?
- C: By all means. Please go ahead.
- W: Sorry to interrupt you. Have you ordered a meal?
- A: *Not yet*.
- W: *Are you ready to order?*
- A: Yes, for me, please (lit bring) the chelo-kebab.
- D: For me, please (lit bring) the chicken kebab.
- W: What would you like as a starter?
- A: Cheese and (fresh) herbs with bread, please.
- D: (lit Bring) salad for me, please.
- W: What drink would you like? (lit shall I bring?)
- A: Yoghurt drink, please.
- D: Pepsi, please.
- w: Dessert?
- D: Ice cream, please.
- A: I haven't decided yet. I'll tell (you) later.

Vocabulary

```
place, seat
               injā
                                       this place
               kasi
                                       someone
               rafte
                                       has gone
               dastŝuyi
                                       toilet
               beŝinim
                                       (for us) to sit
               harf
                                       speech, conversation
               qat' kardan (kon)
قطع کردن (کنہ)
                                       to interrupt
               sefāreŝ
                                       order
      (د) دادن (dādan (d)
                                       to give
سفارش دادن (د)
               sefäres dädan (d)
                                       to order
         hanuz هنوز
                                       yet, still
         häzer حاضر
                                       ready
      celou-kabāb چلوکباب
                                       rice with kebab
        biārid بياريد
                                       bring
    juje-kabāb جوجه كباب
                                       spring chicken kebab
       piŝ-qazā ييشغذا
                                       starter
          meil میل
                                       inclination
     meil därid میل دارید
                                       would you like
               panir
                                       cheese
               sabzi
                                       fresh herbs
               nun col for نان nān
                                       bread
```

نوشيدني	nuŝidani	a drink
بيارم	biāram	shall I bring
دوغ	duq	yoghurt drink (salted)
بستنى	bastani	ice cream
تصمیم گرفتن (گیر)	tasmim gereftan (gir)	to decide
بعداً	ba`dan	later
گفتن (گ)	goftan (g)	to say/tell
میگم	migam	I (will) say/tell

Language and culture notes Q

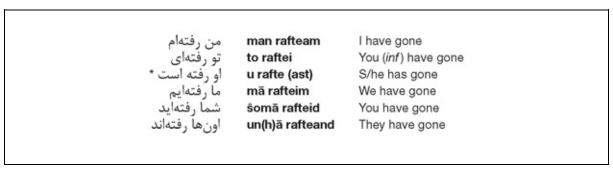


Present perfect

How to say 'He has gone.'

Here is the formula:

(Audio2; 18)



^{*} Note: For of u 'he/she', ast is used as a personal ending.

In colloquial Persian, the above forms are reduced and pronounced as follows. Note the stress pattern shown by underlining. Also listen to the recordings and note the differences.

(Audio2; 19)



As mentioned earlier, with verbs of motion, such as 'to go', 'to come', the preposition be 'to' is often omitted and the verb goes before the place. Thus,

(B) below is more colloquial: او به توالت رفته. u be tuālet rafte.

He/she's gone to the toilet.

(B) رفته توالت. He/she's gone to the toilet.

To say 'I've been to (a place)', meaning 'I've visited that place', we use the verb من به اسپانیا رفتهام. raftan 'to go': من به اسپانیا رفتهام.

man be espāniā raft(e)am.

I've been to Spain.

شما به اسیانیا رفتهاید؟

ŝomā be espāniā raft(e)id?

Have you been to Spain?

To make the verb negative, we add ina-, e.g.

man be espāniā naraft(e)am.

I haven't been to Spain.

man espāgeti naxord(e)am.

I haven't eaten spaghetti.

Exercise 6

Using the verb خوردن **xordan** 'to eat', give the equivalents of the sentences below. Follow the example.

1 I've eaten Iranian food.

من غذای ایرانی خوردهام. Example:

man qazā-ye irāni xord(e)am.

- 2 You (*inf*) have eaten Iranian food.
- 3 He/she has eaten Iranian food.
- 4 We have eaten Iranian food.
- 5 You (f) have eaten Iranian food.
- 6 They have eaten Iranian food.

Exercise 7

Now make the above sentences negative. Follow the example.

من اسپاگتی نخوردهام. Example:

man qazā-ye irāni naxord(e)am.

I have not eaten Iranian food.

Now let us explore a few more contexts in which this very common tense is used:

(Audio2; 20) 🞧

.w sarmā xord(e)am.

I've caught (lit eaten) a cold.

qazā-ye irāni xord(e)id?

Have you eaten Iranian food?

film-e āvātār-o did(e)id? فيلم أواتارو ديدهايد؟

Have you seen the film Avatar?

tā hālā film-e irāni did(e)id?

Have you seen an Iranian film until now?

?man qablan ŝomā-ro did(e)am من قبلاً شمارو ديدهام؟

Have I seen you before?

با برادرم أشنا شدهايد؟ bā barādaram āŝ(e)nā ŝod(e)id

Have you met my brother?

(شـ) با کسی آشنا شدن bā kasi āŝ(e)nā ŝodan (ŝ) to meet someone (for the first time)

من با پدرتون ملاقات نکردهام.

man bā pedaretun molāqāt nakard(e)am.

I haven't met (with) your father. [Either for the first time or by arrangement.]

با کسی ملاقات کردن (کنہ)

bā kasi mol1q1t kardan (kon)

to meet (with) someone

شما هیچوقت هلیکوپتر سوار شدهاید؟

somā hic-vaqt helikopter savār sod(e)id?

Have you ever been on (lit boarded) a helicopter?

wear sodan (s) to board (or get on) a means of transport سوار شدن (شـــ)

ايميلهاتونو چک کردهايد؟

imeilhātun-o cek kard(e)id?

Have you checked your emails?

تكليف فارسى تونو انجام دادهايد؟

taklif-e fārsitun-o anjām dād(e)id?

Have you done your Farsi homework?

anjām dādan (d) to do; to carry out تكليف taklif homework



Can you ask a Persian speaker if:

- 1 He/she has ever been to America.
- 2 He/she has seen *James Bond* (film).
- 3 He/she has ever had (eaten) Chinese food.
- 4 He/she has had (eaten) lunch/dinner/breakfast.
- 5 He/she has been on a helicopter.
- 6 He/she has ever lost something.
- 7 He/she has caught a cold.

Complaining in a restaurant

bebaxŝid, in qazāsarde! ببخشيد، اين غذا سرده!

Excuse me, this food's cold!

in nuŝābe garme!

This drink's warm!

in māhi bu mide!

This fish smells!

in sālād/nun tāze nist! اين سالاد / نون تازه نيست!

This salad/bread isn't fresh.

!āqā, mordim az gorosnegi آقا، مرديم از گرسنگی!

Sir, we're starving! (lit We died of hunger!)

?azā-ye mā ci ŝod غذاى ما چې شد

What happened to our meal?

مى تونم با مدير رستوران صحبت كنم؟

mitunam bā modir-e resturān sohbat konam?

Can I speak to the restaurant manager?

Other useful vocabulary

قَا / خانم، صورت حساب، لطفاً. aqā/xānom, surat-hesāb, lotfan.

Sir/Madam, (may I have) the bill, please?

kojā bāyad pul bedam?

Where should I pay?

Exercise 9

Can you say these in Persian?

- 1 Where's Mum? She's gone to the supermarket.
- Where are your parents? They've gone to Iran.
- 3 Have you seen my new car?
- 4 Have you ever lost something?
- 5 I always lose my car key.
- 6 Sorry to interrupt you, but you haven't seen my car key, have you? (lit

- haven't you seen) This fish is not fresh. 7
- 8 This kebab smells.
- May I have the bill, please? 9

Comprehension (Audio2; 21)

You have received a video message from a Persian-speaking relative. For this test, you will only hear the soundtrack.

> سلام. مي دونيد كه من هميشه براتون نامه يا ايميل مي نويسم. امّا اين بار تصمیم گرفتم یک فیلم بفرستم. باید بگم که هیچوقت جلوی دوربین صحبت نکر دوام. به همین دلیل کمی هول شدهام. می بخشید. امروز، خانم و بجِّه ها نيستند خونه. همه رفته اند مسافرت. امّا زياد هم تنها نيستم: الآن چند تا شکم گرسنه تو اتاق پذیرایی منتظرم هستند! پنج تا از دوستهام به دیدنم اومدهاند. تا چند دقیقهی دیگه باهاشون آشنا میشید. تو خونهی ما، اغلب خانمم آشيزي مي كنه. من بهندرت غذا درست مي كنم. فقط چلوکباب می تونم بیزم. امّا این بار، سعی کردهام چند جور غذا درست کنم. آخر فيلم، ميز ناهارخوري و نشون مي دم. راستي، شما تا حالا غذاي أيراني خور دهاید؟

salām. midunid ke man hamiŝe barātun nāme yā imeil minevisam. ammā in bār tasmim gereftam yek film bef(e)restam. bāyad begam ke hic-vaqt jelo-ye durbin sohbat nakard(e)am. be hamin dalil kami houl ŝod(e)am. mibaxŝid. emruz, xānom o baccehā nistand xune. hame raft(e)and mosāferat. ammā ziād ham tanhā nistam: al'ān cand tā ŝekam-e gorosne tu otāq-e pazirāyi montazeram hastand! panj tā az dust(h)ām be didanam umad(e)and. tā cand dagige-ye dige bāhāŝun āŝ(e)nā miŝid. tu xune-ye mā, aqlab xānomam āŝpazi mikone. man benodrat qazā dorost mikonam. faqat celo(u)-kabāb mitunam bepazam. ammā in bār, sa'y kard(e)am cand jur qazā dorost konam. āxar-e film, miz-e nāhārxori-ro neŝun midam. rāsti, ŝomā tā hālā gazā-ye irāni xord(e)id?

- What does he normally do which he is not doing now? 1
- 2 Why is he nervous?

- 3 In one way, he is alone; but then he is not! Can you solve this puzzle?
- 4 How does he show his sense of humour?
- 5 Who will you be meeting in a few minutes?
- 6 Who does what often in his home?
- What brave act has he done today?
- 8 What promise does he make?
- 9 What does he want to know at the end?

Unit Ten

موقعیّتهای اضطراری

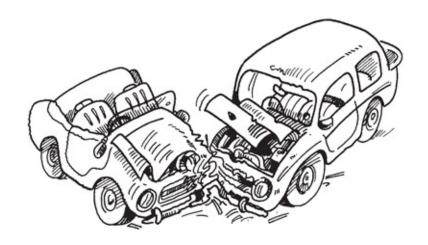
mouqe `yathā-ye ezterāri

Emergency situations

In this unit we will look at how to:



- use the Tehran telephone directory
- ask if you can contact your embassy ask to talk to your lawyer
- talk about what you were doing yesterday at this time describe someone's appearance
- call the police and other emergency services

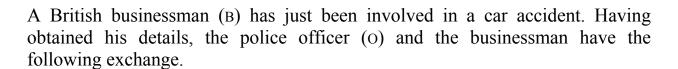


Dialogue 1

O:



At the police station (Audio2; 22)



- ن خب، حالا بفرمایید تصادف چطور اتّفاق افتاد.
- B: من داشتم با سرعت حدود ۴۰ کیلومتر در ساعت می روندم. این آقا یک دفعه پیچید جلوم.
 - ن راهنماش روشن بود؟
- B: ببخشید، فارسیم زیاد خوب نیست؛ نمی تونم به فارسی توضیح بدم.
 مترجم لازم دارم. می تونم به سفارت انگلستان تلفن کنم و خواهش
 کنم یک مترجم بفرستند؟
 - 0: خواهش مى كنم، بفرماييد. تلفن اونجاست.
- B: متشکرم. در ضمن، ترجیح میدم اوّل با وکیلم صحبت کنم. اشکالی نداره؟
 - o: خواهش می کنم. به ایشون هم می تونید زنگ بزنید.
- xob, hālā befarmāyid tasādof ceto(u)r ettefāq oftād.

- B: man dāstam bā sor`at-e hodud-e cehel kilumetr dar sā`at mirundam. ināqā yek-daf`e picid jelom.
- o: rāhnamāŝ rouŝan bud?
- B: bebaxŝid, fārsim ziād xub nist; nemitunam be fārsi touzih bedam. motarjem lāzem dāram. mitunam be sefārat-e engelestān telefon konam va xāheŝ konam yek motarjem bef(e)restand?
- o: xāheŝ mikonam, befarmāyid. telefon unjāst.
- B: mot(a)ŝakkeram. dar zemn, tarjih midam avval bā vakilam sohbat konam. eŝkāli nadāre?
- o: xāheŝ mikonam. be iŝun (h)am mitunid zang bezanid.
- O: OK, now please tell (us) how the accident happened.
- B: I was driving at a speed of about 40 kilometres per hour This gentleman suddenly turned in front of me.
- o: Was his indicator on?
- B: I'm sorry, my Persian isn't that good; I can't explain in Persian.I need an interpreter. Can I telephone the British Embassy andask them to send an interpreter?
- O: By all means, please go ahead. The telephone's there.
- B: Thank you. Incidentally, I prefer to talk to my lawyer first Is that OK?
- o: By all means. You can ring him, too.



Vocabulary

tasādof تصادف accident ettefāq oftādan (oft) اتّفاق افتادن (افتــ) to happen sorat speed kilumetr کیلومتر kilometre dāŝtam mirundam داشتم میروندم I was driving rundan (run) to drive روندن (رونـ) yek-daf`e یکدفعه suddenly he turned پیچید picidan (pic) to turn پیچیدن (پیچـ) jelom col for jelo-ye in front of me man → jelo-y(e)+am اهنما, rāhnamā indicator rouŝan switched on روشن be fārsi in Persian explanation touzih dādan (d) to explain توضيح دادن (د) motarjem interpreter, translator lāzem needed, necessary lāzem dāram لازم دارم I need (دار) lāzem dāstan (dār) to need sefārat سفارت embassy engelestān انگلستان England (فرستــ) ferestādan (ferest to send dar zemn در ضمن meanwhile (د) tarjih dādan (d) to prefer

vakil lawyer وکیل eŝkāl problem (نگ زدن (زنـ) zang zadan (zan)

Language and culture notes



Past continuous

How to say 'I was driving'

Here's the formula:

Prefix * mi- + past stem of verb + personal ending*

*Note: No personal ending is used for third-person singular (ون u 's/he' and اون un 'it/that').

Verb needed: روندن **rundan** to drive Here's the result:

Prefix میروندم mi- + past stem of verb روند rund + personal ending مروندم am = میروندم fmirundam I was driving Note: The verb داشتن dāŝtan is often used here, as an auxiliary verb, to emphasise the fact that the action was in progress: ماروندم dāŝtam mirundam I was (in the middle of)

Important: You will note that:

- The past stem of the verb داشت dāŝtan is used, i.e. داشت dāŝta.
- 2 The same personal ending is used for both verbs.

Now consider this sentence, from the dialogue, where an adverbial phrase is sandwiched between the auxiliary verb and the main verb: من داشتم با سرعت حدود ۴۰ کیلومتر در ساعت میروندم.

man dāstam bā sor`at-e hodud-e cehel kilumetr darsā`at mirundam.

I was driving at a speed of about 40 kilometres per hour.

Also note how the object can be sandwiched between the two verbs:

```
dāŝtam mixordam. I was eating. المتم مىخوردم. dāŝtam nāhār I was eating lunch. mixordam.
```

ديروز اين وقت، داشتم ناهار مىخوردم. diruz in vaqt, dāŝtam nāhār mixordam. Yesterday at this time, I was eating lunch.

Note: The auxiliary verb is not used in the negative form: ديروز اين وقت، ناهار نمي خوردم

diruz in vaqt, dāstam nāhār nemixordam.

Yesterday at this time, I was not eating lunch.

Here is a useful question:

diruz in vaqt, ce-kār mikardid?

What were you doing yesterday at this time?



Change these sentences as in the example, and then provide an English translation of the new sentences.

1 diŝab in vaqt, dāŝtam ŝām mixordam.

Last night at this time, I was eating dinner.

دیشب این وقت، داشتم تلویزیون تماشا می کردم.

diŝab in vaqt, dāŝtam televizion tamāŝā mikardam.

Last night at this time, I was watching TV.

دیشب این وقت، داشتی شام میخوردی.

2 diŝab in vaqt, dāŝti ŝām mixordi.

۳- دیشب این وقت، داشت شام میخورد.

3 diŝab in vaqt, dāŝt ŝām mixord.

۴- دیشب این وقت، داشتیم شام میخوردیم.

4 diŝab in vaqt, dāŝtim ŝām mixordim.

۵- دیشب این وقت، داشتید شام میخوردید.

5 diŝab in vaqt, dāŝtid ŝām mixordid.

۶- دیشب این وقت، داشتند شام میخوردند.

6 diŝab in vaqt, dāŝtand ŝām mixordand.

Exercise 2

Make the new sentences in Exercise 1 negative.

۱- دیشب این وقت، تلویزیون تماشا نمی کردم. Example:

1 diŝab in vaqt, televizion tamāŝa nemikardam.

Last night at this time, I was not watching TV.

Exercise 3

There are 10 incomplete sentences in this exercise with two blanks (a) and (b) in each sentence. With the help of the English translations, use the *correct form* of: the auxiliary verb داشتن dāstan in blank (a); a verb from the box below in blank (b).

Follow the example.

کار کردن	kār kardan	to work (Example)
صحبت كردر	sohbat kardan	to speak
خوردن	xordan	to eat, to drink
درس خوندر	dars xundan	to study
اومدن	umadan	to come
چک کردن	cek kardan	to check
نوشتن	neveŝtan	to write
شنا کردن	ŝenā kardan	to swim
یاد گرفتن	yād gereftan	to learn
گوش کردن	guŝ kardan	to listen

1 diruz in vaqt, (a) ____bā kāmpiuter (b) ____.

Yesterday at this time, I was working with the computer.

ديروز اين وقت، داشتم با كامپيوتر كار مىكردم. Example:

diruz in vaqt	, dāŝtam bā	ā kāmpiuter kār m	nikardam.	

	۲- دیروز این وقت، (a) با شوهرم (b)
2	diruz in vaqt, (a) bā ŝouharam (b)
	Yesterday at this time, I was speaking with my husband.
	۳- دیشب این وقت، (a) چای (b)
3	diŝab in vaqt, (a) cāi (b)
	Last night at this time, we were drinking tea.
	۴- پارسال این وقت، (a) در دانشگاه (b)
4	pārsāl in vaqt, (a) dar dāneŝgāh (b)
	Last year at this time, they were studying at university.
	۵− پریروز این وقت، (a) با قطار (b) اینجا.
5	pariruz in vaqt, (a) bā qatār (b) injā.
	The day before yesterday at this time, you were coming here by train.
	۶- دیروز این وقت، (a) ایمیلهامو (b)
6	diruz in vaqt, (a) imeilhām-o (b)
	Yesterday at this time, I was checking my emails.
	-۷ دیشب این وقت، خانمم (a) نامه (b)
7	diŝab in vaqt, xanomam (a) nāme (b)
	Last night at this time, my wife was writing a letter.
	۸− هفتهی پیش این وقت، (a) تو دریا (b)
8	hafte-ye pis in vaqt, (a) tu daryā ŝenā (b)
	Last week at this time, we were swimming in the sea.
	٩- دو سال پيش اين وقت، (a) انگليسي (b)
9	do sāl piŝ in vaqt, (a) engelisi (b)
	Two years ago at this time, you were learning English

10 sā'at-e haŝt, (a) ____ be axbār (b) ____.

At eight o'clock, I was listening to the news.

Tehran telephone directory: 118

ببخشيد، شمارهي تلفن شركت گازو ميخواستم، لطفاً.

bebaxŝid, ŝomāre(-ye) telefon-e ŝerkat-e gāz-o mixāstam, lotfan.

Excuse me, I wanted the telephone number of the gas company, please.

Emergency calls

يدرم حالش به هم خورده. هرچه زودتر یک آمبولانس بفرستید، لطفاً.

pedaram hāleŝ be ham xorde. har-ce zudtar yek āmbulāns bef(e)restid, lotfan.

My father has fallen ill. Please send an ambulance as soon as possible.

?قشنشانى āteŝ-neŝāni? (Is that the) Fire Brigade

خونهمون آتش گرفته! كمك كنيد، لطفأ.

xunamun āteŝ (col ātiŝ) gerefte! komak konid, lotfan.

Our house has caught fire! Please help.

.co. خونهمونو دزد زده.

Our house has been burgled.

.qofl-e daremun-o ŝekast(e)and قفل درمونو شکستهاند.

They have broken the lock to our door.

xune-ye hamsāyamun da`vāst.

There's a fight in our neighbour's house.

تو خونهمون بوی گاز میآد. لطفأ یک نفرو بفرستید.

tu xunamun bu-ye gāz miād. lotfan yek nafar-o bef(e)restid.

There's a smell of gas in our house. Please send someone.

lule-ye ābemun tarakide.

Our water pipe has burst.

.barq nadārim برق نداريم.

We have a power cut. (*lit* We don't have electricity.)

گذرنامه امو / پاسپورتمو گم کرده ام.

gozarnāmam-o/pāsportam-o gom kard(e)am.

I've lost my passport.



Can you say these in Persian?

- 1 How did the accident happen?
- 2 I was driving at the speed of 50 kilometres per hour.
- 3 A blue car suddenly turned in front of me.
- 4 Its indicator wasn't on.
- 5 I saw the accident, but I can't explain in Persian.
- 6 My Persian isn't that good.
- 7 I need an interpreter/a lawyer.
- 8 May I phone my embassy?
- 9 I prefer to talk to my family first. Is that OK?
- 10 What were you doing at this time last night?
- 11 I was watching an Iranian film.

- I have lost my passport. 12
- My kitchen is on fire. Please help. 13
- My flat has been burgled. Please send someone. 14
- My neighbour has collapsed. Please send an ambulance as soon as possible. 15
- May I have the telephone number of the police/ambulance/fire brigade, 16 please?



○ Describing appearance (Audio2; 24)

Ahmad (A) has just been pickpocketed. He is now helping the police (P) with their enquiries.

```
۳: شما خودتون جیببرو دیدید؟'
```

سعى مىكنم. قدّش بلندتر از من بود. صورتش گلابىشكل بود. رنگ پوستش سفید بود.

P: موهاش چه رنگ بود؟

A: یادم نیست. فکر می کنم تراشیده بود. امّا سبیلش مشکی بود.

- P: جثّهاش چطور بود؟
- A: لاغر بود، امّا چارشونه.
- P: لباسش یادتون هست؟
- ۸: بله، کت نداشت. یک کاپشن قهوهای داشت با شلوار سرمهای.
 رنگ پیرهنش یادم نیست.
 - ۳: تو دستش چیزی نبود؟
 - A: چرا، یک ساک آبی داشت.
 - ۲: کس دیگه اونجا نبود؟
 - A: چرا، خیلی ها بودند، امّا اسم و آدر سشونو ندار م.
 - از همکاریتون متشکرم.
 - A: خواهش مي كنم.

- P: ŝomā xodetun jib-bor-o didid?
- A: bale
- P: mitunid moŝaxxasāteŝ-o begid?
- A: sa(`)y mikonam. qaddeŝ bolandtar az man bud. surateŝgolābi-ŝekl bud. rang-e pusteŝ sefid bud.
- P: muhāŝ ce rang bud?
- A: yādam nist. fekr mikonam tarāŝide bud. ammā sebileŝ meŝki bud.
- P: jossaŝ ceto(u)r bud?
- A: lāqar bud, ammā cār-ŝune.
- P: lebāseŝ yādetun hast?
- A: bale, kot nadāŝt. yek kāpŝan-e qahveyi dāŝt bā ŝalvār-e sormeyi. rang-e pirhaneŝ yādam nist.
- P: tu dasteŝ cizi nabud?
- A: cerā, yek sāk-e ābi dāŝt.
- P: kas-e dige unjā nabud?
- A: cerā, xeilihā budand, ammā esm o ādreseŝun-o nadāram.
- P: az hamkāritun mot(a)ŝakkeram.
- A: xāheŝ mikonam.
- P: Did you see the pickpocket yourself?

- A: Yes.
- P: Can you describe him?
- A: I'll try. He was taller than I (am). His face was pear-shaped. The colour of his skin was white.
- P: What colour was his hair?
- A: I can't remember. I think his head was shaved (lit he hadshaved). But his moustache was black.
- P: What kind of build did he have?
- A: He was slim, but broad-shouldered.
- P: Do you remember his clothes?
- A: Yes, he didn't have a jacket. He had a brown bomber jacketwith navy-blue trousers. I can't remember the colour of his shirt.
- P: Wasn't there anything in his hand?
- A: Yes, he had a blue holdall.
- P: Wasn't anyone else there?
- A: Yes, many (people) were there, but I don't have their names and addresses.
- P: I'm grateful for your cooperation.
- A: You're welcome.



Vocabulary

xodetunyourselfjib-borpickpocket

moŝaxxasāt distinctive features مشخّصات begid (for you to) say/tell

goftan (g) to say/tell گفتن (گــ)

sa'y kardan (kon) to try سعى كردن (كنــ)

قة qadd height bolandtar taller

surat face صورت golābi pear څلابی ŝekl shape رنگ rang colour

pust skin پوست sefid white سفید، mu hair

yād memory

يادم نيست. J can't remember.

tarāŝidan (tarāŝ) to shave

sebil moustache

meŝki black مشكى josse build الغر lāqar slim

cār-ŝune broad-shouldered

lebās clothes لباس

yādetun hast? Can you remember?

kot jacket

كاپشن kāpŝan bomber jacket

ahveyi قهوهای salvār trousers سرمهای sormeyi navy blue pirhan shirt

yes (to a negative question) چرا

sāk holdall ابى äbi blue ابى kas person ديگه dige

xeilihā many people خیلیها **hamkāri** cooperation

Language and culture notes Q



Emphatic and reflexive pronouns

How to say 'myself'; 'my own'

We use the word 'self/own' together with the possessive endings (see U2D2).

(Audio2; 26)

```
xodam myself; my own خودت xodet yourself; your own (inf) himself/herself; his/her own; itself/its own خودش ourselves; our own yourselves; your own خودتون xodesun themselves; their own
```

.man xodam unhā-ro didam من خودم اونهارو دیدم

I myself saw them, or: I saw them myself.

```
من با چشمهای خودم اونهارو دیدم.
```

man bā ceŝmhā-ye xodam unhā-ro didam.

I saw them with my own eyes.

```
xodeŝ-o tu āine did.
```

He saw himself in the mirror.

Exercise 5

With the help of the English translations, supply the missing word. Follow the

exar	nple.
1	او نامهرو نوشت. u nāma-ro neveŝt.
	He wrote the letter himself.
	Example: او خودش نامهرو نوشت. u xodeŝ nāma-ro neveŝt.
2	\$omā احمدو ديديد؟
	Did you see Ahmad yourself?
3	mā bā māŝin-e mirim.
	We'll go in (lit by) our own car.
4	اونها با ماشین میرند.
	unhā bā māsin-e mirand.
	They'll go in (lit by) their own car.
5	به گفتم: "صبور باش!"
	be goftam: 'sabur bāŝ!'
	I told myself: 'Be patient!'
6	به گفتم: "صبور باش!"
	too (rā) tu āine did(e)i? Have you seen yourself in the mirror?
7	علی برای دوچرخه خرید.
	ali barāye docarxe xarid.
	(lit) Ali bought a bicycle for himself.
Pa	st perfect
Но	w to say 'he had shaved'
Here	e is the formula:
	Past stem of verb + suffix ° e + عين bud + personal ending*

*Note: No personal ending is used for third-person singular (ون u s/he; ون un it/that).

Verb needed: تراشیدن tarāŝidan to shave

Past stem: تراشید tarāŝid

(Audio2; 27) **(**

تراشيده بودم	tarāŝide budam	I had shaved
تراشيده بودي	tarāŝide budi	you (inf) had shaved
تراشيده بود	tarāŝide bud	he had shaved
تراشيده بوديم.	tarāŝide budim	we had shaved
تراشيده بوديد	tarāŝide budid	you had shaved
تراشيده بودند	tarāŝide budand	they had shaved

For the negative, we add the (stressed) prefix in na- to the main verb: متراشیده بود natarāŝide bud he had not shaved

Exercise 6

Complete these sentences with the correct form of the verb in brackets. Follow the example.

پنج سال پیش، با شما اشنا شدم.

panj sāl piŝ, bā ŝomā āŝenā ŝodam.

I met you five years ago.

امّا قبلاً شمارو _____. (ديدن)

ammā qablan ŝomā-ro ___. (didan)

But I had seen you before.

Example: امّا قبلاً شمارو ديده بودم.

ammā qablan ŝomā-ro dide budam.

But I had seen you before.

2	دیشب، فیلم تایتنیکو تو تلویزیون دیدم.						
	diŝab, film-e tāitanik-o tu televizion didam.						
	Last night, I saw the film <i>Titanic</i> on TV.						
	قبلا اونو تو سینما (دیدن)						
	qablan, un-o tu sinemā (didan)						
	I had seen it in the cinema before.						
3	آخر هفتهی پیش، غذای ایرانی پختم.						
	āxar-e hafte-ye piŝ, qazā-ye irāni poxtam.						
	Last weekend, I cooked (some) Iranian food.						
	قبلاً چند بار غذای ایرانی (پختن)						
	qablan cand bār qazā-ye irāni (poxtan)						
	I had cooked Iranian food a few times before.						
4	.yek rob` dir be sinemā residim یک ربع دیر به سینما رسیدیم						
	We arrived at the cinema a quarter of an hour late.						
	(شروع شدن) (شروع شدن) film (ŝoru` ŝodan)						
	The film had started.						
5	.diŝab, dir residam xune دیشب، دیر رسیدم خونه						
	Last night, I arrived home late.						
	مادرم غذای خوشمزهای (درست کردن)						
	mādaram qazā-ye xoŝmazeyi (dorost kardan)						
	My mother had made a delicious meal.						
	امّا من شام! (خوردن)						
	ammā man ŝām! (xordan)						
	But I had eaten dinner!						

Exercise 7

Fill in the blanks with the correct form of a verb from the box below. Follow the example.

خوردن	xordan	to eat	
يختن	poxtan	to cook	
ديدن	didan	to see	
صحبت كردن	sohbat kardan	to speak	
سفر کردن	safar kardan	to travel	
شنا كردن	ŝenā kardan	to swim	
رانندگی کردن	rānandegi kardan	to drive	

اوّلین بار سه هفته پیش غذای ایرانی خوردم.

avvalin bār se hafte piŝ qazā-ye irāni xordam.

I first ate Iranian food three weeks ago.

._____ qablan qazā-ye irāni _____.

I had not eaten Iranian food before.

قبلاً غذای ایرانی نخورده بودم. Example:

qablan qazā-ye irāni naxorde budam.

I had not eaten Iranian food before.

اولين بار ده سال پيش با خانمم ملاقات كردم.

I had not eaten Iranian food before.

avvalin bār dah sāl piŝ bā xānomam molāqāt kardam.

I first met my wife ten years ago.

I had not seen her before.

اولین بار هشت ماه پیش فارسی صحبت کردم.

avvalin bār haŝt māh piŝ fārsi sohbat kardam.

I first spoke Persian eight months ago.

	qablan fārsi
	nd not spoken Persian before. اوّلین بار دو سال پیش غذای هندی پ
avv	alin bār do sāl piŝ qazā-ye hendi poxtam.
	rst cooked Indian food two years ago. قبلا غذای هندی
	nd not cooked Indian food before. اوّلین بار چهار ماه پیش به ایران سفر ک
avv	alin bār cahār māh piŝ be irān safar kardam
	rst travelled to Iran four months ago. قبلاً به ایران qablan be irān
	nd not travelled to Iran before. اوّلین بار دیروز تو دریا شنا ک
avv	alin bār diruz tu daryā ŝenā kardam.
	rst swam in the sea yesterday. قبلا تو دریا
	nd not swum in the sea before. اولین بار پونزده سال پیش رانندگی ک
avv	alin bār punzdah sāl piŝ rānandegi kardam.
	rst drove (a car) fifteen years ago. قبلاً
I ha	ad not driven (a car) before.

Indefinite pronouns

Note the use of these indefinite pronouns:

کسی kas person; کسی kasi someone, a person داره. kasi bā ŝomā kār dāre.

Someone wants to see you. (*lit* Someone has business with you.) معنى الله ba'zi some; بعضى الله ba'zi az some of ba'zi az sibhā xarāband.

Some of the apples are bad.

اونها **ba`zi az unhā** some of them **xeili m**any; خیلی **xeili m**any people

Exercise 8

Match these people (a-c) with their descriptions (1-3).

- 1 qadd = boland; josse = cāq, cār-ŝune; mu = kutāh, bur مرت = گرده؛ جثّه = لاغر؛ مو = بلند، جوگندمی؛ صورت = گرد-۲
- 2 qadd = kutāh; josse = lāqar; mu = boland, jougandomi; surat = gerd ورت = گلابی شکل = كوتاه، مشكى؛ صورت = گلابی شكل = گلابی شكل
- qadd = motavasset; josse = topoli; mu = kutāh, meŝki; surat = golābiŝekl



Can you say these in Persian?

1 When did you first go to Iran? 5 years ago.

- 2 Why did you go to Iran?
- 3 I had read a few books about your country.
- 4 I had seen a few Iranian films.
- 5 I had become interested in Iran.
- 6 Had you not been to the Middle East before?
- 7 Yes, I had been to Iraq.
- 8 Someone wants to see you (*lit* has business with you).
- 9 Some of the guests want to talk to you.
- 10 Did you talk to Ahmad yourself?
- 11 I saw myself in the mirror.

Comprehension (Audio2; 28)

Here's how Ali described what happened to him last night:

من و خانمم داشتیم تو رستوران غذا میخوردیم. حدود ساعت هشت، کدفعه چراغها خاموش شد. قبل از اون، دو نفر در میز پهلوی ما غذا میخوردند. بعداز حدود پنج دقیقه، چراغها روشن شد، امّا اون دو نفر رفته بودند. کیف من هم ناپدید شده بود! یکیشون قدبلند بود و کتوشلوار طوسی داشت. موهاش مشکی بود و کوتاه. سبیل کلفت و عینک آفتابی داشت. دوّمی پشتش به من بود. صورتشو ندیدم. امّا سرش تاس بود. پیرهنش هم آبی بود.

man o xānomam dāŝtim tu resturān qazā mixordim. hodud-e sā`at-e haŝt, yek-daf`e cerāqhā xāmuŝ ŝod. qabl-az un, do nafar dar miz-e pahlu-ye mā qazā mixordand. a`d-az hodud-e panj daqiqe, cerāqhā rouŝan ŝod, ammā un do nafar rafte budand. kif-e man ham nāpadid āode bud! yekiŝun qad(d)-boland bud va kot-o-ŝalvār-e tusi dāŝt. muhāŝ meŝki bud o kutāh. sebil-e koloft o einak-e āftābi dāŝt. dovvomi poŝteŝ be man bud. surateŝ-o nadidam. ammā sareŝ tās bud. pirhaneŝ ham ābi bud.

- 1 Where was Ali?
- Who was he with?
- 3 What were they doing?
- 4 What happened at 8 o'clock?
- 5 What implicit message is Ali giving the police?
- 6 Can you describe the appearance of one of the men the police are now looking for?
 - Height?
 - Clothes?
 - Hair colour and length?
 - Facial hair?
 - Glasses?
- 7 Why couldn't Ali give much of a description of the second man?

Unit Eleven

منزل

manzel

Home

In this unit we will look at how to:



- start, hold and end a telephone conversation enquire about rented
- accommodation make longer sentences
- express preference
- apologise for causing inconvenience say you are looking for something/someone

Dialogue 1



Answering the phone (Audio2; 29)



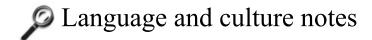
The phone rings. Ms Teimuri (T) answers the phone. It's Mr Zandi (Z), a friend of her husband, Ali Keshmiri. (Iranian women often keep their maiden name.)

- T: الو؟
- z: ببخشید، منزل آقای کشمیری؟
 - T: بله، بفرمایید.
 - z: سلام، زندی هستم.
 - T: سلام، حالتون چطوره؟
 - z: خوبم، متشكّرم. على هست؟
 - T: نه نیست، متأسفانه.
 - z: از اداره برنگشته هنوز؟
- τ: چرا، ساعت ۵ اومد، امّا دوباره رفت بیرون.
 - z: میدونید کی برمی گرده خونه؟
 - T: حدود هشت.
 - z: خب، پس بعداً زنگ مىزنم.
 - ۲: میخواید پیغام بذارید؟
 - z: نه، متشكّرم. ببخشيد مزاحم شدم.
 - ت خواهش می کنم.
 - z: فعلاً خدا حافظ.
 - T: خدا نگهدار.

- alou? Т:
- bebaxŝid, manzele āgā-ye keŝmiri? Z:
- bale, befarmāyid. T:
- salām, zandi hastam. Z:
- salām, hāletun ceto(u)re? Т:
- xubam, mot(a)ŝakkeram. ali hast? Z:
- na nist, mota(`)assefāne. T:
- az edāre bar nagaŝte hanuz? Z:
- cerā, sā'at-e panj umad, ammā dobāre raft birun. T:
- midunid kei bar migarde xune? Z:

- T: hodud-e haŝt.
- z: xob, pas ba(`)dan zang mizanam.
- T: mixāid peigām bezārid?
- z: na, mot(a)ŝakkeram. bebaxŝid mozāhem ŝodam.
- T: xāheŝ mikonam.
- z: fe(`)lan xodā hāfez.
- T: xodā negahdār.
- T: Hello?
- z: Excuse me, (is that) Mr Keshmiri's home?
- T: Yes, what can I do for you?
- z: Hello, I'm Zandi.
- T: *Hello, how're you?*
- z: I'm fine, thanks. Is Ali (in)?
- T: No he's not (in), I'm afraid.
- z: Hasn't he come back from the office yet?
- T: Yes, he came at 5 o'clock, but went out again.
- z: Do you know when he'll come back home?
- T: *About* 8.
- z: OK, I'll ring later, then.
- T: Do you want to leave a message?
- z: No, thanks. Sorry to have bothered you.
- T: No problem.
- z: Goodbye for now.
- T: Goodbye.

منزل	manzel	home, residence
متأستفانه	mota`assefāne	unfortunately
اداره	edāre	office
برگشتن (گرد	bar gaŝtan (gard)	to return
چرا	cerā	yes (to a negative question)
دوباره	dobāre	again
بيرون	birun	out
خب	xob	OK, so
پس	pas	then, in that case
بعدأ	ba`dan	later
زنگ زدن (زنـ	zang zadan (zan)	to ring
پيغام	peiqām	message
گذاشتن (ذار)	gozāŝtan (zār)	to leave; to put
گذاشتن (ذار) مزاحم	mozāhem	nuisance



Conjunctions

These are used to join two or more sentences, which are normally of equal weight.

Example:

- (a) من ساندویچ خوردم. man sāndevic xordam. I ate a sandwich.
- (b) احمد کیک خورد. ahmad keik xord. Ahmad ate some cake.
- (a + b) من ساندویچ خوردم امّا احمد کیک خورد. man sāndevic xordam ammā ahmad keik xord.

I ate a sandwich but Ahmad ate some cake.

Some useful patterns:

$$1$$
 Y ي X ي $y\bar{a}$ X $y\bar{a}$ Y either X or Y 2 Y (9) X (9) na X (va) na Y both X and Y na X (va) na Y neither X nor Y

Examples:

yā sāndevic yā keik

either a sandwich or some cake

ham sāndevic (va) ham keik

both a sandwich and some cake

na sāndevic (va) na keik

neither a sandwich (and) nor some/any cake

Note: If patterns 1–3 above are expressed in the form of a sentence, the verb is normally placed after 'X'. Examples: من يا ساندويچ ميخورم يا كيك

man yā sāndevic mixoram yā keik.

I'll eat either a sandwich or some cake.

har do rā nemitunam boxoram.

I can't eat both.

- (a) على ساندويچ خورد. ali sāndevic xord. Ali ate a sandwich.
- (b) او کیک هم خورد. **u keik ham xord.** He ate some cake, too.

$$(a+b)$$
 ملی هم ساندویچ خورد (و) هم کیک.

ali ham sāndevic xord (va) ham keik.

Ali ate both a sandwich and some cake.

Important: Note that in pattern 3 above, the verb normally appears in positive

for – msimilar to English! Example:

(a) سوسن ساندویچ نخورد. susan sāndevic naxord.

Susan didn't eat a sandwich.

(b) او کیک هم نخورد. **u keik ham naxord.**

She didn't eat any cake, either.

سوسن نه ساندویچ خورد (و) نه کیک. (a + b)

susan na sāndevic xord (va) na keik.

Susan ate neither a sandwich nor any cake.

Here is a more challenging example where two different subjects and verbs are involved:

دیروز، کسی به دیدن من نیومد. (a)

diruz, kasi be didan-e man nayumad.

Yesterday, nobody came to see me.

من هم به دیدن کسی نرفتم. (b)

man ham be didan-e kasi naraftam.

I didn't go to see anyone, either.

(a+b) . دیروز، نه کسی به دیدن من اومد (و) نه من به دیدن کسی رفتم

diruz, na kasi be didan-e man umad (va) na man be didan-e kasi raftam.

Yesterday, neither did anyone come to see me (and) nor did I go to see anyone.

(see p.294)



Join each pair into one sentence following the patterns introduced above.

diŝab, dar yek resturān-e bozorg ŝām xordim. qazā xub nabud.

Last night, we ate dinner in a big restaurant. The food wasn't good.

How do you say.

IION GO you buy.

Last night, we ate dinner in a big restaurant, but the food wasn't good.

Example:

diŝab dar yek resturān-e bozorg ŝām xordim, ammā qazā xub nabud.

2 deser bastani xordam, keik ham xordam.

(For) dessert I had ice cream. I had some cake, too.

How do you say: For dessert I had both ice cream and cake.

3 mādaram ŝām naxord, u deser ham naxord.

My mother didn't have dinner. She didn't have a dessert, either.

How do you say: My mother had neither dinner nor dessert.

4 be nazar-e mādaram: qazā xub nabud. deser ham xub nabud.

In my mother's opinion: The food wasn't good. The dessert wasn't good, either.

How do you say: Neither the food nor the dessert was good.

5 āxar-e hafte-ye gozaste, kasi be xune-ye mā nayumad. mā ham be xune-ye kasi naraftim.

Last weekend, nobody came to our house. We didn't go to anyone's house either.

How do you say: Last weekend, neither did anyone come to our house (and) nor did we go to anyone's house.

More expressions used on the phone (Audio2; 30)



mixāstam bā āqā-ye ahmadi sohbat konam.

I would like to speak with Mr Ahmadi.

.sedātun-o xub nemiŝ(e)navam.

I can't (*lit* don't) hear your voice well.

lotfan yek kam bolandtar sohbat konid.

Please speak a little louder.

ببخشيد، شما؟ bebaxŝid, ŝomā?

Excuse me, who's calling? (lit you?)

jenāb-āli? جنابعالي؟

(rising tone) Who's calling? (lit Excellency) formal کامران هستم. kāmrān hastam.

It's Kamran calling. (lit I am Kamran.)

lotfan guŝi-ro negah dārid. گوشی خدمتتون باشه.

Please hold on. (*lit* Please hold the receiver.)

guŝi xedmatetun bāŝe. گوشی خدمتتون باشه

(Please) hold on. (lit Let the receiver be/remain at your service.) formal لطفاً چند لحظه صبر كنيد؛ صداشون مي كنم.

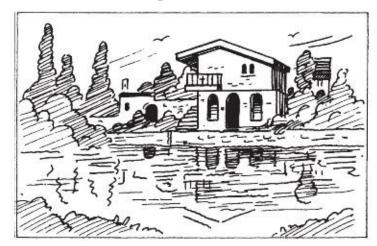
lotfan cand lahze sabr konid; sedāsun mikonam.

Please wait a few moments; I'll call him.

Exercise 2

Can you say these in Persian?

- You can have either ice cream or chocolate. You can't have both! 1
- 2 Can I have both ice cream and cake, please?
- 3 Today, I had neither breakfast nor lunch!
- Bear with me a few moments; I'll call her. 4
- 5 Can you speak up a little? I can't hear you.
- Who's calling? It's Hameed. 6
- I'd like to talk to Mr Jamshidi, please. 7







N I'm looking for a flat (Audio2; 31)

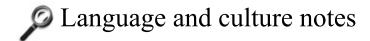
A British lecturer (s) on a two-year teaching assignment at Tehran University, is looking for a flat. A is the estate agent.

- s: دنبال یک آپارتمان اجارهای می گردم.
 - A: چه جور آپارتمانی؟
- s: دوخوابه با حموم و توالت جدا و آشپزخونهی بزرگ.
 - ن کجای تهران؟
 - s: ترجیحاً نزدیک دانشگاه تهران.
- A: اونجا، یک آپارتمان دارم که خیلی مناسبه، امّا اجارهاش یک
 - s: ماهي چنده؟
 - A: یک میلیون تومن.
 - s: مىشە ببينمش؟
 - A: بله، بفرمایید.

- s: donbāl-e ye(k) āpārtemān-e ejāreyi migardam.
- A: ce jur āpārtemāni?
- s: do-xābe bā hamum o tuālet-e jodā va āŝpazxune-ye bozorg.
- A: kojā-ye tehrān?
- s: tarjihan nazdik-e dāneŝgāh-e tehrān.
- A: unjā, ye(k) āpārtemān dāram ke xeili monāsebe, ammā ejār(e)aŝ yek kam gerune.
- s: māhi cande?
- A: ye(k) milyun toman.
- s: miŝe bebinameŝ?
- A: bale, befarmāyid.
- S: I'm looking for a flat to rent.
- A: What sort of a flat?
- S: A two-bedroomed (flat) with separate bathroom and toilet and a large kitchen.
- A: Whereabouts in Tehran?
- s: Preferably near Tehran University.

- A: There, I have a flat which is very suitable, but the rent is a bit expensive.
- S: How much is it per month?
- A: 1,000,000 tumans.
- s: *Is it possible for me to see it?*
- A: Yes, let's go.





Relative clauses

So far we have seen how two sentences of – usually – equal weight are joined by a conjunction (see U11D1). Sometimes we join two sentences one of which contains our main point, while the other is there to provide further information.

Consider these:

(a) يک آپارتمان دارم. yek āpārtemān dāram.

I have an apartment.

- (b) اون خیلی مناسبه. **un xeili monāsebe.** It is very suitable.
- یک آپارتمان دارم که خیلی مناسبه. (a + b)

yek āpārtemān dāram ke xeili monāsebe.

I have an apartment which is very suitable.

You will note that the pronoun اون un 'it' was replaced by the relative pronoun ke 'which/that'.

Here is another (slightly less colloquial) way of saying (a + b): آیار تمانی دارم که خیلی مناسبه

āpārtemāni dāram ke xeili monāsebe.

I have an apartment which is very suitable.

You will note that we have used the suffix -i (meaning 'a/an') instead of yek (meaning 'one') – see U3D2.

Here is a similar sentence. Focus on the underlined parts: آپارتمانی دیدم که خیلی مناسبه.

āpārtemāni didam ke xeili monāsebe.

I saw an apartment which is very suitable.

Now let us shift the position of که **ke** 'which' and consider the change in meaning: آپارتمانی که دیدم خیلی مناسبه.

āpārtemāni ke didam xeili monāsebe.

The apartment which I saw is very suitable.

Conclusion: When immediately followed by the relative pronoun 45 ke 'which', the indefinite article 5 -i 'a/an' may act as a definite article 'the'! (See U3D2 for the indefinite article.) Here is another example:

māŝini be man foruxti ke rāh nemire.

You sold me a car which doesn't go.

māŝini ke be man foruxti rāh nemire.

The car that/which you sold me doesn't go.

Note how these two sentences are joined up:

(a) خانم هنوز نيومده. xānom hanuz nayumade.

The lady hasn't come yet.

(b) آدرس شمارو از او گرفتم. ādres-e ŝomā-ro az u gereftam.

I got your address from her.

xānomi ke ādres-e ŝomā-ro az u gereftam, hanuz nayumade.

The lady from whom I got your address, hasn't come yet.

A more colloquial form for the above sentence would be:

xānomi ke ādresetun-o azaŝ gereftam, hanuz nayumade.

مردی که بهش تلفن کردید، اینجاست. :More examples

mardi ke beheŝ telefon kardid, injāst.

The man whom you telephoned, is here.

rusari(i) ke be man dādid, xeili qaŝange.

The headscarf which/that you gave me, is very pretty.

jamŝid, ke az hame-ye mā zerangtar bud, dah gereft!

Jamshid, who was cleverer than all of us, got 10 (out of 20)!

pesaram, ke dar kānādā dars mixune, diruz telefon kard.

My son, who is studying in Canada, telephoned yesterday.

Implication: The speaker has only one son.

un pesaram ke dar k1n1d1 dars mixune diruz telefon kard.

My son who is studying in Canada telephoned yesterday.

(lit That son of mine who ...)

Implication: The speaker has more than one son.

Note how these sentences are joined up:

- (a) دنبال یک ماشین می گردم. **donbāl-e yek māŝin migardam.** I'm looking for a car.
- (b) بايد ارزون باشه. **bāyad arzun bāŝe.** It must be cheap.
- دنبال یک ماشین می گردم که ارزون باشه. (a + b)

donbāl-e yek māŝin migardam ke arzun bāŝe.

I'm looking for a car that is cheap.

The word $b\bar{a}yad$ 'must' has been omitted in (a + b) but its impact remains, i.e. the verb 'to be' remains in the subjunctive. Here's another example: $a_0 \neq b_0 \neq b_0$

mixām xuneyi bexaram ke do tā tullet dāŝte bāŝe.

I want to buy a house which has two toilets.



Join each of the following pairs into one sentence using the relative pronoun **ke** 'that/which/who'. Follow the example.

dar ŝirāz yek xune dāram. xeili qaŝange.

I have a house in Shiraz. It's very nice.

در شیراز یک خونه دارم که خیلی قشنگه. Example:

dar ŝirāz yek xune dāram ke xeili qaŝange.

I have a house in Shiraz which is very nice.

2 diruz yek māŝin xaridam. xub kār nemikone.

Yesterday I bought a car. It doesn't work well.

Now say: Yesterday I bought a car which doesn't work well.

3 bel'axare yek otobus umad. por az mos1fer bud.

At last a bus came. It was full of passengers.

Now say: At last there came a bus which was full of passengers.

4 be yek āĝāns telefon kardam. nazdik-e manzelemune.

I phoned an agency. It's near our home.

Now say: I phoned an agency that is near our home.

5 pedaram diruz be irān raft. u dar landan kār mikone.

My father went to Iran yesterday. He works in London.

Now say: My father, who works in London, went to Iran yesterday.

Exercise 4

Change the following sentences as shown in the example.

1 māŝini be man foruxt ke kār nemikone.

He sold me a car that doesn't work.

Now say: The car he sold me doesn't work.

ماشینی که به من فروخت کار نمی کنه. Example:

māŝini ke be man foruxt kār nemikone.

۲- آدرسی به من داد که کامل نیست.

2 ādresi be man dād ke k1mel nist.

He gave me an address that is not complete.

Now say: The address he gave me is not complete.

۳- فیلمی دیدم که خیلی خسته کننده بود.

3 filmi didam ke xeili xaste-konande bud.

I saw a film that was very boring.

Now say: The film I saw was very boring.

۴- آیار تمانی خریدم که پنج تا اتاق خواب داره.

4 āpārtemāni xaridam ke panj tā otāq-e xāb dāre.

I bought an apartment that has five bedrooms.

Now say: The apartment I bought has five bedrooms.

۵- کتابی به من دادید که خیلی مفیده.

5 ketābi be man dādid ke xeiāi mofide.

You gave me a book that is very useful.

Now say: The book you gave me is very useful

6 qazāyi barām poxt ke xeili xosmaze bud.

S/he cooked a meal for me which was very tasty.

Now say: The meal s/he cooked for me was very tasty.

Intonation

A shift of stress can create a difference in meaning: māhi 'per month' as compared to ماهي māhi 'fish'.

Consider examples in English such as: <u>content</u> as compared to content.

Exercise 5

How do you explain to an estate agent that you are looking for a house to rent with the following particulars? You may need to use the glossaries at the end of the book.

3 bedrooms; one bathroom with two toilets; a medium size kitchen; located in central Tehran; preferably near a shopping centre; rent of 1,200,000 tumans per month or less.

Exercise 6

Can you say these in Persian?

- 1 Who are you looking for?
- 2 I'm looking for my son.
- 3 What are you looking for?
- 4 I'm looking for my phonebook.

- 5 I'm looking for a new job.
- 6 I'm looking for a car that is reliable.
- 7 Next time I'll buy a house that has 10 bedrooms!
- 8 The car which you saw wasn't mine.
- 9 The man to whom you sold the car is here.
- 10 The gentleman from whom I got your phone number was very

Comprehension (Audio2; 32)

An Iranian relative left this message on your answering machine:

سلام. علیزاده هستم. از لندن تلفن می کنم. هتلی که گرفته ایم خوبه اما خیلی گرونه. لذا، دنبال یک آپارتمان می گردیم که سه تا اتاق خواب و آشپزخونهی بزرگ داشته باشه. می تونی برامون پیدا کنی؟ خیلی ممنون می شم. یک ماه تو لندن می مونیم. اجاره اش از ماهی ۱۰۰۰ پوند بیشتر نشه. ترجیحاً مرکز لندن باشه، یا حد اقل جایی که به ایستگاه مترو و مرکز خرید و سینما و این جور چیزها نزدیک باشه. می دونی که سرگرمی خانمم خریده و سرگرمی بچهها هم سینما. خیلی از لطفت ممنونم. به امید دیدار. فعلاً خدا حافظ.

salām. alizāde hastam. az landan telefon mikonam. hoteli ke gereft(e)im xube ammā xeili gerune. lezā, donbāl-e yek āpārtemān migardim ke se tā otāq-e xāb va āŝpazxune-ye bozorg dāŝte bāŝe. mituni barāmun peidā koni? xeili mamnun miŝam. yek māh tu landan mimunim. ejāraŝ az māhi hezār pond biŝtar naŝe. tarjihan markaz-e landan bāŝe, yā hadd-e aqal jāyi ke be istgāh-e metro o markaz-e xarid o sinemā o in jur cizhā nazdik bāŝe. miduni ke sargarmi-e xānomam xaride o sargarmi-e baccehā ham sinemā. xeili az lotfet mamnunam. be omid-e didār, fe`lan xodā hāfez.

- 1 Where is he calling from?
- 2 What is he looking for and why?
- 3 What's he asking you to do?

- 4 What specifications does he give?
- 5 What preference does he express and why?

Unit Twelve

گردش

gardeŝ

Going out

In this unit we will look at how to:



- talk about the weather
- talk about likes and dislikes
- talk about your favourite food, actors, singers talk about things you
- will do if certain conditions are met talk about hobbies



Si o Se Pol, Esfahan. Photograph by Ezzat Rafiee.



⚠ If the weather gets better ... (Audio2; 33)

It's Friday morning – weekend in Iran. A man (M) and his wife (W) are talking about what to do.

۷: پیشبینی هوارو شنیدی؟۱۸: آره، دو سه درجه سردتر میشه. چطور مگه؟

اگه هوا بهتر بشه، میریم بیرون.

w. pis-bini-e nava-io seniqi?

M: āre, do se daraje sardtar miŝe. ceto(u)r mage?

W: bārun (h)am miād?

M: na, sob(h) havā abrie, ammā ba(`)d-az-zo(h)r momkene āftābi beŝe. xob, bā in hesāb, emruz ce-kār mikonim?

W: age havā behtar beŝe, mirim birun.

M: age nase ci?

W: un-vaqt tu xune mimunim o televizion tamāŝā mikonim.

W: Did you hear the weather forecast?

M: Yeah, it'll become two (or) three degrees colder. What about it?

W: Is it going to rain, too?

M: No, it's cloudy in the morning, but it may become sunny in the afternoon. So, given the situation, what are we doing today?

W: If the weather gets better, we'll go out.

M: What if it doesn't?

W: Then, we'll stay at home and watch TV.

Vocabulary piŝ-bini forecast havā weather did you hear ŝenidi senidan (senav) to hear āre yeah daraje degree cold sard miŝe it becomes شدن (شــ) ŝodan (ŝ) to become cetour mage? What about it? Why do you ask? (lit But how?) بارون bārun miād it comes or will come abr cloud cloudy ابرى بعداز ظهر ba'd-az-zohr afternoon momkene may; it is possible أفتابي āftābi sunny beŝe (it may) become; (if it) becomes so; well با این حساب bā in hesāb given the situation (lit with this account) today چەكار ce-kār what activity better behtar we'll go birun out (if) it doesn't become then (lit that time) un-vaqt mimunim we'll stay mundan (mun) to stay



Language and culture notes

Conditionals: type 1

How to say: 'If the weather gets better, we'll go out.'

Verbs needed:

1: **(ŝ**)

2: **(r)**

The verb in the 'if' clause/sentence (verb 1) takes a subjunctive form, i.e. a - be- prefix (see U7D1). The verb in the 'result' clause (verb 2) takes a future simple form (see U6D1).

age havā behtar beŝe, mirim birun.

If the weather gets better, we'll go out.

With some compound verbs, the → **be-** prefix is often dropped: (کنه کودن (کنه) **telefon kardan (kon)** to telephone اگه تلفن کنی، می آد. age telefon koni, miād.

If you phone (him), he'll come.

age bar gardi, xoŝ-hāl miŝam.

If you return, I'll become (or : I'll be) happy.

Also note these negative forms:

age havā behtar naŝe, tu xune mimunim.

If the weather doesn't get better, we'll stay at home.

age havā behtar naŝe, nemirim birun.

If the weather doesn't get better, we won't go out.

age telefon nakoni, nemiād.

If you don't phone (him), he won't come.

age bar nagardi, nārāhat miŝam.

If you don't return, I'll become (or: I'll be) upset.

Exercise 1

Supply the correct form of the verb given after each sentence. (For help with the verb umadan 'to come', see U5D2 and U7D1.)

1 age _____, xoŝ-hāl miŝam. xordan (xor) 'to eat'

I'll be happy if you eat.

Example: اگه بخورید، خوشحال میشم. age bexorid (*col* boxorid) xoŝ-hāl miŝam.

2 **age**_____, **xoŝ-hāl miŝam. mundan (mun)** 'to stay' I'll be happy if you stay.

3 **age**_____, **xoŝ-hāl miŝim. umadan (ā)** 'to come' We'll be happy if you come.

4 age baccehātun-o ham _____, xoŝ-hāl miŝim. āvordan (ār) 'to bring'

We'll be happy if you bring your children, too.

5 **age da'vat-e mā-ro** _____, **xoŝ-hāl miŝim. qabul kardan (kon)** 'to accept'

We'll be happy if you accept our invitation.

6 **age be irān** _____, **xānevād(e)aŝ xoŝ-hāl miŝand. bar gaŝtan (gard)** 'to return'

His family will be happy if he returns to Iran.

Exercise 2

Change each sentence in Exercise 1 above as shown in this example: میشم.

1 age naxorid, nārāhat miŝam. I'll be upset if you don't eat.

Note: When the verb in the 'result' clause is a request, order or advice, the verb in the 'if' clause is normally in the past simple tense (see U4D1): اگه احمدو دیدی، بهش سلام برسون.

age ahmad-o didi, beheŝ salām beresun.

If you see (lit saw) Ahmad, say hello to him.

be ... salām resundan (resun)

to say (lit to convey) hello to ...

age cizi lāzem dāŝtid, be man telefon konid.

If you need (*lit* needed) something, phone me.

age postci umad, lotfan man-o bidār kon.

If the postman comes (*lit* came), please wake me up.

Here is a subtle difference: Compare these two forms (focus on the <u>underlined</u> (hai)s): اگه هوا بهتر بشه، میریم بیرون

age havā behtar beŝe, mirim birun.

If the weather gets better, we'll go out.

age havā behtar <u>ŝod</u>, mirim birun.

If the weather should get (*lit* got) better, we'd (*lit* we'll) go out. (or: Should the weather get better, we'll go out.) Use of the <u>past tense</u> in the 'if' clause makes (b) less likely than (a). In (b) the speaker believes that the weather is (a)s likely to get better! More examples of this kind: اگه میلیونر بشم، یک بستنی برات می خرم!

age milyuner besam, yek bastani barāt mixaram!

If I become a millionaire, I'll buy you an ice cream!

age milyuner ŝodam, yek māŝin barāt mixaram!

If I should become a millionaire, I'd (lit I'll) buy you a car!

age bebinameŝ, beheŝ migam.

If I see him, I'll tell him (about it).

age didameŝ, beheŝ migam.

If I should see him, I'd (lit I'll) tell him (about it).

Exercise 3

Fill in the blanks with the correct form of a verb from the box. Follow the example.

اومدن (آ)	umadan (ā)	to come
تلفِن کردن (کنـ)	telefon kardan (kon)	to phone
زنگ زدن (زنـ)	zang zadan (zan)	to ring
لازم داشتن (دار)	lāzem dāŝtan (dār)	to need
شدن (شــ)	ŝodan (ŝ)	to become, to get

				4			
.5	تلفن		4.	اماذا	,	اگه	_ '
, ,	س	بيون	~	مص	•—		

1 age _____, lotfan be man telefon kon.

If he comes, please phone me.

اگه اومد، لطفاً به من تلفن کن. Example:

age umad, lotfan be man telefon kon.

٢- اگه _____، لطفأ بهش سلام برسون.

2 age , lotfan beheŝ salām beresun.

If he phones, please say hello to him.

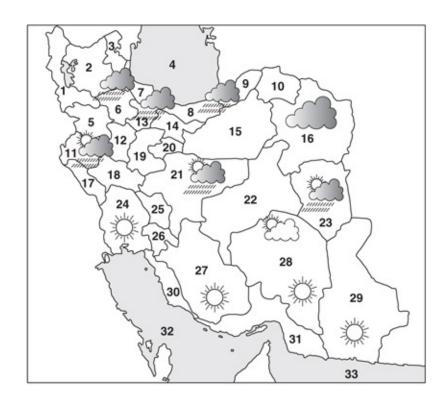
٣- اگه پول ____، از پدرم بگیر.

3 age pul _____, az pedaram begir.

If you need money, get (some) from my father.

۴- اگه تلفن _____، لطفأ جواب نده.

4	age telefon, lotfan javāb nade.
т	
	If the phone rings, please don't answer (it).
	۵– اگه، پیغامتو بهش میدم.
5	age, peiqāmet-o beheŝ midam.
	If he phones, I'll give him your message.
	۶- اگه، پیغامتو بهش می دم.
6	age, peiqāmet-o beheŝ midam.
	If he should phone, I'd (lit I'll) give him your message.
	٧- اگه بارون، نمىريم بيرون.
7	age bārun, nemirim birun.
	If it rains, we won't go out.
	٨- اگه بارون، نمىريم بيرون.
8	age bārun, nemirim birun.
	If it should rain, we wouldn't (lit won't) go out.
	۹ – اگه پولدار، یک رولزرویس میخرم و این ماشینقراضهرو میدم به تو!
9	age pul-dār, yek rolz-rois mixaram va in māŝin-qorāza-ro midam be to!
	If I should get rich, I'd (lit I'll) buy a Rolls-Royce and give this old banger to you!



1	اروميه	orumiye	13	قزوين	qazvin	26	ياسوج	yāsuj
2	تبريز	tabriz	14	تهران	tehrān	27	شيراز	ŝirāz
3	اردبيل	ardabil	15	سمنان	semnān	28	كرمان	kermān
4	دریای خزر	daryā-ye xazar	16	مشهد	maŝhad	29	زاهدان	zāhedān
		Caspian Sea	17	ايلام	ilām	30	بوشهر	buŝehr
5	سنندج	sanandaj	18	خرمآباد	xorram-ābād	31	بندر عبّاس	bandar-e
6	زنجان	zanjān	19	اراک	arāk			abbās
7	رشت	raŝt	20	قم	qom	32	خليج فارس	xalij-e fārs
8	سارى	sāri	21	اصفهان	esfahān			Persian Gulf
9	گرگان	gorgān	22	يزد	yazd	33	دریای عمان	daryā-ye omān
10	بجنورد	bojnurd	23	بيرجند	birjand			Oman Sea
11	كرمانشاه	kermānŝāh	24	اهواز	ahvāz			
12	همدان	hamadān	25	شهر کرد	ŝahr-e kord			

More 'weather' expressions

havā weather مواى تهران چطوره؟ emruz havā-ye tehrān cetoure?

How's the weather in Tehran today?

emruz havā garme. امروز هوا گرمه.

Today the weather is warm. (Or: It's warm today.)

خنک xonak cool; سرد sard cold; الله مه لود tufāni stormy; مه لود meh-قالط foggy; يخبندان yaxbandān frosty موای تهران خشکه. waxbandān frosty يخبندان

Tehran's weather is dry.

havā-ye landan martube. هوای لندن مرطوبه.

London's weather is humid.

āb-o-havā climate آبوهوای ایران متنوّعه. āb-o-havā-ye irān motanavve`e.

Iran's climate is varied.

āb-o-havā-ye engelestān motaqayyere.

England's climate is variable/changeable.

ملایم molāyem mild; معتدل mo`tadel temperate ملایم bārun/barf/tagarg miād.

It's raining/snowing/hailing. (lit Rain/snow/hail is coming.) هُوَ اللهُ مَي آد. bād

It's windy. (lit Wind is coming.)

ra'd o barq miād.

(lit Thunder and lightning are coming.)

emruz havā cand darajast?

What's the temperature today?

bist o do daraje-ye sāntigerād 22 degrees centigrade

panj daraje zir-e sefr 5 degrees below zero مادرجه زير صفر

emruz, havā barāye ŝenā monāseb nist.

Today, the weather is not suitable for swimming.

Exercise 4

Can you say these in Persian?

- If the weather gets better, we'll go to the park.
- If you invite them, they'll come. 2
- If you don't invite them, they'll be upset. 3
- If you get your driving licence, I'll buy you a present. 4
- If you tell him (about it), I'll be upset. 5
- If you don't take the medicine, you won't get well. 6
- What's the weather like in Tehran today? 7
- 8 It's snowing. It's 7 degrees below zero.





What are your hobbies? (Audio2; 34)

An Iranian (A) is about to visit his British Internet friend (B) in London. The British friend is ringing to find out what the Iranian's likes and dislikes are so he'll be able to entertain him better. The Iranian, too, asks questions to help him to decide what souvenirs to bring from Iran. Here's part of their conversation.

- سرگرميهاتون چيه؟
- خوندن کتاب، تماشای تلویزیون و، اگه هوا خوب باشه، قدم زدن تو يارک. سرگرمي هاي شما چيه؟
- B: گوش دادن به موسیقی، رفتن به موزه و، اگه وقت داشته باشم، آشیزی! غذای ایرانی مورد علاقهتون چیه؟
 - A: چلوکباب. خوراکیهای ایرانی مورد علاقه ی شما چیه؟
 - B: تو غذاها، فسنجون؛ تو شيرينيها، سوهان و گز.

- sargarmihātun cie? B:
- xundan-e ketāb, tamāŝā-ye televizion va, age havā xub bāŝe, qadam zadan A: tu pārk. sargarmihā-ye ŝomā cie?
- guŝ dādan be musiqi, raftan be muze va, age vaqt dāŝte bāŝam, āŝpazi! B: gazā-ye irāni-e moured-e alāgatun cie?
- celo(u)-kabāb. xorākihā-ye irāni-e moured-e alāge-ye ŝomā cie? A:
- tu qazāhā, fesenjun; tu ŝir(i)nihā, suhān o gaz. B:
- What are your hobbies? B:
- Reading books, watching TV and, if the weather is good, walking in the A: park. What are your hobbies?
- Listening to music, going to museums and, if I have (the) time, cooking! B: What's your favourite Iranian dish?
- Chelo-kabab. What are your favourite Iranian foods? A:
- Among the dishes, fesenjun; among the sweets, suhan and gaz. B:

Vocabulary xundan (xun) خوندن (خونــ) reading; to read كتاب ketāb book

watching

qadam zadan (zan) walking; to walk guŝ dādan (d) listening; to listen

musiqi موسيقي music (ر) raftan (r) going; to go muze موزه museum

```
time
  āŝpazi آشپزی
                              cooking
moured-e alāqe مورد علاقه
                              favourite
     غذا qazā
                              food (dish)
  xorāki خوراكي
                              food (general)
 fesenjun فسنجون
                              a meat sauce (see menu in U9D1)
   ŝir(i)nihā شيرينے
                              sweets, pastries
  suhān سوهان
                              a sweet
     gaz گز
                              a sweet
```



Language and culture notes

Contrastive stress (Audio2; 35)

Listen to the examples.

When B asks a A question about a's hobbies, A uses the possessive ending قون **etun** (**-tun** after a vowel) 'your' in his question:

```
sargarmihātun cie?
```

What are your hobbies?

When A reciprocates by asking a similar question, he says:

سرگرمیهای ش<u>ما</u> چیه؟ sargarmihā-ye ŝomā cie?

What are

your

hobbies?

Thus stressing منا **somā** 'you'. This is because the possessive ending -etun 'your' is not normally stressed and therefore cannot carry the contrastive stress needed for the 'echo' question, while the independent pronoun شما **ŝomā** 'you' can be stressed contrastively.

Note: As with most Persian words, the stress falls on the last syllable of ŝo<u>mā</u>.

More examples:

māŝinetun kojāst? Where's your car?

تو گاراژه. ماشین شما کجاست؟

tu gārāĝe. māŝin-e ŝomā kojāst?

It's in the garage. Where's your car?

A short cut for the 'echo' question would be:

māl-e ŝomā kojāst?

Where's yours? (See 'Possessive pronouns' in U2D2.)

māŝinetun ce range? ماشينتون چه رنگه؟

What colour is your car?

abi. māl-e ŝomā ce range? آبي. مال شما چه رنگه؟

Blue. What colour is **yours**?

Exercise 5

Fill in the blanks for the 'echo' questions. Follow the example.

1 A: أپارتمانتون كجاست؟ **āpārtemānetun kojāst?**

Where's your apartment?

B: **junub-e landan.** (In the) south of London.

!_____? Where's your apartment?

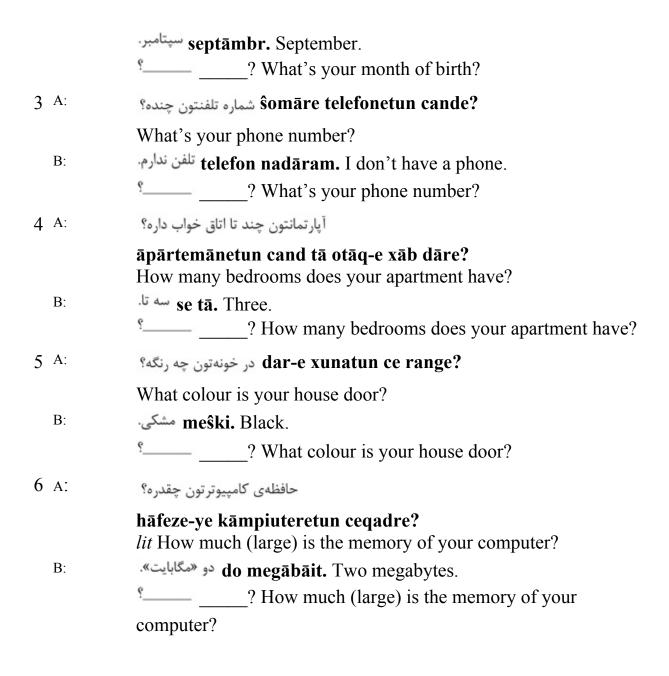
Example: آپارتمان شما کجاست؟ āpārtemāne ŝomā kojāst?

Where's your apartment?

2 A: ماه تولّدتون چيه؟ māh-e tavallodetun cie?

What's your month of birth?

B:





Rewrite B's 'echo' questions in the previous exercise using a short cut. Follow the example.

```
Example: B: مال شما كجاست؟ māl-e ŝomā kojāst?

Where's yours?
```

Conditionals: type 1

With verbs 'to be' and 'to have'

For these two verbs we use their special stems باشه bās and داشته باشه dāste bās respectively (similar to the subjunctive forms introduced in U7D1).

age havā xub bāŝe, mirim birun.

If the weather is good, we'll go out.

age pesar-e xubi bāŝi, yek kāmpiutere tāze barāt mixaram.

If you are a good boy, I'll buy you a new computer.

age vaqt dāste bāsam, in film-o mibinam.

If I have (the) time, I'll see this film.

```
اگه صبر داشته باشید، همهچیز درست میشه!
```

age sabr dāŝte bāŝid, hame-ciz dorost miŝe!

If you have patience, everything will be (lit become) all right.

Likes and dislikes

How to say: 'I like soup.'

On the above expression, note that:

- (a) the word خوش xos 'pleased' is attached to possessive/object endings (see
- (b) U2D2 and U8D1); the verb used throughout is مى **miād** (lit 'it comes') from اومدن **umadan** 'to come' (see U5D2).

To say 'I liked ...', we use the past tense lead, e.g.

```
az sup xoŝam umad. I liked the soup. از سوپ خوشم اومد؟
az sup xoŝetun umad?
Did you like the soup?
```

Note the negative forms:

```
از سوپ خوشم نمیآد.
I don't like soup.
از سوپ خوشم نیومد.
az sup xoŝam nayumad.
I didn't like the soup.
```

To say 'I dislike soup', replace خوش **xoŝ** with به **bad:** از سوپ بدم میآد. I dislike/hate soup.

az sup badam nemiād. I don't mind soup.

az sup badam umad. از سوپ بدم اومد. az sup badam umad. I disliked/hated the soup.

az sup badam nayumad. I didn't mind the soup.

The verb (دوست داشتن (دار) **dust dāŝtan (dār)** 'to like' is also used to express likes and dislikes (often) of a more permanent nature. Thus, for 'I like soup', we may say either of these: از سوپ خوشم می آد. = سوپ دوست دارم.

sup dust dāram. = az sup xoŝam miād.

However, for 'I liked the soup' (i.e. referring to a specific occasion), we say:

ماز سوپ خوشم اومد.

az sup xoŝam umad.

Rather than:

. سوپ را دوست داشتم. sup rā dust dāŝtam.



Complete these sentences, and then make them negative. Follow the example.

من از فیلمهای پلیسی _____.

man az filmhā-ye polisi .

I like detective films.

Example:

من از فیلمهای پلیسی خوشم میآد.

man az filmhā-ye polisi xoŝam miād.

I like detective films.

من از فیلمهای پلیسی خوشم نمی آد.

	man az filmhā-ye polisi xoŝam nemiād.
	I don't like detective films.
2	ــــــ to az filmhā-ye polisi
	You like detective films.
3	u az filmhā-ye polisi
	He/she likes detective films.
4	ــــــ mā az filmhā-ye polisi
	We like detective films.
5	شما از فیلمهای پلیسی
	ŝomā az filmhā-ye polisi
	You like detective films.
6	اونها از فیلمهای پلیسی
	unhā az filmhā-ye polisi
	They like detective films.
<u>E</u> 2	<u>xercise 8</u>
	mplete these sentences, and then make them negative. Follow the example.
1	من از فیلم man az film I liked the film.
	Example: من از فیلم خوشم اومد. man az film xoŝam umad.
	I liked the film.
	من از فیلم خوشم نیومد.
	man az film xoŝam nayumad.
	didn't like the film.
2	.—— تو از فیلم to az film . You liked the film.

- 3 u az film ____. He/she liked the film.
- 4 ····· ما از فیلم mā az film ____. We liked the film.
- 6 -____. They liked the film اونها از فیلم ____. They liked the film.

How to say: 'What do you like about ...?'

از چه چیز ... خوشتون میآد؟ az ce ciz-e . . . xoŝetun miād? What do you like about . . . ?

(خوشتون میآد؟ az ce ciz-e irān xoŝetun miād? What do you like about Iran?

More colloquial would be:

? از چی ایران خوشتون میآد az ci-e irān xoŝetun miād? What do you like about Iran?

از همهچیز ایران خوشم میآد!

az hame-ciz-e irān xoŝam miād!

I like everything about Iran!

آها، یادم اومد: از رانندگی تو ایران خوشم نمیآد!

āhā yādam umad: az rānandegi tu irān xoŝam nemiād.

Aha, I remember: I don't like driving in Iran!



Can you say these in Persian?

- 1 Do you like Iranian food/films? Yes, very much.
- 2 Did you like the film/meal? Not much.
- 3 What do you like about Iran?

- Everything: its food; its scenery; its culture; its people; its traffic! 4
- What are your hobbies? 5
- 6 Photography, painting, listening to music, sports. What are *your* hobbies?
- What's your favourite subject? 7
- Fine arts. What's yours? 8
- Who's your favourite actor/singer? 9
- If you're a good girl, I'll take you to the cinema. 10
- If I have money, I'll go to Iran this summer. 11

Comprehension (Audio2; 36)

Peter has just found this recorded message on his answering machine. It is from an Iranian friend who lives in Manchester.

> سلام. فقط مي خواستم يگم كه هفتهي آينده، اگه هوا خوب باشه، براي گردش به لندن می آیم. می دونی که سرگرمی عمده ی من و خانمم تئاتره و از تئاترهای لندن خیلی خوشمون می آد. اگه وقت داشته باشی با ما بیای، خوش حال می شیم. با یک تیر دو نشون می زنیم: هم همدیگه رو می بینیم و هم یک نمایشنامهی خوب. به امید دیدار. علی، ۱۴ مرداد

salām. faqat mixāstam begam ke hafte-ye āyande, age havā xub bāŝe, barāye gardeŝ be landan miāim. miduni ke sargarmi-e omde-ye man o xānomam te`ātre va az te`ātrhā-ye landan xeili xoŝemun miād. age vagt dāŝte bāŝi bā mā biāi, xoŝhāl miŝim. bā yek tir do neŝun mizanim: ham hamdiga-ro mibinim va ham yek namāyeŝnāme-ye xub. be omid-e didār.

ali, 14 mordād

- Where does Peter live? Provide evidence. 1
- 2 What's Ali's hobby?
- 3 What's Ali's plan for next week and what does it depend on?
- What offer is Ali making and on what condition? 4

What two birds are they going to kill and with what stone?

5

Unit Thirteen

خريد

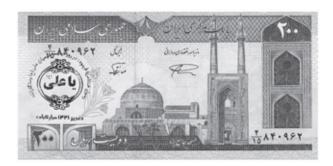
xarid

Shopping

In this unit we will look at how to:



- buy things in an Iranian shop
- go through the rituals of haggling
- engage in the polite ritual of ta`ārof
- talk about clothes, colours, fruits and vegetables talk about things you would do if ...
- talk about things you would have done if ...







Dialogue 1



Haggling (Audio2; 37)

Haggling is common in small shops in Iran. Shahin (s) is in a clothes shop talking to the assistant (A).

```
s: أقا، اين ژاكت چنده؟
```

- A: چقدر دارید؟
- s: ۱۸۰۰۰ تومن.
- A: عیب نداره؛ خدا برکت بده. مبارک باشه.
 - s: متشكّم

- s: āqā, in ĝāket cande?
- A: age cune nazanid, bist hezār toman. age bexāid cune bezanid, si hezār

toman.

- s: kamtar az bist hezār toman nemiŝe?
- A: arz kardam maqtu(`) bist hezār toman.
- s: ĝāketeŝ xube; bist hezār toman miarze. age pul-e kāfi dāŝtam, mixaridam.
- A: ceqad(r) dārid?
- s: hiĝdah hezār toman.
- A: eib nadāre; xodā bar(a)kat bede. mobārak bāŝe.
- s: mot(a)ŝakkeram.
- s: Sir, how much is this cardigan?
- A: If you don't haggle, 20,000 tumans. If you want to haggle, 30,000 tumans.
- s: Would it not be possible to go below 20,000 tumans?
- A: As I humbly said (it's) 20,000 tumans fixed.
- S: The cardigan's good; it is worth 20,000 tumans. If I had enough money (with me), I'd buy (it).
- A: How much have you got?
- s: 18,000 tumans.
- A: Doesn't matter; (may) God give (His) blessing. Congratulations!
- s: *Thanks*.



may it be

blessed)

Language and culture notes ©

bāŝe باشه

mobārak bāŝe میارک باشه



Congratulations (lit may it be

Note how the possessive ending ش -es 'its' is used after وُاكت وُعَلَمُ وَعَلَمُ وَعَلَمُ وَعَلَمُ وَعَلَمُ وَعَلَمُ وَعَلَمُ وَاكْتُمُ وَعَلَمُ وَاكْتُمُ وَعَلَمُ وَاكْتُمُ وَعَلَمُ وَاكْتُمُ وَاكْتُمُ وَاكْتُمُ وَعَلَمُ اللَّهُ وَاكْتُمُ وَاكْتُمُ وَاكْتُمُ وَاكْتُمُ وَاكْتُمُ وَالْكُمُ وَمُعْمِلُونَا وَالْكُمُ وَاللَّهُ وَاللَّالِي وَاللَّهُ وَلَا لَا لَاللَّهُ وَاللَّهُ وَاللَّاللَّهُ وَاللَّهُ وَاللَّهُ وَاللَّهُ وَاللَّهُ وَاللَّهُ وَاللّهُ وَاللَّهُ وَاللَّالِمُ وَاللَّهُ وَلَّهُ وَاللَّهُ وَلَّهُ وَاللَّهُ وَاللَّهُ وَاللَّهُ وَاللَّهُ وَاللَّهُ وَاللّ

Conditionals: type 2

How to say: 'If I knew Persian well, I would understand what he says.'

Let us simplify the sentence and split it into two parts:

(b) If I knew I would understand

The verbs we need are:

Verb دونستن **dunestan** to know 1:

Past stem: دونست dunest

Verb فهمیدن **fahmidan** to understand

2:

Past stem: فهمية **fahmid**

For both verbs, we use the past stem prefixed with "mi- with the appropriate personal ending(s) added on:

- (a) اگه میدونستم age midunestam If I knew
- (b) مىفهمىدم **mifahmidam** I would understand
- (a + b) مىدونستم، مىفهمىدم **age midunestam, mifahmidam** If I knew, I would understand

Now the full sentence:

age fārsi xub midunestam, mifahmidam ci mige.

If I knew Persian well, I would understand what he says.

Note: In such conditional sentences, the verbs فاشتن **budan** 'to be' and المعادد budan 'to be' and المعادد dāŝtan 'to have' do not normally take a mi- prefix: اگه فارسیم خوب بود، میفهمیدم چی میگه.

age fārsim xub bud, mifahmidam ci mige.

If my Persian was good, I would understand what he says.

age bacce dāŝti, mifahmidi ci migam!

If you had children, you would understand what I'm saying!

اگه من جای شما بودم، میرفتم.

age man jā-ye ŝomā budam, miraftam.

If I were you (*lit* in your place), I would go.

اگه بچهام اینجا بود، نگرانی نداشتم.

age bacc(e)am injā bud, negarāni nadāŝtam.

If my child was here, I wouldn't have (any) worries.

اگه دخترم اینجا بود، بهتر بود.

age doxtaram injā bud, behtar bud.

If my daughter was here, it would be better.

اگه یک برادر داشتم، دیگه غمی نداشتم!

age yek barādar dāstam, dige qami nadāstam!

If I had a brother, I wouldn't have any other anxiety (lit woe)!

اگه پول داشتم، ماشین میخریدم.

age pul dāstam, māsin mixaridam.

If I had money, I would buy a car.

Now a sentence from the above dialogue:

age pul-e kāfi dāstam, mixaridam.

If I had enough money, I would buy (it).



There are 10 incomplete sentences in this exercise with two blanks in each sentence. With the help of the English translations, fill in each blank with the *correct form* of a verb from the box below. Follow the example.

	بودن دادن داشتن گفتن نوشتن تونستن دونستن فهمیدن کردن سفر کردن صحبت کردن	budan dādan dāŝtan goftan neveŝtan tunestan dunestan fahmidan kardan safar kardan		
	صحبت کردن	sohbat kardan	to speak	
			اگه اسمشو، بهتون	-1
1	age esmeŝ-o, behetun _	•		
	If I knew his name, I would t	tell you.		
	ىدونستم، بەتون مىگفتم. Example:	•		
	Example.	, y		
	age esmeŝ-o midi	unestam, beh	etun migoftam.	
	If I knew his name	e, I would tell	you.	
		نارسی	اگه فارسی خوب، با مادرشوهرم ف	-٢
2	age fārsi xub, bā māda	r-ŝouharam 1	fārsi	
	If I knew Persian well, I wou	ıld speak Pers	ian with my mother-in-law	
	11 1 1110 11 1 0 1 0 1 0 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	•	اگه فارسی بنویسم، برای خانواده: نامه	-٣
3	age fārsi benevisam, ba	arāye xānevā	de-ye xanomam nāme	
	If I was able to write (in) Per	rsian, I would	write a letter to my wife's fam	ily.
			اگه تو جای من، چهکار	-
4	age to jā-ye man, ce-kā	ir?		
	If you were in my place, wha	at would vou o	do?	
	11 you word in my place, which	•	اگه من جای تو، اون کارو	-۵
5	age man jā-ye to , un kā	ir-o .		

	If I was/were in your place, I wouldn't do that (act).		
	اگه میلیونر، دور دنیا	-8	
6	age milyuner, dour-e donyā		
	If I was a millionaire, I would travel around the world.		
	اگه خوندنم خوب،این تابلو چی می گه.	-7	
7	age xundanam xub, in tāblou ci mige.		
	If my reading was good, I would understand what this sign says.		
	اگه پدرم اینجا، بهتر	$-\lambda$	
8	age pedaram injā, behtar		
	If my father was here, it would be better.		
	اگه آدرسشو، بهتون	-9	
9	age ādreses-o, behetun		
	If I had his address, I would give it to you.		
	اگه زن / شوهر چی میگم!	-1.	
10	age zan/ŝouhar, ci migam!		
	If you had a wife/husband, you would understand what I'm saying!		
Ω	Clothes (Audio2; 38)		

lebās clothes kolāh hat rusari headscarf ŝāl-e gardan scarf kāpŝan bomber jacket kot jacket jeliqe waistcoat, vest pirāhan co/ pirhan shirt; dress kerāvāt necktie boluz blouse underwear zirpuŝ زيرپوش T-shirt tiŝert pullover poliver ĝāket cardigan pāltou overcoat māntou robe (worn by women in public in Iran) bārāni co/ bāruni raincoat ŝalvār trousers ŝalvār-e jin jeans kot-o-ŝalvār suit (lit jacket and trousers) dastkeŝ gloves kamarband belt dāman skirt cakme boots kafŝ shoe(s) jurāb sock(s) yek joft jurāb a pair of socks



Can you say these in Persian?

- 1 How much is this hat/headscarf/shirt/raincoat/suit/skirt?
- 2 How much are these trousers/gloves/shoes/socks?
- 3 You have a nice scarf/jacket/necktie/overcoat.

- 4 Is this car worth 50,000,000 tumans?
- 5 It is worth (the price), but it's expensive for me.
- 6 What would you do if you were in my place?
- 7 What would you do if you were a millionaire?
- 8 I'd build a hospital for sick children.
- 9 If I had a lot of money, I'd travel around the world.
- 10 If my mother was here, she would become angry.
- 11 If I could speak Persian well, I would tell him how much I like his country.



Emam Square, Esfahan. Photograph by Ezzat Rafiee.

Dialogue 2



∏In a corner shop (Audio2; 39)

A customer (C) is shopping at her local grocery. The shopkeeper is Ali (A).

```
c: على أقا، ببخشيد، اين خيارها كيلويي چنده؟
```

- c: aliāqā, bebaxŝid, in xiār(h)ā ki<u>lu</u>yi cande?
- A: qalami(h)ā, ki<u>lu</u>yi hastsad toman; topoli(h)ā, ki<u>lu</u>yi punsad toman.
- c: toxm-e morq(h)ā-ro duneyi mif(o)ruŝid yā kiluyi?
- A: duneyi devist toman.
- c: yek kilu xiār-e qalami o dah tā toxm-e morq lotf konid.
- A: befarmāyid.
- c: mot(a)ŝakkeram. cand ŝod?
- A: befarmāyid, qābeli nadāre.
- c: xāheŝ mikonam, cand ŝod?
- A: ruye-ham, do hezār o haŝtsad toman.
- c: bebaxŝid, faqat eskenās-e sad-tomani dāram. eŝkāli nadāre?
- A: eib nadāre.
- C: befarmāyid. dar zemn, in panir-o diruz azatun xaridam. fāsed be nazar miād. age mixordim, mariz miŝodim!

- A: jeddan ma`zerat mixām. befarmāyid, in panir taz(e)ast.
- c: xeili mamnun. xodā hāfez.
- C: Excuse me Mr Ali, how much are these cucumbers per kilo?
- A: The slim ones, 800 tumans per kilo; the plump ones, 500 tumans per kilo.
- c: Do you sell the eggs by number or by weight (lit by kilo)?
- A: 200 tumans each.
- C: Please give (me) one kilo of slim cucumbers and ten eggs.
- A: Here you are.
- C: Thanks. How much did it come to?
- A: Be my guest, it's not worth a mention.
- C: *I insist, how much did it come to?*
- A: 2,800 tumans in total.
- C: Sorry, I only have 100-tuman notes. Is that OK?
- A: No problem.
- C: Here you are. In the meantime, I bought this cheese from you yesterday. It seems bad/off/mouldy. If we had eaten (it), we would have become ill!
- A: I do apologise. Here you are, this cheese is fresh.
- C: Thanks very much. Goodbye.



CB Vocabulary

āqā آقا an honorific title used before or after a male name

xiār cucumber ki<u>lu</u> kilo كيلو ki<u>lu</u>yi كيلويي per kilo qalami slim قلمىها qalamihā slim ones تپلی topoli plump topolihā plump ones تپلیها

toxm-e morq تخم مرغ egg du<u>ne</u> دونه number duneyi دونهای by number mif(o)ruŝid مىفروشىد you sell (فروشه) foruxtan (forus) to sell

> kiluyi کیلویی by kilo/weight

duneyi دونهای each lotf konid لطف كنيد kindly give (کنے) lotf kardan (kon) kindly to give

qābeli nadāre it's not worthy (of you); قابلي نداره

don't mention it

xāheŝ mikonam خواهش می کنم I request/insist

ruye-ham in total روىهم eskenās اسكناس banknote ۱۰۰ sad toman 100 tumans

sad-tomani تومني 100-tuman note eŝkāl اشكال problem, difficulty eib nadāre عيب نداره no problem (lit it doesn't have a defect) dar zemn در ضمن in the meantime panir پئیر cheese diruz ديروز yesterday azatun ازتون from you xaridam خریدم I bought (خر) xaridan (xar) to buy fāsed فاسد bad, off, rotten, mouldy (أ) به نظر اومدن (be nazar umadan (ā) to seem (lit to come to view) mariz مريض jeddan جدأ seriously, really ma`zerat xāstan (xā) معذرت خواستن (خوا) to apologise fresh

Language and culture notes ©



Conditionals: type 3

How to say: 'If we had eaten (it), we would have become ill.'

Verbs needed:

1 خوردن xordan to eat Past stem: خوردن xord 2 شدن sodan to become Past stem: مثدن sod

The same form is often used for conditionals types 2 and 3. Thus, for both verbs, we use the past stem prefixed with **mi-**, with the appropriate personal ending(s) added on:

age mixordam, mariz miŝodam.

If I had eaten (it), I would have become ill.

age mixordi, mariz miŝodi.

If you had eaten (it), you would have become ill.

age mixord, mariz miŝod.*

If s/he had eaten (it), s/he would have become ill.

age mixordim, mariz miŝodim.

If we had eaten (it), we would have become ill.

age mixordid, mariz miŝodid.

If you had eaten (it), you would have become ill.

age mixordand, mariz miŝodand.

If they had eaten (it), they would have become ill.

* No personal ending is used for third-person singular (s/he, it).

To make either verb negative, we add the prefix - ne-: "ne-: اگه نمیخوردم، مریض نمی شدم.

age nemixordam, mariz nemiŝodam.

If I had not eaten (it), I would not have become ill.

In conditional sentences type 3, the verb in the 'if' clause may also be expressed in the past perfect (see U10D2): اگه خورده بودیم، مریض می شدیم.

age xorde budim, mariz miŝodim.

If we had eaten (it), we would have become ill.

And the negative forms:

age naxorde budim, mariz nemiŝodim.

If we had not eaten (it), we would not have become ill.

Note: As demonstrated in the above example, the negative prefix is pronounced **ne**- before **mi**- and **na**- elsewhere.

Based on the above explanations, both forms (a) and (b) in the examples below are acceptable: If the car hadn't broken down, he would have come.

اگه ماشین خراب نمی شد، می اومد. (a)

age māŝin xarāb nemiŝod, miumad.

اگه ماشین خراب نشده بود، می اومد. (b)

age māŝin xarāb naŝode bud, miumad.

- 2 If you had not married me, I would have become upset!
 - (a) اگه با من ازدواج نمی کردی، ناراحت می شدم!

age bā man ezdevāj nemikardi, nārāhat miŝodam!

(b) اگه با من ازدواج نکرده بودی، ناراحت میشدم!

age bā man ezdevāj nakarde budi, nārāhat miŝodam!

- 3 If I had gone (there) on foot, I would have arrived late.
 - اگه پیاده میرفتم، دیر میرسیدم. (a)

age piāde miraftam, dir miresidam.

اگه پیاده رفته بودم، دیر میرسیدم. (b)

age piāde rafte budam, dir miresidam.

- 4 If you had come earlier, we would have gone together.
 - اگه زودتر می اومدی، باهم می رفتیم. اگه

age zudtar miumadi, bā-ham miraftim.

اگه زودتر اومده بودی، باهم میرفتیم. (b)

age zudtar umade budi, bā-ham miraftim.

Exercise 3

Match a number with a letter and then translate into English. The first one has been done for you.

- اگه اون ساندویچ فاسدو میخوردی، 1 [d] age un săndevic-e făsed-o mixordi, If you had eaten that rotten sandwich, you would have اگه موضوع را به پدرم می گفتی، 2 [] age mouzu` rā be pedaram migofti, اگه دیرتر از خونه حرکت میکردیم، 3 [] age dirtar az xune harkat mikardim, اگه پنج دقیقه زودتر می اومدی، 4 age panj daqiqe zudtar miumadi, اگه با من ازدواج نمی کردی، 5 [] age bā man ezdevāj nemikardi, اگه منو دعوت کرده بودی، 6 [] age man-o da'vat karde budi,
- (a) خود کشی می کردم. xodkoŝi mikardam.
- (b) برادرمو میدیدی. **barādaram-o mididi.**
- (c) ناراحت می شدم. nārāhat miŝodam.
- (d) مريض مىشدى. mariz miŝodi.
- (e) به مهمونیت می اومدم. mehmunit miumadam.
- (f) بهموقع نمی رسیدیم. be-mouge` nemiresidim.

Intonation

Note the difference in the stress pattern of <code>kiluyi</code> 'per kilo' and <code>kiluyi</code> 'by kilo/weight'. (The underlined syllable is stressed.) The ending <code>i</code> (or <code>yi</code> after a vowel) is unstressed when it means 'per/each' and stressed when it means 'by'.

Listen to these: (Audio2;40)

kilo?

? کیلویی می فروشید kiluyi mif(o)ruŝid? Do you sell (them) by

kilo?

duneyi cand? How much (for) each? دونهای چند؟ duneyi mif(o)ruŝid? Do you sell (them) by

number?

Note the stressed ending in a different function: (Audio2; 40)



bist pond بیست یوند twenty pounds (£20 in any denominations) bist-pondi a twenty-pound (note) eskenās-e a twenty-pound note bist-pondi hezār to<u>man</u> هزار تومن 1,000 tumans (in any denominations) هزارتومني hezār-tomani a 1,000-tuman (note) a 1,000-tuman note eskenās-e hezār-tomani panjāh ri<u>āl</u> پنجاه ريال 50 rials (in any denominations) panjāh-riāli a 50-rial (coin) sekke-ye a 50-rial coin panjāh-riāli



Can you translate the following shopping list into Persian?

15 eggs 1 kilo of tomatoes

2 kilos of half a kilo of cheese

cucumbers

2 3 loaves/pieces of bread

watermelons

Exercise 5

Using the shopping list in the previous exercise, ask the shopkeeper: for the price af each item; to give you the required amount /number.

Note: In Dialogue 2, the shopkeeper is merely making a ta'ārof (seeU9D1) when he says: بفرمایید، قابلی نداره.

befarmāyid, qābeli nadāre.

Be my guest, it's not worth a mention.

He is just being polite. To this the customer correctly replies: *غواهش می کنم، چند شد؟ xāheŝ mikonam, cand ŝod?

I insist, how much did it come to?



Can you translate these sentences into English?

أقا، این پرتقالها کیلویی چنده؟

āqā, in porteqāl(h)ā kiluyi cande?

آقا، این مرغهارو کیلویی میفروشید یا دونهای؟

āqā, in morq(h)ā-ro kilu<u>yi</u> mif(o)ruŝid yā dune<u>yi</u>?

پنج کیلو برنج لطف کنید و دو تا مرغ. 3

panj kilu berenj lotf konid va do tā morq.

رویهم چند شد؟ 4

ruye-ham cand ŝod?

بفرمایید، قابلی نداره.

befarmayid, qābeli nadāre.

خواهش مي كنم. چند شد؟ 6

xāheŝ mikonam. cand ŝod?

More grocery items

ميوهها	mivehā	fruits
آلو	ālu	plum
آناناس	ānānās	pineapple
انگور	angur	grapes
پرتقال	porteqāl	orange
توتفرنگی	tut-farangi	strawberry
خربزه	xarboze	melon
زردآلو	zardālu	apricot
سيب	sib	apple
گلابی	golābi	pear
ليمو	limu	lemon
موز	mouz	banana
نارگيل	nārgil	coconut
هلو	holu	peach
هندوانه	hendevāne	watermelon
	col hendune	

سبزیجات اسفناج بادنجان	sabzijāt	vegetables
اسفناج	esfenāj	spinach
بادنجان	bādenjān	aubergine
پياز خيا.	piāz	onion
خيار	xiār	cucumber
سیب زمینی	sib-e zamini	potato
سير	sir	garlic
شلغم	ŝalqam	turnip
فلفل سبز	felfel-e sabz	green pepper
كاهو	kāhu	lettuce
كدو	kadu	courgette
كرفس	karafs	celery
كلم	kalam	cabbage
گلکلم	gol-kalam	cauliflower
حيار سيب زمينى شلغم فلفل سبز كاهو كدو كرفس كلم كلم گل كلم گوجه فرنگى	gouje-farangi	tomato
هويج	havij	carrot
متفرقه	motafarreqe	miscellaneous
شیر ماست	ŝir	milk
ماست	māst	yoghurt
پنیر کره خامه	panir	cheese
کرہ	kare	butter
خآمه	xāme	cream
گوشت	guŝt	meat
نان مربا	nān	bread
مربا	morabbā	jam
قند	qand	cube sugar
شكر	ŝekar	granulated sugar
چای	cāi	tea
قهوه	qahve namak	coffee
	namak	salt
فلفل	felfel	pepper

Colours in 'natural' context!

rang colour; روشن rou**ŝan** light; تيره **tire** dark

قsemān ābi ast. أسمان أبي است. The sky is blue. abr xākestari ast. ابر خاکستری است. Cloud is grey. esfenāj sabz ast. Spinach is green. zoqāl siāh/meŝki زغال سیاه/مشکی است. Charcoal is black. .ŝir sefid ast شیر سفید است. gouje-farangi گوجهفرنگی قرمز است. Milk is white. Tomato is red. qermez ast. meigu surati ast. میگو صورتی است. mouz zard ast. Prawn is pink. Banana is yellow. qahve qahveyi ast. Coffee is brown. nārenj nārenji ast. نارنج نارنجی است. lit A sour orange is orange (colour).

Sorry, couldn't find a 'natural' context for this one (!):

sormeyi navy blue سرمهای

Examples:

māŝinetun ce range? What colour is your car?
قابی روشن / تیره قbi-e rouŝan/tire light/dark blue



Can you say these in Persian?

- 1 OK, how much do I owe you?
- 2 Be my guest. It's not worth a mention.
- 3 I insist, how much did it come to?
- 4 Five thousand tumans in total.
- 5 A 200-tuman note.
- 6 A 10-rial coin.
- 7 Will you kindly pass/give the sugar?
- 8 What colour is your jacket? Dark brown.
- 9 I bought some tomatoes and lettuce. I forgot to buy salt!

- 10 If you had shaved your beard, I wouldn't have recognised you.
- 11 If I hadn't taken the antibiotic, I wouldn't have got better.

Comprehension (Audio2;41)

Here is an account of what happened to Masoud in his own words:

دیروز، یک پالتو برای پدرم خریدم. وقتی اونو دید، خیلی خوشحال شد، امّا حس کردم که از رنگش زیاد خوشش نیومد. برای پسدادن پالتو، از مادرم خواهش کردم که با من بیاد. مادرم اصلاً خجالتی نیست، امّا من خیلی کمرو هستم. صاحب فروشگاه پرسید: پالتو چشه؟ گفتم: هیچّیش نیست، فقط رنگش برای پدرم خیلی روشنه. فروشنده گفت: عیب نداره، پدرتونو جوون تر نشون میده. من دیگه نمیدونستم چی بگم. اگه مادرم باهام نیومده بود، من با همون پالتو برمیگشتم خونه! امّا مادرم بالافاصله گفت: پدر ایشون از این رنگ خوشش نمیآد. اگه شما جای او بودید، این پالتورو به پدرتون تحمیل میکردید؟ فروشنده جوابی نداشت و فوراً پالتورو به پدرتون تحمیل میکردید؟ فروشنده جوابی نداشت و فوراً پالتورو پسگرفت، ولی قبل از اینکه از مغازه بیایم بیرون، با لبخند به مادرم گفت: اگه شما زنم بودید، یک لیوان زهر به تون می دادم! مادرم هم با لبخند گفت: اگه شما شوهرم بودید، اون زهرو تا قطره ی آخرش می خوردم!

diruz, yek pāltou barāye pedaram xaridam. vaqti un-o did, xeili xoŝ-hāl ŝod, ammā hess kardam ke az rangeŝ ziād xoŝeŝ nayumad. barāye pas-dādan-e pāltou, az mādaram xāheŝ kardam ke bā man biād. mādaram aslan xejālati nist, ammā man xeili kam-ru hastam. sāheb-e foruŝgāh porsid: pāltou ceŝe? goftam: hicciŝ nist, faqat rangeŝ barāye pedaram xeili rouŝane. foruŝande goft: eib nadāre, pedaretun-o javuntar neŝun mide. man dige nemidunestam ci begam. age mādaram bāhām nayumade bud, man bā hamun pāltou bar migaŝtam xune! ammā mādaram belāfāsele goft: pedar-e iŝun az in rang xoŝeŝ nemiād. age ŝomā jā-ye u budid, in pāltou-ro be pedaretun tahmil mikardid? foruŝande javābi nadāŝt o fouran pāltou-ro pas-gereft, vali qabl-az-inke az maqāze biāim birun, bā labxand be mādaram goft: age ŝomāzanam budid, yek livān zahr behetun midādam! mādaram ham bālabxand goft: age ŝomā soharam budid, un zahr-o tā qatre-ye āxareŝ mixordam!

- 1 What did Masoud buy, and for whom?
- 2 What made him change his mind about his choice?
- What difference in character is there between Masoud and his mother?
- 4 What argument did Masoud's mother use to get results?
- 5 What would have happened if his mother had not been there?
- 6 Can you spot examples of evasion, reasoning and conviction in the story?
- What sense of humour is expressed, and by whom?

Unit Fourteen

خدمات

xadamāt

Services

In this unit we will look at how to:



- buy stamps and send an item by registered mail ask if it's possible to do something
- use a passive construction
- enquire about exchange rates; change dollars into rials say something must/should have happened
- talk about things you had/didn't have to do



Dialogue 1



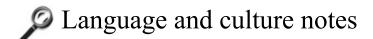
At the post office (Audio2; 42)

Participants: customer (C) and assistant (A).

- c: ببخشید، پول نقدو میشه با پست فرستاد؟
- A: نه، متأسقانه. می تونید با حواله ی پستی بفرستید.
 - این نامهرو میخواستم سفارشی کنم.
 - A: برای کجاست؟
 - c: کانادا.
 - A: بذارید رو(ی) ترازو، لطفاً.
 - c: ىفامايىد
 - A: پول تمبرش میشه هزار و پونصد تومن.
- ت. بفرمایید. در ضمن، یک سؤال داشتم. دو هفته پیش، یک بسته با پست سفارشی به انگلستان فرستادم. فکر می کنید تا حالا رسیده؟
 - A: باید رسیده باشه. معمولاً ظرف یک هفته میرسه.
 - ٥: خيلي ممنون. خدا حافظ.
- c: bebaxŝid, pul-e naqd-o miŝe bā post ferestād?

- A: na, mota`assefāne. mitunid bā havāle-ye posti bef(e)restid.
- c: in nāma-ro mixāstam sefāreŝi konam.
- A: barāye kojāst?
- c: kānādā.
- A: bezārid ru(ye) tarāzu, lotfan.
- c: befarmāyid.
- A: pul-e tam(b)reŝ miŝe hezār o punsad toman.
- C: befarmāyid. dar zemn, yek so`āl dāŝtam. do hafte piŝ, yek baste bā post-e sefāreŝi be engelestān ferestādam. fekr mikonid tā hālā reside?
- A: bāyad reside bāŝe. ma`mulan zarf-e yek hafte mirese.
- c: xeili mamnun. xodā hāfez.
- C: Excuse me, is it possible to send cash by post?
- A: I'm afraid not. You can send (it) by postal order.
- C: I would like to send this letter by registered mail.
- **S**: *Where to?* (lit *Where is it for?*) *Canada.*
- A: Put it on the scale, please.
- c: *Here you are.*
- A: The postage comes to 1,500 tumans.
- C: Here you are. Incidentally, I have (lit had) a question. Two weeks ago, I sent a parcel by registered mail to England. Do you think it's got there by now?
- A: It must/should have arrived. It normally gets there within a week.
- C: Much obliged. Goodbye.

Vocabulary cash nagd is it possible; (it) comes to miŝe to be possible; to become ŝodan (ŝ) شدن (شــ) post, mail ferestädan (ferest) to send mota'assefāne unfortunately havāle order posti postal bef(e)restid you (can) send nāme letter sefāreŝi registered sefäreŝi kardan (kon) to register سفارشی کردن (کنے) tarāzu scale tam(b)r stamp pul-e tam(b)r postage (lit money for stamp) پول تمبر incidentally dar zemn baste parcel fekr kardan (kon) فکر کردن (کنے) to think tā hālā by now; until now (رسے) residan (res) to reach/arrive zarf-e ظرف within



Impersonal construction

How to say: 'Is it possible to send ...?' 'Can one send ...?'

The verb شدن (ش) **ŝodan (ŝ)** which normally means 'to become' is used here with a particular meaning: 'to be possible'. The actual formused is mise 'it is possible': مىشه فرستاد؟

Is it possible to send? (Can one send?)

Note: The verb following mise comes in its past stem form without any

suffix.

More examples:

Can one sit here? (i.e. Are we allowed to sit here?)

nuŝidani miŝe bord tu sinemā?

Can one take a drink inside the cinema? (i.e. Do the regulations permit?) از این ساختمون می شه عکس گرفت؟

az in sāxtemun miŝe aks gereft?

Can one take a picture of this building?

dar moqābel-e zolm miŝe sokut kard?

Can one keep silent vis-à-vis (against) oppression/injustice?



How do you ask, in Persian, whether you are allowed to do the following? The vocabulary not introduced above is given in the box below.

```
sigār keŝidan (keŝ) to smoke
(برک کردن (کنی) pārk kardan (kon) to park
(بردن (بر) bordan (bar) to take/carry
(gereftan (gir) to take (picture)
aks photograph, picture
aks photograph, picture
ali medicine
tāksi taxi
taxi
bastani ice cream
soxanrān speaker
```

- 1 Smoke in the hall/taxi?
- 2 Send medicine by post?

- 3 Send an email with/on this computer?
- 4 Park the car there/here?
- 5 Take an ice cream into the theatre?
- 6 Take a photograph of the speaker?

How to say: 'It must have arrived (by now).'

In Dialogue 1, the customer posted the parcel two weeks ago. It normally gets there within a week. So, the post office assistant concludes that: It must /should have arrived by now.

Formula 1, below, may be used to express this in Persian:

Verb needed: رسيده باشه. **residan** to arrive; past stem: reside bāse ايد رسيده باشه. **bāyad**

It must /should have arrived.

```
tā hālā bāyad reside bāŝe.
```

It must /should have arrived by now.

In this category, the speaker is normally making a guess or assumption based on common sense or past experience. More examples: باید چلوکباب خورده باشید

bāyad celo-kabāb xorde bāŝid.

You must have eaten *chelo-kebab*.

(Because you lived in Iran for 10 years, and this is the most popular dish in Iran.) Verb used: بايد او را ديده باشيد. xordan to eat; past stem: بايد او را ديده باشيد.

bāyad u rā dide bāŝid.

You must have seen him

(He's always in the canteen at lunchtime, joking and laughing – loudly!) Verb

used: ديدن **didan** to see; past stem: did How to say: 'They should have arrived by now.' (But they haven't!) This is when the speaker is concerned as to why they have not arrived yet!

Formula 2, below, may be used to express this in Persian:

bāyad should + prefix ما bāyad should + prefix الما bāyad should + prefix الما bāyad should + prefix

* No personal ending is used for third person singular (s/he, it).

tā hālā bāyad miresidand.

They should have arrived by now.

(But they haven't! The speaker is worried.)

tā hālā bāyad telefon mikard.

He should have phoned by now.

(But he hasn't. The speaker is worried.)

Verb used: تلفن کردن **telefon kardan** to phone; past stem: خود **kard** How to say: 'You should have eaten the meal.' (But you didn't!) *Formula 2*, above, may be used to express this in Persian. As shown below, this may send a variety of messages to the person you are talking to.

```
.bāyad qazā rā mixordi. بايد غذا را ميخوردي
```

You should have eaten the meal.

(But you didn't. You missed an excellent meal. OR: You did a bad thing! The host was offended as s/he had gone to a lot of trouble to prepare the meal.) bāyad u rā mididi.

You should have seen him.

(Pity you didn't see him. He was very funny. You missed a good show. OR: You did a bad thing! It was your social/moral duty to visit him. But you didn't.) Note the negative form:

```
ينير فاسد را نبايد مي خوردي.
```

panir-e fāsed rā nabāyad mixordi.

You should not have eaten the rotten cheese!

(But you did, and now you're sick!)

How to say: 'I had to eat.'

Again, Formula 2, above, may be used to express this in Persian.

```
bāyad mixordam.
                                 I had to eat.
باید میخوردم!
(So I did, otherwise the host would have been offended.)
بايد ميرفتم.
               bāyad miraftam.
                                 I had to go.
(So I did, because he was waiting for me.)
```

How to say: 'I didn't have to go.'

Here we use the word majbur 'forced' plus the appropriate form of the verb بودن **budan** 'to be' followed by the main verb (in this case 'to go'). Here is the formula:

```
*majbur + بودن budan + main verb in simple subjunctive form
```

This formula is not 'time-bound', so it can be used to talk about past as well as present events:

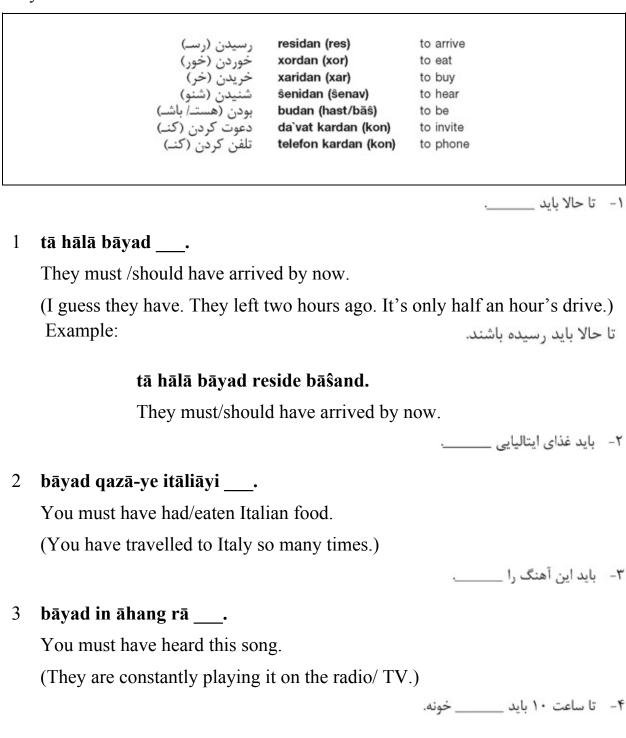
```
. najbur budam beram. I had to go.
. مجبور نبودم برم. majbur nabudam beram. I didn't have to go
    .majburam beram مجبورم برم
                                     I have to go.
.majbur nistam beram مجبور نیستم برم
                                      I don't have to go.
```

Verb used: (وفتن (ر) **raftan (r)** to go <u>Exercise 2</u>



^{*} See U7D1 for the subjunctive.

With the help of the English translations and explanations, fill in the blanks with the appropriate form of a verb from the box below. The first one has been done for you.



4 tā sā`at-e dah bāyad ___ xune.

He should have arrived home by 10 o'clock.

	(But he hasn't. It's nearly 11. The film finished at 9, and we're only half an hour's walk from the cinema.) باید او را
5	bāyad u rā
	You should have invited him.
	(But you didn't. Now he is upset /offended.)
	 ۹- باید آنتی بیوتیک را
6	bāyad āntibiutik rā
	You should have taken (<i>lit</i> eaten) the antibiotic.
	(You didn't. Now you're getting sicker!)
	٧- نبايد او را
7	nabāyad u rā
	You shouldn't have invited him.
	(But you did. Now you regret it!)
	٨- بايد به احمد
8	bāyad be ahmad
	I had to phone Ahmad.
	(He was waiting for my phone call.)
	٩- مجبور براش هديه
9	majbur barāŝ hedye
	I didn't have to buy a present for him.
	(But I did because I wanted to.)
	۱۰ - مجبور اینجا بشینم و سخنرانیهای تو را!
10	majbur injā beŝinam va soxanrānihā-ye to rā!
	I don't have to sit here and hear your lectures!

Other relevant expressions

az ... fotokopi gereftan (gir)

to take a photocopy of ...

barāye in kārt-postāl ceqadr tam(b)r lāzeme?

How much stamps/postage is needed for this postcard?



Can you say these in Persian?

- 1 Can one smoke in/on the aeroplane?
- 2 Is it possible to send this parcel by registered mail?
- 3 Is it possible to take a sandwich/drink into the theatre?
- 4 You must have had *chelo-kebab*. You have been to Iran so many times.
- 5 You must have seen them. They are always in the canteen.
- 6 You should have taken (*lit* eaten) the medicine.
- 7 You should have invited them.
- 8 You shouldn't have had the milk. It was off!
- 9 He shouldn't have eaten that sandwich. It was mine!
- 10 You shouldn't have spoken to him in this way. He's upset!
- 12 I should have gone with them. (But I didn't.) I had to go with him. And I did, because he needed help.
- 13 How much stamps/postage is needed for this letter?
- 14 Where can I take some photocopies?
- 15 Where can I send a fax/an email?



Exchanging currencies (Audio2; 43)

Participants: customer (C) and assistant (A).

- ت. ببخشید، نرخ دلار چیه امروز؟
 خروش، ۱۲۰۰ تومن؛ خرید، ۱۰۰۰ تومن.
 ت. میخواستم ۵۰۰ دلار به ریال تبدیل کنم.
 ۸: این فرمو پر کنید، لطفاً.
 ت. بفرمایید: این فرم؛ اینهم ۵۰۰ دلار.
 ۸: این فرم، مثل اینکه، امضا نشده. این رسید(و) هم امضا کنید، لطفاً.
 ت. معذرت میخوام. ... بفرمایید.
 ۸: متشکّرم. بفرمایید. این پول قبلاً با ماشین شمرده شده، ولی خودتون هم لطفاً بشمرید.
 ت. چشم ... درسته، خیلی ممنون.
 ت. چشم ... درسته، خیلی ممنون.
- c: bebaxŝid, nerx-e dolār cie emruz?
- A: foruŝ, hezār o devist toman; xarid, hezār toman.
- c: mixāstam punsad dolār be riāl tabdil konam.
- A: in form-o por konid, lotfan.
- c: befarmāyid: in form; in-(h)am punsad dolār.
- A: in form, mesl-e inke, emzā naŝode. in resid(-o) ham emzā konid, lotfan.
- c: ma`zerat mixām. ... befarmāyid.
- A: mot(a)ŝakkeram. befarmāyid. in pul qablan bā māŝin ŝomorde ŝode, vali xodetun ham lotfan beŝ(o)morid.
- C: caŝm ... doroste, xeili mamnun.

- C: Excuse me, what's the (exchange) rate for the (US) dollar today?
- A: Selling, 1,200 tumans; buying, 1,000 tumans.
- C: I wanted to change \$500 into rials.
- A: Fill in this form, please.
- C: Here you are: here's the form; (and) here's the \$500.
- A: This form, it seems, has not been signed. Also sign this receipt, please.
- C: I beg your pardon ... Here you are.
- A: Thanks. Here you are. This money has already been counted by the machine, but please also count (it) yourself.
- C: By all means ... It's correct, much obliged.



Language and culture notes

The passive

How to say: 'to be counted'

The Persian equivalent for 'to count' is شعردن **ŝomordan**. Here is the formula to produce the equivalent of 'to be counted':

Past stem of verb + suffix ه - • • شدن • • • \$odan to become

Verb needed: شمرد **somordan** to count; past stem: شمرد **somord** Here is the result:

to be counted (lit to become counted)

Here is an example from the above dialogue:

in pul qablan bā māŝin ŝomorde ŝode.

This money has already been counted by the machine.

Note how this is expressed in the present simple tense:

dar in bānk, pul hamiŝe bā māŝin ŝomorde miŝe.

In this bank, money is always counted by the machine.

More examples:

This kebab has not been cooked well!

kenedi dar sāl-e hezār o nohsad o ŝast o se koŝte ŝod.

Kennedy was killed in the year 1963.



Using the above formula, fill in the blanks. The first one has been done for you.

xordan to eat خوردن Example: xorde ŝodan to be eaten خورده شدن bastan to close to be closed didan to see to be seen ŝenidan to hear to be heard goftan to say; to tell to be said; to be told foruxtan to sell to be sold xaridan to buy to be bought to wash ŝostan to be washed

Also note these forms:

امضا emzā signature امضا کردن emzā kardan to sign امضا شدن emzā ŝodan to be signed

in form emzā naŝode.

This form has not been signed.

announcing, announcement e'lām kardan to announce
e'lām sodan to be announced

نرخ تبدیل ارز اعلام شده است.

nerx-e tabdil-e arz e`lām ŝode ast.

Foreign currency exchange rate has been announced.

باز bāz open باز کردن bāz kardan to open باز شدن bāz ŝodan to be opened

in nāme bāz ŝode!

This letter has been opened (by someone)!

آزاد و azād free آزاد کردن āzād kardan to free āzād ŝodan to be freed

«نلسون ماندلا» در سال ۱۹۹۰ از زندان ازاد شد.

nelson māndelā dar sāl-e hezār o nohsad o navad az zendān āzād ŝod.

Nelson Mandela was freed from prison in the year 1990.

garm warm

garm kardan to warm (something) up گرم کردن garm ŝodan to be warmed up

. sāmetun garm ŝode.

Your dinner has been warmed up.

مجبور مجبور مجبور کردن majbur kardan to forced مجبور کردن majbur sodan to be forced

مجبور شدم فيلمو دوباره ببينم!

majbur ŝodam film-o dobāre bebinam!

I was forced to see the film again! (Sound of Music?)

مجبور شدم فيلمو دوباره ببينم!

peidā visible, found پیدا کردن peidā kardan to find to be found

su'ic-e māŝinam tu-ye satl-e āŝqāl peidā ŝod!

My car key was found in the dustbin!

سوئيچ ماشينم توى سطل آشغال پيدا شد!

to be defeated (lit to eat defeat) [humble pie?]

In yesterday's match, our team was defeated!

Exercise 5

Can you translate these sentences into English?

- 1 ببخشید، صداتون شنیده نمیشه. bebaxŝid, sedātun ŝenide nemiŝe.
- 2 مرتون تو عکس دیده نمیشه! saretun tu aks dide nemiŝe!
- 3 مرغ خوب پخته نشده. morq xub poxte naŝode.
- 4 این نامه امضا نشده. in nāme emzā naŝode.
- 5 پنجره باز شد. panjare bāz ŝod.
- 6 على هنوز از زندان آزاد نشده. ali hanuz az zendān āzād naŝode.
- این سوپ خوب گرم نشده. sup xub garm naŝode.
- 8 ساعتم پیدا شد. sā`atam peidā ŝod.
- 9 نرخ ارز هنوز اعلام نشده. nerx-e arz hanuz e`lām naŝode.
- 10 در سال ۱۹۹۸، تیم فوتبال آمریکا از تیم ایران شکست خورد! dar sāl-e hezār o nohsad o navad o haŝt, tim-e futbāl-e āmrikā az tim-e irān ŝekast xord!

Other major currencies

pond pound sterling; ين ژاپن **yen-e ĝāpon** Japanese yen

Exercise 6

These are what C in the preceding dialogue did in the bank earlier today, but they are mixed up. Can you put them in order by putting a letter (a–f) in each box?

Exercise 7

Can you say these in Persian?

- 1 Martin Luther King was killed in 1968.
- 2 The meat has not been cooked well.
- 3 Suddenly the door was closed.
- 4 Where's my sandwich? Sorry, it was eaten!
- 5 Excuse me, this cheque has not been signed.

Comprehension (Audio2; 44)

Ali (A) is making an enquiry at his local bank. This is the conversation he has with the clerk (C):

- A: ببخشید، نرخ ارز برای امروز اعلام شده؟
- ت باید شده باشه. یک لحظه صبر کنید، لطفاً ... ببخشید، ساعت
 ۱۱ اعلام میشه. چی دارید؟
 - ۵: ۱۰۰۰ پوند می خواستم تبدیل کنم.
- c: نرخ خرید دیروز ۱۶۰۰ تومن بود. برای نرخ امروز می تونید به شماره ی ۳۸۷۵۶ تلفن کنید.
 - A: متأسقانه عجله دارم. با همون نرخ دیروز می شه فروخت؟
 - c: بله، این فرمو پر کنید (و) ببرید باجهی ۳.
- A: bebaxŝid, nerx-e arz barāye emruz e`lām ŝode?
- C: bāyad ŝode bāŝe. yek lahze sabr konid, lotfan ... bebaxŝid, sā`at-e yāzdah e`lām miŝe. ci dārid?
- A: hezār pond mixāstam tabdil konam.
- C: nerx-e xarid-e diruz hezār o ŝeŝsad toman bud. barāye nerx-e emruz mitunid be ŝomāre-ye sisad o haŝtād o haft, panjāh o ŝeŝ telefon konid.
- A: mota`assefāne ajale dāram. bā hamun nerx-e diruz miŝe foruxt?
- c: bale, in form-o por konid (va) bebarid bāje-ye se.
- 1 What does Ali want to know in his first question?
- 2 What assumption/guess does the clerk make?
- What correction does the clerk make?
- 4 Why has Ali come to the bank?
- 5 What compromise does he have to make, and why?

Unit Fifteen

سلامت و بهداشت

salāmat o behdāŝt

Health and hygiene

In this unit we will look at how to:



- use polite titles
- talk about ailments
- ask a chemist for medicine for a minor illness make a major apology
- report what someone has said





Hello doctor (Audio2; 45)



Parviz (P) is talking to his doctor (D).

- بالام آقای دکتر. خیلی معذرت میخوام که دیر اومدم.

 - ت سلام. بفرمایید بشینید.
 ت متشکرم. حالم خیلی بده آقای دکتر.
- سرم دائم درد می کنه. گلوم همیشه خشکه. قبل از غذا، دلم درد می گیره. بینیم اغلب گرفته است. شبها، به سختی نفس می کشم.
 - ی دهانتونو باز کنید، لطفاً. بگید آآ... مرسی. سه تا دارو براتون مینویسم. هفتهی آینده بیاید ببینیم نتیجه چی شده.
- salām āqā-ye doktor. xeili ma`zerat mixām ke dir umadam. P:
- salām. befarmāyid beŝinid. D:
- mot(a)ŝakkeram. hālam xeili bade āqā-ye doktor. P:

- D: moŝkel cie?
- P: saram dā'em dard mikone. galum hamiŝe xoŝke. qabl-az qazā, delam dard migire. binim aqlab gereft(e)ast. ŝabhā, be-saxtinafas mikeŝam. nemizāre bexābam.
- D: dahānetun-o bāz konid, lotfan. begid 'ā' ... mersi. se tā dāru barātun minevisam. hafte-ye āyande biāid bebinim natije ci ŝode.
- P: Hello (lit Mr) Doctor. I do apologise for being (lit I came) late.
- D: Hello. Do sit down.
- P: Thank you. I'm very unwell doctor
- D: What's the problem?
- P: My head constantly aches. My throat is always dry. Before a meal, my stomach begins to ache. My nose is often blocked. At night, I breathe with difficulty. It's stopping me from sleeping. (lit It does not let me sleep.)
- D: Open your mouth, please. Say 'Ah' ... Thank you. I'm writing out three medicines for you. Come (back) next week and we'll see what the outcome is.



GB Vocabulary

معذرت مىخوام	ma`zerat mixām	I apologise (lit I want/beg pardon)
دير	dir	late
اومدم	umadam	I came
بشينيد	beŝinid	sit down
حال	hāl	health
مشكل	moŝkel	problem
سر	sar	head
دائم	dā`em	constantly
درد	dard	ache, pain
درد کردن (کنــ)	dard kardan (kon)	to ache
گلو	galu	throat
خشک	xoŝk	dry
Ja	del	heart (also 'stomach'!)
درد گرفتن (گیر)	dard gereftan (gir)	to begin to ache
بینی	bini	nose
گرفته	gerefte	blocked
سخت	saxt	difficult, hard
سختى	saxti	difficulty
بەسختى	be-saxti	with difficulty
تفس	nafas	breath
کشیدن (کش)	keŝidan (keŝ)	to draw, to pull
نفس کشیدن (کشــ)	nafas keŝidan (keŝ)	to breathe
نمىذاره	nemizāre	it doesn't let
	gozāŝtan (zār)	to let, to allow
بخوابم	bexābam	(for me to) sleep
دهان	dahān	mouth
باز کنید	bāz konid	open
بگید	begid	say
گفتن (گ۔)	goftan (g)	to say
0-2000	dāru	medicine
مىنويسم	minevisam	I write

```
neveŝtan (nevis) to write
ا معنور الويسا الومدن الويسا الومدن الويسا الومدن القاط ا
```

Language and culture notes Q



Titles

```
قام āqā sir/gentleman آقای āqā-ye Mr آقا
خانم xānom lady/madam خانم
```

We use خانم **āqā-ye** and خانم **xānom-e** before most titles, which is not only a sign of politeness but also an indication of gender: قاى / خانم دكتر احمدى **āqā-ye/xānom-e doktor ahmadi**

(lit) Mr/Ms Doctor Ahmadi

- - (lit) Mr/Ms Chairperson/principal/chief/boss

```
āqā-ye/xānom(-e) modir
```

(lit) Mr/Ms Director/manager/head teacher

Noun derivation

To turn an adjective into a noun we add the stressed suffix ^c -i:

```
saxt difficult, hard → سختی saxti difficulty,
hardship,
hardness
```

The pattern به **be-saxti** used in the dialogue means 'with difficulty'. If the adjective ends with the vowel e, the ending **وق -gi** is used instead:

```
xaste tired → خستگی خسته tiredness, fatigue

teŝne thirsty → تشنگی teŝnegi thirst

gorosne hungry → گرسنگی gorosnegi hunger

گرسنگی قamāde ready, → قامادگی famādegi readiness, preparation
```

If the adjective ends with the vowel ⁶ i, various forms may be used depending on the origin of the word. Words borrowed from Arabic normally have their own noun forms:

```
anā richness غنی qani rich → غنی qanā richness بناوت saxi generous → سخاوت saxāvat generosity ملّی melli national → ملّیت melliyat nationality
```

For words of Persian origin we sometimes add budan 'being': pubar cloud; budan 'being': pubar cloud; budan cloudiness (i.e. the fact that it is cloudy) عاران bārān rain; būrāni rainy; باران bārāni rainy; باران bārāni-budan raininess (i.e. the fact that it is rainy)

bārāni-budan-e havā ta`siri bar mosābeqe-ye emruz nadārad.

The fact that it is rainy (*lit* the raininess of the weather) has no impact on today's match. (Because we are playing indoors!) تخارجی بودن xāreji foreign خارجی پودن xāreji-budan foreignness (i.e. the fact that someone/something is from abroad)

```
خارجی بودن اتومبیل تأثیری بر تصمیم ما ندارد.
```

The fact that the car is foreign made (*lit* its being foreign) has no impact on our decision (e.g. to buy or not to buy it).

After other vowels (notably $|\bar{a}|$ and $|\bar{u}|$) the suffix $|\bar{u}|$ -yi is normally used:

```
زيباzibar{a} beautiful 	o زيبايي zibar{a}yi beauty خوشرو xos-ruyi cheerfulness
```

Exercise 1



Can you convert these adjectives into nouns? The first one has been done for you.

```
xoŝ-hāl happy خوشحال 1
                      × xoŝ-hāli happiness خوش حالى →
     sād joyful شاد
                      → _____ joy
    hasud jealous → _____ jealousy
3
     tanhā alone تنها
4
     por-ru cheeky → _____ cheekiness
5
6
    hāmele pregnant → _____ pregnancy
7
    avare homeless → _____ homelessness أواره
    tufāni stormy توفاني
                        (i.e. the fact that it is stormy)
```

How to say: 'I feel tired, hungry, thirsty, etc.'

Consider this difference between English and Persian:

```
English uses this To feel + adjective (to feel tired, hungry, thirsty, etc.) formula:
```

English uses this To feel + noun (to feel tiredness, hunger, thirst, etc.) formula:

```
ehsās احساس
                                             feeling
ehsäs kardan (kon) احساس کردن (کنــ)
                                             to feel
   ehsās-e xastegi kardan احساس خستگی
                                             to feel tired
     کردن (کنــ)
                    (kon)
  احساس گرسنگی
                  ehsäs-e gorosnegi kardan to feel hungry
       کردن (کنے)
   ehsäs-e teŝnegi kardan احساس تشنگی
                                             to feel thirsty
     کردن (کنـ)
                    (kon)
    ehsäs-e tanhäyi kardan احساس تنهایی
                                             to feel lonely
                    (kon)
             gonāh گناه
                                             guilt; sin
      ehsäs-e gonäh kardan احساس گناه
                                             to feel guilty
     کردن (کنـ)
                     (kon)
```

Parts of the body

```
mu
                                  hair
               surat
                                  face
               guŝ
                                  ear
     ابرو
مژه
بینی
کونه
سبیل
ریش
لب
دندان
زبان
چانه
               abru
                                  eyebrow
               ceŝm
                                  eye
               moĝe
                                  eyelash
               bini
                                  nose
               gune
                                  cheek
               sebil
                                  moustache
               riŝ
                                  beard
               lab
                                  lip
               dandān
                                  tooth
               zabān
                                  tongue
               lase
                                  gum
               cāne
                                  chin
     گردن
گلو
شانه
               gardan
                                  neck
               galu
                                  throat
               ŝāne
                                  shoulder
       بازو
               bāzu
                                  arm
                                  head
               sar
               dast
                                  hand
 کف دست
               kaf-e dast
                                  palm of hand
ىشت دست
               poŝt-e dast
                                  back of hand
               angoŝt-e dast
                                  finger
                                  thumb
               angoŝt-e ŝast
               ārenj
                                  elbow
      ارنج
               moc-e dast
                                  wrist
               moc-e pā
                                  ankle
               poŝt
                                  back
               kamar
                                  waist, lower back
               rān
                                  thigh
               zānu
                                  knee
               pā
                                  foot
               sāq-e pā
                                  leg
               moc-e pā
                                  ankle
               pāŝne
                                  heel
               angoŝt-e pā
                                  toe
               ŝast-e pā
                                  big toe
```

More symptoms or conditions ...

سردرد	sar-dard	headache
دندان درد	dandān-dard	toothache
كمردرد	kamar-dard	backache
گوشُ در د	guŝ-dard	earache
گلودر د	galu-dard	sore throat
بي خوابي	bi-xābi	sleeplessness, insomnia
كماشتها	kam-eŝtehā	having little appetite
آسم	āsm	asthma
حستأستت	hassāsiyat	allergy
اسهال ً	eshāl	diarrhoea
يبوست	yobusat	constipation
أستفراغ	estefrāq	vomiting
استفراغ کردن (کنـ)	estefrāq kardan	to vomit
0, 0,	(kon)	
سرما خوردن (خور)	sarmā xordan	to catch a cold
	(xor)	
سرفه کردن (کنـ)	sorfe kardan	to cough
	(kon)	
تب داشتن (دار)	tab dāstan (dār)	to have a temperature
عطسه کردن (کنـ)	atse kardan	to sneeze
2 101	(kon)	
از بینیم آب میآد.	az binim āb	My nose is streaming.
	miād.	(lit Water is coming
		from my nose.)
سینهام چرک کرده.	sin(e)am cerk	I have a chest infection.
	karde.	
سوختن (سوز)	suxtan (suz)	to burn/sting
چشمهام میسوزه.	ceŝmhām	My eyes are burning/
	misuze.	stinging.
عضله / عضلات	azole/azolāt	muscle/muscles
		(Arabic plural)

tamām-e azolāt-e badanam dard mikone.

All the muscles of my body are aching.



Match a letter with a number. The first one has been done for you.

- 1 Recently I've lost much of my appetite. [e]
- 2 Most of the time my throat is painful/sore. []

- 3 Vomiting and diarrhoea together are dangerous. []
- 4 At night I can't sleep because of earache. []
- 5 When I eat apples I get constipation. []
- 6 I am allergic to house dust. []
- a) استفراغ و اسهال باهم خطرناکه.

estefrāq o eshāl-e bā-ham xatarnāke.

شبها از گوشدرد نمی تونم بخوابم.

ŝabhā az guŝ-dard nemitunam bexābam.

به گردوخاک خونه حسّاسیّت دارم.

be gard-o-xāk-e xune hassāsiyat dāram.

بیشتر وقتها گلوم درد میکنه.

bistar-e vaqthā galum dard mikone.

اخیراً خیلی کماشتها شدهام.اخیراً خیلی کماشتها شدهام.

axiran xeili kam-eŝtehā ŝod(e)am.

وقتی سیب میخورم یبوست می گیرم. (f

vaqti sib mixoram yobusat migiram.



Can you say these in Persian?

- 1 At night, my nose gets blocked.
- 2 I can't breathe.
- 3 It doesn't let me sleep.
- 4 When I go into a park, I sneeze a lot.
- 5 When I do some vacuum cleaning, I cough a lot.
- 6 During the night, I need to go to the toilet several times.

Dialogue 2



At the pharmacy (Audio2; 46)



Ali (A) is talking to his local chemist (C).

- A: ببخشید، برای گلودرد چی دارید؟
- c: سه نوع شربت داریم و دو نوع قرص مکیدنی.
 - A: از شربتها کدوم بهتره؟
 - c: راستش، مشتریها بیشتر اینو می خرند.
- دی خوب، همونو لطف کنید. در ضمن، برای سرماخوردگی چی
 دارید؟
 - ت برای خودتون میخواید؟
- A: نه، برای پسرم. ده سالشه. امروز صبح گفت حالم خوب نیست؛ نمیرم مدرسه. فکر می کنم سرما خورده.
- c: بفرمایید. هر چهار ساعت، یکی از این قرصها بهش بدید و یک قاشق هم از این شربت.
 - A: خیلی ممنون. چند شد؟
 - c دو هزار تومن.
 - A: بفرمایید.

- A: bebaxŝid, barāye galu-dard ci dārid?
- C: se nou(`) ŝarbat dārim va do nou(`) qors-e makidani.
- A: az ŝarbat(h)ā kodum behtare?
- C: rāsteŝ, moŝtari(h)ā biŝtar in-o mixarand.
- A: xeili xub, hamun-o lotf konid. dar zemn, barāye sarmā-xordegi ci dārid?
- c: barāye xodetun mixāid?
- A: na, barāye pesaram. dah sāleŝe. emruz sobh goft hālam xub nist; nemiram

- madrese. fekr mikonam sarmā xorde.
- C: befarmāyid. har cahār sā`at, yeki az in qorshā behes bedid va yek qāsoq ham az in sarbat.
- A: xeili mamnun. cand ŝod?
- c: do hezār toman.
- A: befarmāyid.
- A: Excuse me, what have you got for a sore throat?
- C: We have three types of syrup and two kinds of sucking tablets (lozenges).
- A: Of/among the syrups, which one is better?
- C: To be honest, customers buy this one more often.
- A: Very well, give me that one, please. Meanwhile, what have yougot for a cold?
- c: *Is it for yourself?*
- A: No, for my son. He's 10 years old. This morning he said he wasn't feeling well; (and therefore) he wouldn't go to school. I think he's got a cold.
- C: Here you are. Every four hours, give him one of these tablets and also one spoonful of this syrup.
- A: Much obliged. How much did it come to?
- C: Two thousand tumans.
- A: *Here you are.*



Vocabulary

galu-dard sore throat nou نوع kind, type, sort ŝarbat syrup gors tablet, pill (مک) makidan (mak) to suck makidani suckable qors-e makidani lozenge (lit suckable tablet) rāsteŝ to be honest (lit its truth) moŝtari مشترى customer biŝtar more often mixarand they buy hamun همون that same one lotf konid لطف كنيد please give (the state of having caught) a cold sarmā-xordegi xodetun dah sāleŝe ده سالشه he's 10 years old (lit it's 10 years of him) har every qāŝoq قاشق spoon(ful)

Language and culture notes



Reported speech

How to say: 'He said he was ill.'

Consider these sentences:

- (a) Peter said: 'I'm ill.'
- (b) Peter said (that) he was ill.

A Persian equivalent for (b) would be similar to (a), only without thequotation (marks: پيتر گفت: مريضم piter goft: 'marizam.' Peter said: 'I'm ill.'

(b) پيتر گفت (که) مريضم. piter goft (ke) marizam.

Peter said (that) he was ill. (lit Peter said (that) I'm ill.) **Important:** In Persian reported speech, person and particularly tense do not normally change. Thus, sentence (b) may also take this form: مريضه piter **goft (ke) marize.**

Peter said (that) he was ill. (lit Peter said (that) he's ill.)

Note: Use of the word ملا نهو 'that' is optional – hence the brackets. Here is a sentence from the dialogue: گفت حالم خوب نیست؛ نمی رم مدرسه.

goft hālam xub nist; nemiram madrese.

He said he wasn't feeling well; (and therefore) he wouldn't go to school.

(lit He said I'm not feeling well ... I won't go ...)

Exercise 4



Change these sentences into reported forms.

۱- احمد گفت: 'خستهام.'

1 **ahmad goft: 'xaste-am'**. Ahmad said: 'I'm tired.'

احمد گفت (که) خستهام. Example:

ahmad goft (ke) xaste-am. Ahmad said (that) he was tired.

۲- مهمونها گفتند: ما گرسنهایم!"

2 mehmunh1 goftand: 'mā gorosne-im!'

The guests said: 'We are hungry!'

Now say: The guests said (that) they were hungry.

٣- او پرسيد: "ساعت چنده؟"

3 u porsid: 'sā'at cande?'

He asked: 'What's the time?'

Now say: He asked what the time was.

۴- برادرم گفت: "ماشینمو فروختم."

4 barādaram goft: 'māŝinam-o foruxtam.'

My brother said: 'I sold my car.'

Now say: My brother said (that) he had sold his car.

۵- حسن گفت: "نمی دونم تلویزیون چشه."

5 hasan goft: 'nemidunam televizion ceŝe.'

Hassan said: 'I don't know what's wrong with the TV.'

Now say: Hassan said (that) he didn't know what was wrong with the TV.

More medicines

For medicines taken orally, we use the verb (خوردن (خود xordan (xor) (lit to eat).

```
وا davā remedy (less formal alternative for دارو dāru medicine) خارو dāru medicine) خارو dāru medicine) خارو dāru medicine) شربت سرفه شربت سرفه شربت سرفه مسكن mosakken pain-killer مسكن āntibiutik antibiotic

For ماليدن (مالـ) kerem 'cream', we use (مالـ) mālidan (māl) 'to rub'.

For أمپول āmpul 'injection', we use (زنن زعام zadan (zan) 'to hit/jab'.

yaparhiz (avoidance) diet (recommended by doctors for their patients)

yaparhiz (avoidance) diet (recommended by doctors for their patients)

i az ... parhiz kardan (kon) to avoid ...

Avoid (eating) pickles!
```

Exercise 5

4



Match these medicines with the conditions they treat. The first one has been done for you.

Г٦

1 شربت سرفه (b] **ŝarbat-e sorfe** قرص مسكن **āntibiutik** [] 3 و **qors-e mosakken** []

- kerem کرم
- gors-e makidani []
- a گلوم میسوزه. galum misuze.
- b خيلي سرفه مي کنم. keili sorfe mikonam.
- c سينهام چرک کرده. sin(e)am cerk karde.
- d معتاده شدید دارم. sar-dard-e ŝadid dāram.
- e عضلات پشتم درد می کنه. azolāt-e poŝtam dard mikone.

LЈ

Exercise 6



Can you say these in Persian?

- 1 Excuse me, what have you got for toothache/backache?
- 2 Which of these toothpastes is better?
- What's the matter with you?
- 4 It seems I've got a cold.
- 5 She said she had missed the 9 o'clock train.
- 6 He asked if I was married.
- 7 What did you say?
- 8 I told him I was engaged.

Comprehension (Audio2; 47)

Listen to this dialogue between Ali (A) and Behzad (B) and answer the questions in English.

- A: میدونی که حدود یک ساعت تأخیر داری؟
- B: جداً معذرت میخوام. قرار بود با احمد بیام. دو ساعت پیش، تلفن
 کرد (و) گفت ماشینو فروختهام؛ بدون ماشین نمی تونم بیام؛ خیلی
 خستهام. من هم چون تأخیر داشتم قطارو از دست دادم.
 - A: تو گفتی اگه دیر شد، تلفن می کنم.
 - B: واقعاً شرمندهام. تو حالت بهتره؟
- A: نه، تب دارم. تموم بدنم درد می کنه. از شدّت درد نمی تونم بخوابم.
 - B: چیزی خوردهای؟
 - A: نه، اشتها ندارم.
 - B: دکتر دوا نداد؟
 - A: چرا، یک قرص مکیدنی داد، یک شربت سرفه و یک آمپول
 - پنىسىلىن.
 - B: به پنیسیلین حسّاسیّت نداری؟
 - A: نه، خوشبختانه.
 - B: خوش به حالت!

- A: miduni ke hodud-e yek sā`at ta`xir dāri?
- B: jeddan ma`zerat mixām. qarār bud bā ahmad biām. do sā`atpiŝ, telefon kard (o) goft māŝin-o foruxt(e)am; bedun-e māŝin nemitunam biām; xeili xast(e)am. man ham con ta`xir dāŝtam qatār-o az dast dādam.
- A: to gofti age dir ŝod, telefon mikonam.
- B: vāqe`an ŝarmand(e)am. to hālet behtare?
- A: na, tab dāram. tamum-e badanam dard mikone. az ŝeddat-e dard nemitunam bexābam.
- B: cizi xord(e)i?
- A: na, eŝtehā nadāram.
- B: doktor davā nadād?
- A: cerā, yek qors-e makidani dād, yek ŝarbat-e sorfe va yek āmpul-e penisilin.
- B: be penisilin hassāsiyat nadāri?
- A: na, xoŝbaxtāne.
- B: xoŝ be hālet!
- 1 Can you identify two instances of apology? What are they for?
- 2 Who promised to do what?

- 3 What explanation does he give for his failure to fulfil his promise?
- 4 What is the matter with Ali?
- 5 How do we know that Behzad envies Ali?

Unit Sixteen

روابط با دیگران

ravābet bā digarān

Relations with other people

In this unit we will look at how to:



- use polite words for giving and receiving gifts offer congratulations
- and best wishes on happy occasions make a social phone call
- send your regards to someone
- express pleasant surprise
- suggest a joint activity
- arrange to meet a friend

تولدت مبارک





Giving and receiving gifts (Audio2; 48)



Siam (s) is celebrating his birthday. Hameed (H), one of his friends, has just arrived.

- H: صیام جان، این قابل تو نیست. تولدت مبارک!
- s: خیلی ممنون حمید جان. صاحبش قابله. خیلی زحمت کشیدی.
 - نخواهش می کنم. چه زحمتی؟
 - s: خب، داداش چطوره؟
 - н: خوبه، مرسى. سلام مىرسونه. راستى، گفت ببخشيد كه

 - s: خواهش می کنم، این حرفها چیه؟
 - H: خب، پس بقیّه کجاند؟
 - s: هنوز نیومدهاند. تو اوّلین "مشتری" هستی!
- siām jān, in qābel-e to nist. tavallodet mobārak! Н:
- xeili mamnun hamid jān. sāhebeŝ qābele. xeili zahmat keŝidi. s:
- xāheŝ mikonam. ce zahmati? Н:

- s: xob, dādāŝ ceto(u)re?
- H: xube, mersi. salām miresune. rāsti, goft bebaxŝid ke nemitunam biām.
- s: xāheŝ mikonam, in harfhā cie?
- H: xob, pas baqiye kojānd?
- s: hanuz nayumad(e)and. to avvalin 'moŝtari' hasti!
- H: Dear Siam, this is just a little something for you (lit this is not worthy of you). Happy birthday to you.
- S: (I'm) most grateful dear Hameed. Its owner (i.e. giver of the gift) is worthy. You've gone to a lot of trouble.
- H: *Not at all. What trouble?*
- s: *So, how's (your) brother?*
- H: He's fine, thanks. He sends his regards. By the way, he said sorry he couldn't come (lit he said excuse me (for the fact) that I can't come).
- S: That's OK, don't mention it.
- H: So, where are the others, then?
- s: They haven't come yet. You are the first 'customer' (metaphorically)!



AB Vocabulary

قابل	qābel	worthy birth(day) (may it be) blessed Happy birthday to you owner (here, the person giving the gift) trouble		
تولّد	tavallod			
مبارك	mobārak			
تولّدت مبارک	tavallodet mobārak			
صاحب	sāheb			
زحمت	zahmat			
زحمت کشیدن (کشـ)	zahmat keŝidan (keŝ)	to take trouble		
داداش	dādāŝ	(col) brother (he) sends/conveys to send/convey by the way word, speech		
مىرسونه	miresune			
رسوندن (رسونـ)	resundan (resun)			
راستى	rāsti			
حرف				
?in harfhā cie این حرفها چیه		Don't mention it. Or: What are you talking about? (lit What are these words?)		
بقيّه	baqiye	the rest		
كجاند	kojānd	short for كجا هستند kojā hastand where are they yet		
هنوز	hanuz			
نيومدهاند	nayumad(e)and	they haven't come		
اومدن (أ)	umadan (ā)	to come		
اولين	avvalin	first		
مشتري	moŝtari	customer		

Language and culture notes Q



How to say: 'first customer'

There are two ways of saying this:

- (a) مشتری اوّل moŝtari-e avval
- avvalin moŝtari اوّلين مشتري (b)

There is not much difference between the two, but note the different position of the noun, as well as the presence of ezāfe in (a). (See U2D2 for ezāfe.) Also, note that the ordinal number takes an نام -in suffix when it precedes the noun, as in (b). Pattern (b) seems to feature in more formal contexts, though not invariably: پنجمین سالگرد ازدواج panjomin sālgard-e ezdevāj

fifth wedding anniversary

sevvomin seminār-e zabān-ŝenāsi

third seminar on linguistics

avvalin bār diruz qazā-ye cini xordam.

I ate Chinese food yesterday for the first time.

dar irān, do-ŝanbe sevvomin ruz-e hafte ast.

In Iran, Monday is the third day of the week.

The opposite of اول avval 'first' is قَعْم āxar 'last'.

```
ruz-e āxar last day روز آخر
āxarin ruz last day آخرین روز
در ایران، آخرین روز هفته جمعه است.
```

dar irān, āxarin ruz-e hafte jom'e ast.

In Iran, the last day of the week is Friday.

Also note these special time phrases:

```
avāyel-e oktobr early October (first few days) early October (middle few days) avāset-e oktobr early October (middle few days) avāxer-e oktobr late October (last few days)
```



Put the ordinal number before the noun and make any necessary changes.

```
1 روز اوّل سال ruz-e avval-e sāl first day of the year
Example: اوّلين روز سال avvalin ruz-e sāl
2 روز آخر سال ruz-e āxar-e sāl last day of the year
3 هفته ی دوّم سال hafte-ye dovvom-e sāl second week of the year
4 ماه سوّم سال māh-e sevvom-e sāl third month of the year
5 فصل چهارم سال fasl-e cahārom-e sāl fourth season of the year
```

How to say: 'Happy New Year/Birthday, etc.'

Here is the formula:

occasion + مبارک mobārak may it be blessed

Examples:

```
عمال نو مبارک sāl-e nou mobārak Happy New Year تولّدت مبارک tavallodet mobārak Happy Birthday to you (inf)

tavallodetun mobārak Happy Birthday (f)

الكرد ازدواجتون مبارک سالگرد ازدواجتون مبارک
```

sālgard-e ezdevājetun mobārak

Happy Wedding Anniversary

Note: The above pattern is used to offer good wishes on a much longer list of occasions than is customary in English. These include when a friend has, e.g., a new pair of shoes, a new haircut, etc. So, when an Iranian friend says to you:

```
!kafŝ-e nou mobārak کفش نو مبارک!
```

(lit Congratulations on (your) new shoes!)

he is not being sarcastic – with the message 'at long last you got yourself a decent pair of shoes!'

Exercise 2



Today, you received this card through the post.

dust-e aziz	دوست عزیز		
kerismas va sāl-e nou mobārak!	کریسمس و سال نو مبارک!		
sohrāb-e hāŝemi	سهراب هاشمی		

- 1 Who is it from?
- 2 What relation is he to you?
- 3 What does it say?

Exercise 3



Can you produce a reply to the above card sending a similar message?

A related expression

A Persian equivalent for 'to congratulate someone on something' is: [3] (گو) 'someone' مریک گفتن (گو) 'something'

'something' rābe 'someone' tabrik goftan (g) [gu]

سالگرد ازدواجتان را به شما تبریک می گویم. Example:

sālgard-e ezdevājetān rābe ŝomātabrik miguyam.

I congratulate you on your wedding anniversary.

A colloquial form of the above would be:

sālgard-e ezdevājetun-o behetun tabrik migam.

He sends his regards!

Consider the expression which salām miresune 'He sends his regards', as used in the preceding dialogue. When someone (a) asks me about the health of a close friend or relative of mine (b), my normal response would be to say 'he/she is fine' followed by the above expression. This is purely a politeness formula implying that B has respect for A.

Here are some more related expressions:

```
be xānevāde salām beresunid.
```

Give (my) regards to (your) family.

A reply might be casm (By all means).

Here is how you would convey the greetings:

```
ahmad salām resund.
```

Ahmad sent (his) regards.

Wish you had been there!

When we talk about a pleasant experience, we normally use an expression which literally translates: 'Your place was vacant', *or*: 'You were missed'. The message is: 'I wish you had been there so you could have shared the experience'. Below is the expression in its various forms.

```
إلان البود). jāt xāli (bud). (col/inf)
إقلام xāli (bud). (col/f)
إقلام yāyat xāli bud. (l/inf)
إقلام yāyat xāli bud. (l/f)
```

Examples:

```
جاتون خالی، غذا خیلی خوشمزه بود.
```

jātun xāli, qazāxeili xosmaze bud.

Wish you were there, the food was very tasty.

```
ta`tilāt xos gozast?
```

Did you enjoy the holiday? (*lit* Did the holiday pass pleasantly?) ماه، جاتون خالى بود. bale, jātun xāli bud.

Yes, wish you had been there.

Exercise 4

Can you do these in Persian?

- Use the first line in Dialogue 1 above to congratulate your spouse on your wedding anniversary and present him/her with a gift.
- 2 Respond to the above.
- 3 Say 'happy birthday' to an older relative.
- 4 Say 'happy new house/home' to a friend.
- Write a brief message to family friends congratulating them on their tenth wedding anniversary.
- 6 Respond to questions like: 'How's your family?'
- Ask your friend to give your regards to his parents.
- 8 Tell a friend that you had a pleasant time at a party.

Dialogue 2



Arranging to meet (Audio2; 49)

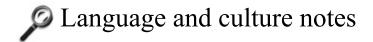
Ali (A) rings his friend Behrooz (B) to arrange an outing.

- A: سلام بهروز جان.
- B: سلام، بهبه! چه عجب از این طرفها! خانم (و) بچهها خوبند؟
 - A: همه خوبند. سلام میرسونند. شما چطورید؟
- B: بچهها خوبند، امّا خانمم یک کم سرش در د می کنه. رو کانا په دراز کشیده.
 - A: عصر خانمم میآد دیدنش.
 - B: خیلی ممنون. خب، چطور شد که یاد ما کردی؟
- ۵۵ کفتم زنگ بزنم حالتو بپرسم؛ در ضمن پیشنهاد کنم که، اگه حالشو داشته باشی، امشب بریم سینما.
- B: فکر بدی نیست. من هم امشب برنامهای ندارم. کجا همدیگهرو ببینیم؟
 - Α: ساعت ۸ جلوی سینما آسیا، خوبه?
 - B: عاليه.
 - A: به خانمت سلام برسون.
 - B: چشم، تو هم همینطور.
 - A: حتماً. فعلاً خدا حافظ.
 - B: قربانت.

- A: salām behruz jān.
- B: salām. bah-bah! ce ajab az in taraf(h)ā! xānom (o) baccehā xuband?
- A: hame xuband. salām miresunand. ŝomā ceto(u)rid?
- B: baccehā xuband, ammā xānomam yek kam sareŝ dard mikone. ru kānāpe derāz keŝide.
- A: asr xānomam miād didaneŝ.
- B: xeili mamnun. xob, ceto(u)r ŝod ke yād-e mā kardi?
- A: goftam zang bezanam hālet-o beporsam; dar zemn piŝnahād konam ke, age hāleŝ-o dāŝte bāŝi, emŝab berim sinemā.
- B: fekr-e badi nist. man ham emŝab barnāmeyi nadāram. kojā hamdiga-ro bebinim?
- A: sā'at-e haŝt jelo-ye sinemā āsiā, xube?
- B: ālie.
- A: be xānomet salām beresun.
- B: casm, to ham hamin-to(u)r.
- A: hatman, fe'lan xodā hāfez.
- B: qorbānet.
- A: Hello dear Behruz.

- B: Hello. Wow! What a surprise to hear from you in this part of the world! Are (your) wife and children well?
- A: Everyone's fine. They send their regards. How are you?
- B: The children are fine, but my wife has a slight headache. She's lying on the sofa.
- A: My wife will come to see her this evening.
- B: Thank you very much. So, what made you think of us? (lit How come you remembered us?)
- A: I thought (lit I told (myself)) I'd give you a ring to ask how you are; meanwhile to suggest that we go to the cinema tonight if you're in the mood.
- B: It's not a bad idea. I don't have a plan for tonight, either. Where shall we meet each other?
- A: 8 o'clock outside (lit in front of) the Asia Cinema, is that OK?
- B: *That's excellent*.
- A: Give my regards to your wife.
- B: By all means, you too.
- A: Certainly. Goodbye for now.
- B: Cheerio.

Vocabulary !ಎಎ bah-bah! Wow! How lovely! ajab surprise tarafhā sides, quarters, area kānāpe sofa, settee derāz keŝide دراز کشیده (she) is lying (down) دراز کشیدن (کشـ) derāz keŝidan (keŝ) to lie down early evening asr miād (she) will come ديدن didan to see; seeing didaneŝ to see her ceto(u)r ŝod how come (lit how it became) چطور شد yād-e mā kardi ياد ما كردي you remembered us yād-e . . . kardan (kon) to remember . . . گفتم goftam I told (myself); I thought zang bezanam زنگ بزنم (for me to) ring to ring (زنـ) zang zadan (zan) beporsam (for me to) ask/enquire porsidan (pors) to ask/enquire meanwhile dar zemn بيشنهاد piŝnahād suggestion, proposal پیشنهاد کردن (کنـ) piŝnahād kardan (kon) to suggest حال mood lit the mood for it hāleŝ-o حالشو dāŝte bāŝi داشته باشي (if you) have emŝab tonight, this evening fekr فكر thought, idea barnāme برنامه plan hamdige همدیگه each other bebinim (for us to) see didan (bin) to see دیدن (بینــ) excellent qorbānet قربانت cheerio (lit your sacrifice!)



Long time no see/hear from!

The expression چه عجب از این طرفها! ce ajab az in taraf(h)ā! literally means 'What

a surprise (to see you pass) through these quarters!' We say this to friends or relatives who visit or phone us after a long gap in communication. A common reply might be:

xāheŝmikonam. māke hamiŝe mozāhemim.

Please (don't say this). We're always troubling you, for sure.

Note the special use of **ke** 'which/that/who' used here to add emphasis. It produces an effect similar to 'surely' or 'for sure' in English.

'I'm sitting' v. 'I'm eating'

Here is an exciting piece of grammar! Verbs needed:

```
neŝastan (ŝin) to sit down نشستن (شینــ) معردن (خور) to eat
```

In English, both verbs 'to sit' and 'to eat' are usually put in the present continuous form to describe a current situation, as in: I'm sitting on the settee.

(b) I'm eating a sandwich.

A purely grammatical equivalent for (a) and (b) in Persian would be:

man dāram ru-ye kānāpe miŝinam.

man dāram sāndevic mixoram.

(See U6D1 for the present continuous.)

In terms of meaning, however, while (B) is an acceptable equivalent, (A) is not. This is because (A) means 'I'm in the process of sitting down', i.e. the act of 'sitting' has not been completed yet. One explanation is that the verb **neŝastan** means 'to sit down', i.e. 'to get into a seated position'. Thus, when it is put into a continuous form, it means the person is still in the process of doing the action. To produce the equivalent of 'I'm sitting' in Persian, we actually say 'I have sat down', to show that the act of 'sitting' has been completed. (See U9D2 for present perfect tense.) Compare:

(a) من نشستهام. (col neŝastam) من نشستهام.

I'm sitting. (lit I've sat down.)

.man dāram miŝinam من دارم مىشينم. (b)

I'm sitting down. (i.e. I'm in the process of sitting down.)

There are quite a few other verbs which fall into this category. Among them are:

```
istādan (ist) to stand up
(خواب) خوابیدن (خواب)
xābidan (xāb) (to go) to sleep
puŝidan (puŝ) to wear, to put on
derāz keŝidan (keŝ) to lie down
```

Examples:

```
rezā xābide (ast).
```

Reza is sleeping. (lit Reza has gone to sleep.)

Negative:

```
rezā xābide (ast).
```

Reza isn't sleeping. (*lit* Reza has not gone to sleep.) Alternatively, we can use the word $\dot{\mathbf{xab}}$ meaning 'asleep':

Here is a sentence from the preceding dialogue:

```
ru kānāpe derāz keŝide.
```

She's lying on the sofa.



Complete each sentence with the correct form of the verb in brackets.

1 **unhākenār-e panjare** _____. (istādan) They are standing by the window.

	بچّهها (خوابیدن)	-٢
2	baccehā (xābidan)	
	The children are sleeping.	
	بهترین لباسشو (پوشیدن)	-٣
3	behtarin lebāseŝ-o (puŝidan) He's wearing his best clothes.	
	روی تخت (دراز کشیدن)	-4
4	ru-ye taxt (derāz keŝidan) I'm lying on the bed.	
	كجا؟ (نشستن)	-۵
5	kojā? (neŝastan)	
	Where are you sitting?	
TT		

How to say: 'I was sitting on the settee.'

For this, we say the equivalent of 'I had sat on the settee' (see past perfect tense in U10D2). Thus:

```
روى كانايه نشسته بودم. ru-ye kānāpe neŝaste budam.
```

The negative form is:

```
. ru-ye kānāpe nan(e)ŝaste budam.
```

I was not sitting on the settee. (*lit* I had not sat on the settee.) Exercise 6



Change the sentences in the previous exercise into the past tense. Example:

1 unhākenār-e panjare istāde budand.

They were standing by the window.

Are you in the mood for ...?

Here is the expression we need:

to be in the mood for ...; to feel like doing ... (*lit* to have the mood for ...) This expression is used mostly in questions or negatives:

emruz hāl-e futbāl (rā) nadāram.

I'm not in the mood for football today.

emŝab hāl-e raftan be sinemārānadāram.

Tonight I'm not in the mood for going to the cinema.

Note how we can say the same sentence with the verb in the subjunctive form:

emŝab hālaŝrānadāram be sinemāberavam.

Tonight I'm not in the mood to go to the cinema.

A colloquial form for the above sentence is:

emŝab hāleŝ-o nadāram beram sinemā.

In the preceding dialogue, A says:

```
age hāleŝ-o dāŝte bāŝi . . .
```

If you're in the (right) mood for it ... (or: If you feel like it ...) $\sqrt{}$



Exercise 7

Can you translate these sentences into English?

1 hāleŝ-o dāri emŝab berim konsert?

2 na, emŝab hāleŝ-o nadāram. bāŝe fardāŝab.

حالشو دارید امروز بعدازظهر بریم شنا؟

3 hāleŝ-o dārid emruz ba'd-az-zohr berim ŝenā?

How to say: 'to go/come to see someone'

Here are the patterns:

be didan-e 'someone' raftan (r) to go to see 'someone'

be didan-e 'someone' umadan (ā) to come to see 'someone'

Examples:

```
.diruz be didan-e ali raftam دیروز به دیدن علی رفتم.
```

Yesterday I went to see Ali.

.diruz be didan-e u raftam ديروز به ديدن او رفتم.

Yesterday I went to see him.

*.diruz be didaneŝ raftam.

Yesterday I went to see him.

** دیروز رفتم دیدنش.**

Yesterday I went to see him.

من اومد. diruz ali be didan-e man umad.

Yesterday Ali came to see me.

*. eيروز على به ديدنم اومد. diruz ali be didanam umad.

Yesterday Ali came to see me.

Yesterday Ali came to see me.

*More colloquial	
**Most colloquial	
Here is the form used in the above dialogue:	
عصر خانمم میآد دیدنش.	
asr xānomam miād didaneŝ.	
My wife will come to see her this evening.	
This is a shortened form for:	
عصر خانمم به دیدن او میآد.	
asr xānomam be didan-e u miād.	
Exercise 8	
Rewrite these sentences in colloquial form, endings, see U8D1.) ديدن او رفتم. ← ديروز رفتم ديدنش.	
1 diruz be didan-e u raftam. → diruz raft	am didaneŝ.
Yesterday I went to see him.	
	۲- دیشب به دیدن من اومد. ←
2 diŝab be didan-e man umad. →	<u></u>
Last night he came to see me.	
	۳- امشب به دیدن اونها میرم. ←
3 emŝab be didan-e unhāmiram. →	
Tonight I'll go to see them.	
	۴- فردا به دیدن شما میآم. ←

 \triangle آخر هفتهی آینده به دیدن دوستهامون میریم. \rightarrow

fardābe didan-e ŝomāmiām. → _____

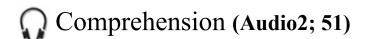
Tomorrow I'll come to see you.

4



Can you say these in Persian?

- 1 He's lying on the bed and watching TV.
- 2 I'm wearing my Sunday best. What are you wearing?
- 3 Please be quiet; the children are sleeping.
- 4 They are standing by the fire and drinking hot chocolate.
- 5 My brother is watching TV and my mother is sitting beside him.
- 6 Last weekend my Iranian friend came to see me.
- 7 Yesterday I went to see my uncle.
- 8 Do you feel like going to the theatre tonight?
- 9 Do you have any plans for this evening?
- 10 When and where shall we meet?



Marjan has just received this letter from Zahra.

مرجان عزيز

سلام. امیدوارم حال تو و خانواده خوب باشد. خیلی ممنون از هدیه ی قشنگی که برایم فرستادی. حیف که در جشن تولدم نبودی. جایت خالی بود. من هم سالگرد ازدواجت را به تو و شوهرت تبریک می گویم. الآن که دارم این نامه را برایت می نویسم، پرویز روی تخت دراز کشیده و (به) موسیقی گوش می کند و سودابه هم کنار میز ایستاده و مرا (من را) تماشا می کند. می دانم که با داشتن بچه ی کوچک، همیشه کمبود وقت داری، ولی اگر حال نامه نوشتن را داشتی، خوش حال می شویم دستخط زیبایت را ببینیم. پرویز و سودابه سلام می رسانند. سلام من را هم به شوهرت برسان و دختر قشنگت را هم ببوس. به امید دیدار.

marjān-e aziz

salām. omidvāram hāl-e to va xānevāde xub bāŝad. xeili mamnun az hedye-ye qaŝangi ke barāyam ferestādi. heif ke dar jaŝn-e tavallodam nabudi. jāyat xāli bud. man ham sālgard-e ezdevājat rā be to va ŝouharat tabrik miguyam. al'ān ke dāram in nāme rā barāyat minevisam, parviz ru-ye taxt derāz keŝide va (be) musiqi guŝ mikonad va sudābe ham kenār-e miz istāde va marā (man rā) tamāŝā mikonad. midānam ke bā dāŝtan-e bacce-ye kucek, hamiŝe kambud-e vaqt dāri, vali agar hāl-e nāme-neveŝtan rā dāŝti, xoŝ-hāl miŝavim dastxatt-e zibāyat rā bebinim. parviz va sudābe salām miresānand. salām-e man rā ham be ŝouharat beresān va doxtar-e qaŝangat rā ham bebus. be omid-e didār.

zahrā – 23 ŝahrivar

- 1 Is their relationship formal/informal? Provide evidence.
- Why is Zahra thanking Marjan?
- 3 What regret is she expressing?
- 4 How do we know Zahra has had a pleasant experience?
- 5 What do we know about Marjan's family?
- 6 What is Zahra congratulating Marjan on?
- 7 Who was with Zahra when she was writing this letter?
- 8 What were they doing at the time?

9 What compliment is Zahra paying Marjan?

Unit Seventeen

کار و زبانهای خارجی

kār va zabānhā-ye xāreji

Business and foreign languages

In this unit we will look at how to:



- arrange a business meeting (date and time) end a telephone
- conversation or personal call politely express disagreement
- use the Iranian calendar (week, months, seasons) talk about the skills
- or things you can or cannot do say how long you have been doing something

Dialogue 1



A business appointment (Audio2; 52)

Mr Amiri's secretary (A) rings Mr Karimi's secretary (K) to arrange a meeting between the two business counterparts.

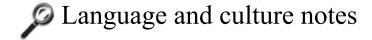
```
A: ببخشید، دفتر آقای کریمی؟
کا: بله، من منشیشون هستم. بفرمایید.
A: سلام، من از دفتر آقای امیری تلفن می کنم.
کا: سلام خانم، چه فرمایشی دارید؟
A: آقای امیری مایل بودند با آقای کریمی ملاقات کنند.
کا: اجازه بدید تقویمشونو نگاه کنم. برای کی میخواند؟
A: هرچه زودتر بهتر. ترجیحاً این هفته.
کا: این هفته که غیرممکنه، متأسفانه. هفتهی آینده چطوره؟
A: چه روزی؟
کا: سهشنبه ۲۴ فروردین.
کا: سه تا چهار بعدازظهر خوبه؟
کا: سه تا چهار بعدازظهر خوبه؟
کا: خواهش می کنم.
کا: خواهش می کنم.
```

- A: bebaxŝid, daftar-e āqā-ye karimi?
- K: bale, man monŝiŝun hastam. befarmāyid.
- A: salām, man az daftar-e āqā-ye amiri telefon mikonam.
- K: salām xānom, ce farmāyeŝi dārid?
- A: āqā-ye amiri māyel budand bā āqā-ye karimi molāqāt konand.
- к: ejāze bedid taqvimeŝun-o negāh konam. barāye kei mixānd?
- A: har-ce zudtar behtar. tarjihan in hafte.
- K: in hafte ke qeir-e-momkene, mota(`)assefāne. hafte-ye āyande ceto(u)re?
- A: ce ruzi?
- K: se-ŝanbe bist o cahār-e farvardin.
- A: xube, ce sā`ati?
- K: se tā cahār-e ba`d-az-zohr xube?
- A: bale, xube. xeili mamnun.

- к: xāheŝ mikonam.
- A: Excuse me, (is that) Mr Karimi's office?
- K: Yes, I'm his secretary. Please go ahead.
- A: Hello, I'm calling from Mr Amiri's office.
- K: Hello madam, what can I do for you?
- A: Mr Amiri would like to have a meeting with Mr Karimi.
- K: Let me have a look in his diary. When does he want it for?
- A: The sooner the better. Preferably this week.
- K: As far as this week is concerned, it is impossible, I'm afraid. How about next week?
- A: What day?
- K: Tuesday 24 Farvardin.
- A: That's fine, what time?
- K: Will 3 to 4 in the afternoon be OK?
- A: Yes, it's fine. Much obliged.
- K: You're welcome.

AB Vocabulary

l	دفتر	daftar	office	
	منشى	monŝi	secretary business (lit command) inclined meeting to meet with	
	فرمايش	farmāyeŝ		
	مايل	mäyel		
	ملاقات	molāqāt		
	با ملاقات کردن (کنــ)	bāmolāqāt kardan (kon)		
	اجازه	ejāze	permission	
	اجازه بديد	ejāze bedid	allow (me) to allow/let (lit to give permission)	
	اجازه دادن (د)	ejāze dādan (d)		
	تقويم	taqvim	diary, calendar	
	نگاه کنم	negāh konam	(for me to) look to look when the sooner the better	
	نگاہ کردن (کنے)	negāh kardan (kon)		
	کی	kei		
	هرچه زودتر بهتر	har-ce zudtar behtar		
	غيرممكن	qeir-e-momken	impossible	
	متأستفانه	mota`assefāne	unfortunately	
	فروردين	farvardin	Farvardin (first month in Iranian calendar)	



What can I do for you?

For the above expression we normally use the word فرمایش **farmāyeŝ** 'command':

```
farmā<u>ye</u>ŝi فرمایشی
                         a command
ce farmāyeŝi dārid? چه فرمایشی دارید؟
```

What can I do for you?

(lit What a command do you have?)

Also note the following exchange which is used in formal situations when (a)ving someone (leave-taking) or ending a telephone conversation: عنه، فرمایشی ندارید؟ xob, farmāyeŝi nadārid? OK, do you not have any (other) business with me?

(b) عرضى ندارم. arzi nadāram, mot(a)ŝakkeram.

No (lit I have no submission to make), thank you.

Important Note: (a) is used by the visitor or caller. Also, make sure that you do not switch subjects! We always use (a) in reference to others and (b) in reference to ourselves.

- A much less formal exchange used casually between friends would be: خب، با من (دیگه) کاری نداری؟

xob, bā man (dige) kāri nadāri?

- (lit) OK, do you not have any (more) business with me?
- **na, mersi.** No, thanks.

Exercise 1



- You have been talking to a business counterpart on the phone. How do you end the conversation politely?
- 2 You have been visiting an Iranian partner. How do you take leave politely?
- 3 How would you respond in either of the above situations?

Special use of 45 ke

The generic meaning of **ke** is 'that', 'which', 'who'. However, in the following examples the word **ke** means 'as far as (the stated person/thing) is concerned'. Consider the difference created by the presence of **ke** in examples (**b**) and (d) below: من با این پیشنهاد مخالفم

man bā in pisnahād moxālefam.

(b) I'm opposed to this proposal. (Or : I disagree with ...) من که با این پیشنهاد مخالفم. man ke bā in piŝnahād moxālefam.

As far as I'm concerned, I'm opposed to this proposal.

Or: As for me, I disagree with this proposal.

این هفته غیرممکنه. (c)

in hafte qeir-e-momkene.

(lit) This week is impossible.

این هفته که غیرممکنه. (d)

in hafte ke qeir-e-momkene.

As far as this week is concerned, it's impossible.

Example (d) above appeared in Dialogue 1.



Can you translate these sentences into English?

جای ما که خوبه.

1 jā-ye mā ke xube.

۲- پول که مسئلهای نیست.

2 pul ke mas`aleyi nist.

۳- من که از مکانیک اتومبیل هیچی نمی دونم.

3 man ke az mekānik-e otomobil hicci nemidunam.

The Iranian calendar (Audio2; 53)

The Iranian year has 365 days and normally begins on 21 March. It has 12 months: 1–6 have 31 days each; 7–11 have 30 days each; month 12 has 29 days except in leap years when it has 30 days. Here is the full list:

بهار bahār spring:	1	فروردين	farvardin Farvardin
	2	ارديبهشت	ordibehest Ordibehesht
	3	خرداد	xordād Khordad
tābestān تابستان	4	تير	tir Tir
summer:	5	مرداد	mordād Mordad
	6	شهريور	ŝahrivar Shahrivar
پاییز pāyiz autumn:	7	مهر	mehr Mehr
5 15	8	آبان	ābān Aban
	9	آذر	āzar Azar
zemestān زمستان	10	دى	dei Dey
winter:	11	بهمن	bahman Bahman
	12	اسفند	esfand Esfand

March 2010	144	ربيعالثاني ١۴٣١		اسفند ۱۳۸۸
Saturday	20	۴	79	شنبه
		صنعت نفت - تعطيل	روز ملی شدن	
Sunday	21	ز - تعطیل ۵	۱ عید نوروز	يكشنبه
		فروردین ۱۳۸۹		
Monday	22	۶	۲	دوشنبه
Tuesday	23	٧	٣	سەشنبە
Wednesday	24	٨	۴	چهارشنبه
Thursday	25	٩	۵	پنجشنبه
Friday	26	1 •	۶	جمعه

Exercise 3



1 You want to visit Iran next spring. Can you identify the months?

- 2 Your Iranian friend is visiting you during the summer. Name the months.
- 3 You want to go on a skiing holiday in Iran. Name the months.
- 4 Schools open in the first month of autumn. Name the month.

Exercise 4



Can you say these in Persian?

- Excuse me, is this the Koorosh Company? Yes, what can I do for you?
- 2 Where are you phoning from? I'm phoning from Iran.
- As for me, I know nothing about computers. 3
- I'll see you next week/summer/spring. 4
- Next winter I'm going to Iran to ski. 5
- Last autumn, my Iranian friend came to London. 6
- I'd like to meet you. When? 7
- The sooner the better. How about this afternoon? 8
- 9 That's excellent. What time?
- Is 3 p.m. any good? 10
- That's fine. I'll see you at 3, then. 11



A job interview (Audio2; 54)

Peter Jackson (J) is attending a job interview for a vacancy with an Iranian

- c: چند تا زبان بلدید؟
- u: انگلیسی، که زبان مادریمه، و فرانسه. کمی هم فارسی بلدم.
 - شکستهنفسی می کنید. فارسیتون خیلی خوبه.
 - الطف دارید.
 - c: چند وقته (که) فارسی میخونید؟
- د: رویهم پنج ساله که فارسی یاد می گیرم: سه سال در لندن و دو سال هم تو آمریکا.
 - تا حالا ترجمه کردهاید؟
 - کتاب ترجمه نکردهام، امّا مکاتبات بازرگانی ترجمه کردهام.
- c: كدوم براتون راحتتره: ترجمه از فارسى به انگليسى يا بالعكس؟
- انگلیسی به فارسی برام آسون تره؛ مخصوصاً اگه فرهنگ لغت در دست سی نباشه.
 - c: چرا میخواید برای این شرکت کار کنید؟
- ن به دو دلیل: اوّل اینکه به کار ترجمه علاقه دارم. دوّم اینکه دوست دارم چند سال در ایران زندگی کنم تا با فرهنگ ایران از نزدیک آشنا بشم.
 - خب، شما اگه سؤالی دارید، بفرمایید.
 - نا بله، تو این فرمی که به من دادید، یک جمله هست که نمیفهمم.
 ممکنه برام به انگلیسی ترجمهاش کنید، لطفاً؟
 - سعی می کنم.

- c: cand tā zabān baladid?
- J: engelisi, ke zabān-e mādarime, va farānse. kami ham fārsi baladam.
- c: ŝekaste-nafsi mikonid. fārsitun xeili xube.
- J: lotf dārid.
- c: cand vaqte (ke) fārsi mixunid?
- J: ruye-ham panj sāle ke fārsi yād migiram: se sāl dar landan va do sāl ham tu āmrikā.
- c: tā hālā tarjome kard(e)id?
- J: ketāb tarjome nakard(e)am, ammā mokātebāt-e bāzargāni tarjome kard(e)am.
- c: kodum barātun rāhattare: tarjome az fārsi be engelisi yā bel`aks?
- J: engelisi be fārsi barām āsuntare, maxsusan age farhang-e loqat dar dastras nabāŝe.

- c: cerā mixāid barāye in ŝerkat kār konid?
- J: be do dalil: avval inke be kār-e tarjome alāqe dāram. dovvom inke dust dāram cand sāl dar irān zendegi konam tā bā farhang-e irān az nazdik āŝ(e)nā beŝam.
- c: xob, ŝomā age so`āli dārid, befarmāyid.
- J: bale, tu in formi ke be man dādid, yek jomle hast ke nemifahmam. momkene barām be engelisi tarjom(e)aŝ konid, lotfan?
- c: sa'y mikonam.
- C: How many languages do you speak?
- J: English, which is my mother tongue, and French. I also know a bit of Persian.
- C: You're being modest. Your Persian is very good.
- J: That's (very) kind of you.
- c: How long have you been studying Persian?
- J: I've been learning Persian for five years in total: three years in London and also two years in America.
- C: Have you done (any) translation so far?
- J: I haven't translated any books, but I have translated business correspondence.
- C: Which is easier for you: translating from Persian into English or vice versa?
- J: English into Persian is easier for me, particularly if a dictionary is not available.
- C: Why do you want to work for this company?
- J: For two reasons: first, I'm interested in translation work. Second, I'd like to live in Iran for a few years in order to get to know Iranian culture from close quarters.
- C: Right, if you have any questions, please go ahead.
- J: Yes, in this form which you gave me, there is one sentence that I don't understand. Would you translate it into English for me, please?



Vocabulary

zabān language زبان مادری zabān-e mādari mother tongue balad able (to do the stated thing) فارسى بلدم fārsi baladam I can speak Persian sekaste-nafsi kardan to be modest شکستەنفسى كردن (كنـ) (kon) (self-deprecate) cand vaqte how long is it چند وقته mixunid you are studying مىخونيد to study/read xundan (xun) خوندن (خونــ) in total ruye-ham روىهم panj sāle ke it's five years that پنج ساله که yād migiram I'm learning یاد می گیرم یاد گرفتن (گیر) yād gereftan (gir) to learn tarjome translation ترجمه tarjome kardan (kon) to translate ترجمه کردن (کنـ) مكاتبات mokātebāt correspondence بازرگانی bāzargāni commercial, business barātun for you براتون rāhat easy, comfortable بالعكس belaks vice versa barām for me برام آسون āsun easy

maxsusan مخصوصاً particularly farhang-e loqat فرهنگ لغت dictionary dar dastras در دسترس available dalil دليل reason alāge علاقه interest be . . . alāqe dāŝtan به ... علاقه داشتن (دار) to be interested in . . . (lit to have interest (dār) in . . .) zendegi زندگی life zendegi kardan (kon) to live زندگی کردن (کنہ) in order to farhang فرهنگ culture az nazdik از نزدیک lit from near/close; from close quarters āŝ(e)nā آشنا familiar لاسي آشنا شدن (شــ) bā...āŝ(e)nā ŝodan to get to know... (lit to become familiar with ...) jomle حمله sentence I don't understand nemifahmam نمے فہمہ (فهمـ) fahmidan (fahm) to understand sa`y mikonam سعے مے کنم I'll try sa'y kardan (kon) سعى كردن (كنــ) to try

Language and culture notes



How to say: 'Can you do X?'

The key word used is "" balad, which means 'able to do' (the stated thing). It is used with the verb 'to be' or 'to become'.

```
... من ... بلد هستم. man . . . balad hastam. I can do . . . man tenis balad hastam.
```

I can play tennis. (*lit* I am able to do/play tennis.)

man tenis baladam.

(Reduced) I can play tennis.

Negative forms:

I can't play tennis.

man ham hanuz xub balad naŝod(e)am.

I haven't yet learned (it) properly, either.

Since this is a highly productive pattern, let us assume that we can all play tennis:

man tenis baladam. I can play tennis. ا can play tennis. You (inf) can play

tennis.

u tenis balade. He/she can play او تنيس بلده.

tennis.

mā tenis baladim. We can play tennis. ما تنيس بلديم. \$omā tenis baladid. You can play tennis. https://www.nha.com/restrictions/

More examples:

9 پیانو بلدید: Can you play the

piano?

\$enā baladid? Can you swim? رانندگی بلدید؟ بقnandegi baladid? Can you drive? Can you drive? دید؟ معلقه السبسواری بلدید؟

riding?

نه، اسبسواری بلد نیستم.

na, asb-savāri balad nistam.

No, I can't do horse riding.

ammā docarxe-savāri baladam.

But I can do cycling.

albatte, xeili xub baladam!

Of course, I know (it) very well!

Exercise 5



At a store in Tehran, you have been asked to fill in a form. Ask an Iranian: If he/she speaks English.

2 If he/she can translate a sentence that you don't understand.

Exercise 6



Can you translate these sentences into English?

ا- من بدمینتون خوب بلدم.

1 man badminton xub baladam.

۲- شما ويولن بلديد؟

2 ŝomā violon baladid?

۳- برادرم شنا خوب بلده.

3 barādaram ŝenā xub balade.

۴- ما فارسى خوب بلديم.

4 mā fārsi xub baladim.

۵- شما رانندگی بلدید؟

5 **somā rānandegi baladid?**

6 man asb-savāri xub balad nistam.

7 pedaram mekānik-e otomobil kami balade.

How to say: 'I've been learning Persian for 5 years.'

Literally, we say the equivalent of: 'It is five years that I am learning Persian.' (See present continuous tense in U6D1.) Thus:

I've been studying/learning Persian for five years.

The word 2 **ke** 'that' is often dropped in colloquial Persian. To emphasise the length of time something has been going on, we use the verb (**dār**) 'to have' as an auxiliary verb:

se sāle (ke) dāre akkāsi mixune.

He's been learning photography for three (long?) years.

(Perhaps suggesting that 'He still can't take a good picture!')

The verb خوندن (خون) **xundan (xun)** also means 'to sing', as in:

cahār sā'ate (ke) dāre mixune!

He's been singing for four hours (non-stop)! (Suggesting admiration or boredom!) Also note these forms (explanations given in U16D2 may shed some (ight on examples a-c): يك ساعته كه اينجا نشستهام.

yek sā`ate ke injā neŝast(e)am.

I've been sitting here for an hour.

do sā`ate ke injā istād(e)am.

I've been standing here for two hours.

ده ساعته که خوابه. (c)

dah sā`ate ke xābe.

He's been sleeping/asleep for ten hours.

سه ساعته که منتظره. (d)

se sā`ate ke montazere.

He's been waiting for three hours.

چند وقته که اینجایید؟ (e)

cand vaqte ke injāyid?

How long have you been here?



Match a letter with a number.

1	که اینجاییم.	se سه ساله	sāle ke	injāyim.	[d]

4 مىخونى. دارى آلمانى مىخونى. cahār sāle ke

dāri ālmāni mixuni. ^{.ه ساله} که تو لندن زندگی میکنیم. dah sāle ke

dah sāle ke [] tu landan zendegi mikonim.

6 سه ساعته که اینجا نشستهام. se sā`ate ke injā [] neŝast(e)am.

7 دو ساعته که اینجا ایستادهام. do sā`ate ke injā [] istād(e)am.

- (a) I've been standing here for two hours.
- (b) We've been living in London for ten years.
- (c) He's been sleeping for five hours.

- (d) We've been here for three years.
- (e) We've been waiting for two hours.
- (f) I've been sitting here for three hours.
- (g) You've been learning German for four years.



Read Dialogue 2 above and answer these questions. (Try not to look at the English translations!) Can you spot an instance of modesty or understatement?

- 2 Who is complimenting whom and on what?
- 3 Can you identify an example of irony?
- 4 What does J say, which goes against the accepted norms in translation?
- 5 How does he qualify this?

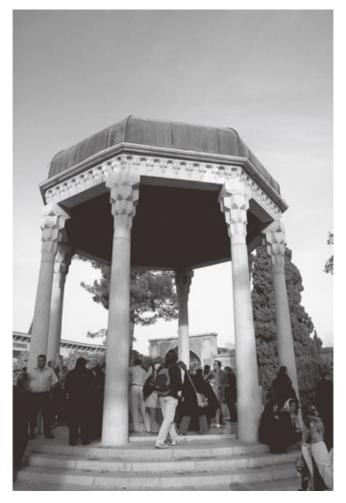
Exercise 9



Can you say these in Persian?

- 1 Can you speak Spanish? No, I can speak French.
- 2 Can he play the piano? Yes, he's a good pianist.
- 3 Can you ride a motorbike? No, but I can ride a bicycle.
- 4 Can you translate this sentence into English/Persian for me, please?
- 5 How long have you been standing here?
- 6 How long have you been sitting here?
- 7 How long have you been waiting?
- 8 How long have you been learning English?
- 9 How long have you been living in England?
- 10 How long have you been working for this company?

11 I have been learning Persian for two years.



Hafez Tomb, Shiraz. Photograph by Donal O'Leary.

Comprehension (Audio2; 56)

Following the interview in Dialogue 2 above, Peter Jackson received this letter from the Iranian company.

انتشارات حافظ تهران، خیابان حافظ، پلاک ۲۹۰ تلفن: ۳۸۰۱۵۷ فکس: ۳۸۰۱۵۷ ایمیل: info@haafezchaap.com

تاریخ: ۱۶ آبان ۱۳۸۹

جناب آقای جکسون

با سلام و تشکر از اینکه در مصاحبهی روز شنبه ۱۵ آبان ۱۳۸۹ شرکت کردید، از شما دعوت می شود در روز شنبه ۲۹ آبان ۱۳۸۹، ساعت هشت و نیم صبح به دفتر این شرکت مراجعه فرمایید. مدیر شرکت مایل است با شما دربارهی جزئیّات کار، میزان حقوق و سایر شرایط استخدام مذاکره کند.

اگر وقت پیشنهادی برای شما مناسب نیست، لطفاً هرچه زودتر با شمارهی تلفن یا ایمیل فوق تماس بگیرید و موضوع را به منشی شرکت اطّلاع دهید. در ضمن، فرم پیوست را پر کنید و حدّ اکثر تا تاریخ ۲۶ آبان ۱۳۸۹ به آدرس این شرکت ارسال فرمایید. ارادتمند

enteŝārāt-e hāfez tehrān, xiābān-e hāfez, pelāk-e 790 telefon: 380156 faks: 380157

imeil: info@haafezchaap.com

tārix: 16 ābān 1389

jenāb-e āqā-ye jakson

bā salām va taŝakkor az inke dar mosāhebe-ye ruz-e ŝanbe pānzdah-e ābān-e hezār o sisad o haŝtād o noh ŝerkat kardid, az ŝomā da`vat miŝavad dar ruz-e ŝanbe bist o noh-e ābān-e hezār o sisad o haŝtād o noh, sā`at-e haŝt o nim-e sobh be daftar-e in ŝerkat morāje`e farmāyid. modir-e ŝerkat māyel ast bā ŝomā dar-bāre-ye joz`iyāt-e kār, mizān-e hoquq va sāyer-e ŝarāyet-e estexdām mozākere konad.

agar vaqt-e piŝnahādi barāye ŝomā monāseb nist, lotfan har-ce zudtar bā ŝomāre-ye telefon yā imeil-e fouq tamās begirid va mouzu` rā be monŝi-e ŝerkat ettelā` dahid. dar zemn, form-e peivast rā por konid va hadd-e aksar tā tārix-e

bist o ŝeŝ-e ābān-e hezār o sisad o haŝtād o noh be ādres-e in ŝerkat ersāl farmāyid.

erādatmand

ehsān-e ja`fari

- 1 When was J interviewed?
- 2 How long after the interview was this letter written?
- What is the writer asking J to do and why?
- 4 What option is the writer giving J?
- 5 If J decides to choose a different option, how can he inform the writer?
- 6 What deadline is given and what is it about?

Key to the exercises

Also included are:

- (a) An English translation of the Listening Comprehension piece at the end of each lesson.
- (b) Answers to the reading exercise matching the English-Persian equivalents on pp. xxxvi–xxxvii.

Unit 1

Exercise 1

1b, 2c, 3a, 4f, 5d, 6e

Exercise 2

سفر بهخیر. asr be-xeir 3 عصر بهخیر. ruz be-xeir 2 روز بهخیر. safar be-xeir 3 ضغیر. 2 zohr be-xeir

```
man xoŝ-hāl hastam. I am happy.

You (inf) are happy.

you (inf) are happy.

He/She is happy.

i an xoŝ-hāl ast.

It/That is happy.

It/That is happy.

ware happy.

ware happy.

ware happy.

ware happy.

An xoŝ-hāl hastim.

i an xoŝ-hāl hastid.

They are happy.

They are happy.
```

- سلام أقا. من پيتر براون هستم. 1 salām āgā. man piter berāwn hastam.
- آها بله، این پیغام برای شماست. 2 āhā bale, in peiqām barāye ŝomāst.
- lin hedye barāye ŝomāst.
- این هدیه برای آقای احمدی است. 4 in hedye barāye āqā-ye ahmadi ast.
- این بسته برای خانم احمدی است. 5 in baste barāye xānom-e ahmadi ast.
- ایشون خانم احمدی هستند. 6 iŝun xānom-e ahmadi hastand.
- ایشون آقای کامران هستند. 7 isun āqā-ye kāmrān hastand.
- 8 شما خانم جانسون هستيد؟ \$omā xānom-e jānson hastid?

Comprehension

- A: Hello sir.
- B: Hello madam. Good afternoon. What can I do for you?
- A: Good afternoon. (Please) forgive me, are you Mr Kamran?
- B: Yes, what can I do for you?
- A: I am Ahmadi.
- B: Ah yes, Ms Ahmadi, this ticket is for you. This message is also for you.
- A: Thanks very much.
- B: Have a good journey.
- A: Thanks. Goodbye.
- B: Goodbye.
- 1 Late afternoon 2 If B is Mr Kamran 3 Ms Ahmadi 4 A ticket and a message 5 A good journey for A

Unit 2

Exercise 1

(من) خوش حالم. (تو) خوش حالى. (او) خوش حاله.	(man) xoŝ-hālam. (to) xoŝ-hāli. (u) xoŝ-hāle.	I'm happy. You're happy. (sing, inf) He/She's happy.
(اون) خوشحاله.	(un) xoŝ-hāle.	It/That's happy.
(ماً) خوشُ حاليم.	(mā) xoŝ-hālim.	We're happy.
(شما) خوش حاليد.	(ŝomā) xoŝ-hālid.	You're happy. (pl/f)
(اونها) خُوشِ حالند.	(unhā) xoŝ-hāland.	They're happy.

Exercise 2

```
nistam 2 نیستی nistim 3 نیستی nisti 4 نیستی nistam 2 نیستی nistid 4 نیست nistid 4 نیست nistid 6 نیست
```

Exercise 3

```
      1
      $ edecouri?

      2
      $ edecuri?

      3
      $ yek kam xast(e)am.

      3
      $ edecive?

      4
      $ equive.

      5
      $ equive.

      6
      $ equive.

    <
```

1 ماشین من māŝin-e man 2 اسم او telefon-e man 3 تلفن من esm-e u 4 كامپيوتر اونها āpārtemān-e mā 5 كامپيوتر اونها kāmpiuter-e unhā

Exercise 5

ماشین مشکی 6 bābā-ye xub بابای خوب 2 bābā-ye xub فیلم بد 1 māŝin-e meŝki بابای موی بور 4 maŝin-e meŝki باباس شیک 5 mu-ye bur موی بور 4 bu-ye xub موی بلند 7 wu-ye boland فوبه کوب 6 xune-ye bozorg

Exercise 6

1 ماشينم māŝinam 2 اسمش telefonam 3 اسمش esmeŝ 4 كامپيوترشون āpārtemānemun 5 كامپيوترشون kāmpiutereŝun

Exercise 7

a ما هم همینطور. 2 man ham hamin-tour من هم همینطور. 3 mā ham hamin-tour بیتر هم همینطور. 3 piter ham hamin-tour و هم همینطور. 4 mā ham hamin-tour من هم همینطور. 6 man ham hamin-tour من هم همینطور. 7 mā ham hamin-tour من هم همینطور. 8 mā ham hamin-tour من هم همینطور. 8 mā ham hamin-tour

Exercise 8

1 اسمتون esmetun 2 آدرسش adreseŝ 3 اسمتون melliyateŝun 4 تاریخ تولّدتون tārix-e tavallodetun 5 تاریخ تولّدتون \$omāre(-ye) telefonetun

غوبند، مرسی. kāretun cie? مادرتون چطورند؟ xuband, mersi 2 کارتون چیه؟ kāretun cie? دکترم. doktoram دکترم. أو kāretun cie? ممنون. doktoram أيارتمانتون قشنگه. 3 āpārtemānetun qaŝange أيارتمانتون قشنگه. 3 in kie? أون برادرمه. أون كيه؟ 4 un barādarame أين كيه؟ ماشينتون كجاست؟ 6 māŝinetun kojāst? أينجاست. مال شما كجاست؟ 6 māl-e somā kojāst? أينجاست. مال شما كجاست؟ 1 māŝin māl-e kie? مال منه. māl-e mane.

Comprehension

A: Hello. I am Ahmad Kazemi.

B: Hello, how're you?

A: I'm fine, thanks. How're you?

B: I'm not bad, thanks. Where are you?

A: London.

B: Which hotel?

A: Tehran Hotel.

B: Are you alone?

A: No, my father, mother, sister and brother are also here.

B: Where's your hotel?

A: Regent Street. Near Oxford Circus.

B: How's the hotel?

A: It's not bad. It's small but nice.

1 London 2 Father, mother, sister and brother 3 Tehran Hotel 4 Regent Street, near Oxford Circus 5 Small but nice/pretty

Unit 3

```
1 تهرانى tehrāni 2 پارىسى pārisi اندنى pārisi عرانى 1 maŝhadi 5 اصفهانى tehrāni 6 مشهدى itāliāyi
```

شما متأهّل هستيد؟ 2 \$śomā irāni hastid شما ايراني هستيد؟ 1 \$śomā mota ahhel hastid محلّ تولّدتون كجاست؟ 3 #mahall-e karetun kojāst محلّ كارتون كجاست؟ 4 #xānometun/souharetun kojāst خانمتون / شوهرتون كجايي هستند؟ 5 #sanometun/souharetun kojāyi hastand مركرميهاتون چيه؟ 6 #sargarmihātun cie

Exercise 3

روزنامهها 3 māŝinhā ماشينها 2 māŝinhā آپارتمانها 1 ruznāmehā 4 دوستان 1 irāniān/ايرانيها irānihā 5 دوستان 2 dustān/ خوشروها/ xoŝ-ruyān خوشروها/ xoŝ-ruyān

Exercise 4

من لندنی/منحستری ? somā kojāyi hastid? هستید؟ من ایتالیایی/المانی 3 man landani/mancesteri hastam هستم. من ایتالیایی/المانی 3 man itāliāyi/ālmāni/espāniāyi/farānsavi hastam اسپانیایی/فرانسوی هستم. محل تولّدم لندن/پاریس/نیویورک است. 4 mahall-e tavallodam landan/pāris/niu-york ast مطالعه است. 5 mahall-e tavallodam landan/pāris/niu-york ast أينه. 6 مطالعه است. 6 sā atam sāxt-e ĝāpone.

Exercise 5

1c, 2a, 3f, 4b, 5d, 6e

Exercise 6

to تو بلیت نداری. 2 man telefon nadāram من تلفن ندارم. 1 belit nadāri 3 او ۲۵ سال نداره. 3 u bist o panj sāl nadāre شما وقت ندارید. 5 mā otāq-e xāli nadārim ما اتاق خالی نداریم. 4 ŝomā vaqt nadārid 6 اونها پول ندارند. 6 unhā pul nadārand

1 ماشین احیاط اخونه ی قشنگی دارید. māŝin-e/hayāt-e/xune-ye qaŝangi dārid 2 لطف دارید. lotf dārid 3 ببخشید، وقت ندارم. lotf dārid 3 لطف دارید. pebaxŝid, vaqt nadāram 4 چند سال داره؛ cand sāl dāre? سال داره، iŝun dustam iŝun cewīra, پیتر هستند. iŝun dustam piter hastand ایشون انگلیسی هستند. iŝun engelisi hastand خوشوقتم. iŝun mādaram hastand 6 ایشون مادرم هستند. xoŝvaqtam من هم همینطور. man ham hamin-tour من دوست ایرانی دارید؟ cand tā dust-e irāni dārid?

Comprehension

Hello. I am Parviz Alizadeh. I am married. My wife is an English teacher. We are Muslim(s). My place of birth is Mashhad. I am a (civil) servant. I am 35 years old. My wife is 31 years old. Her place of birth is America but her nationality is Iranian. My hobby is cinema and my wife's hobby is painting. We have a small but pretty flat/apartment in Tehran.

1 Parviz Alizadeh 2 He is a civil servant (office worker) 3 Mashhad 4 English teacher 5 America 6 Iranian 7 Islam 8 He is 35; she is 31 9 He likes cinema; she paints 10 A flat in Tehran 11 Pretty/nice

Unit 4

Exercise 1

âanbe, ahmad be landan umad شنبه، احمد به لندن اومد. 1 پکشنبه، به سوپرمارکت رفتیم. 2 yek-ŝanbe, be supermārket

raftim 3 .وشنبه، به یک رستوران ایرانی رفتیم. do-ŝanbe, be yek resturān-e irāni raftim 4 .سه تولد رفتم به یک جشن تولد رفتم. se-ŝanbe, man be yek jaŝn-e tavallod raftam. ahmad nayumad 5 .ومنابه استخر شنا رفتیم cahār-ŝanbe, be estaxr-e ŝenā raftim 6 .پنجشنبه، احمد به ایران رفت. panj-ŝanbe, ahmad be irān raft 7 اومدند. jom'e, pedar o mādaram be xuneam umadand

1. اومد اندن. اومد اندن. اومد اندن. yek-ŝanbe, raftim supermārket ایکشنبه، رفتیم سوپرمارکت. yek-ŝanbe, raftim supermārket ایرانی. و do-ŝanbe, raftim yek resturān-e irāni ایرانی. اومد نیومد. احمد نیومد. احمد نیومد. se-ŝanbe, man raftam yek jaŝn-e tavallod. ahmad nayumad استخر شنا. cahār-ŝanbe, raftim estaxr-e senā ایران. و مادرم اومدند خونهام. panj-ŝanbe, ahmad raft irān ایران. jom'e, pedar o mādaram umadand xuneam

Exercise 3

1. مترو به لندن رفتيم. mā diruz bā metro be landan raftim We went to London by metro yesterday 2 شما امروز دير به كلاس śomā emruz dir be kelās umadid You came to class late today 3 اونها روز سهشنبه با هواپيما به ايران رفتند. unhā ruz-e se-ŝanbe bā havāpeimā be irān raftand They went to Iran by airplane on Tuesday 4. من روز شنبه با خانمم به سوپرماركت رفتم. man ruz-e ŝanbe bā xānomam be supermārket raftam I went to the supermarket with my wife on Saturday 5 ما اومد. u ruz-e yek-ŝanbe bā ŝouhareŝ be manzel-e mā umad She came to our house with her husband on Sunday.

Exercise 4

nan diruz dar resturān nāhār من ديروز در رستوران ناهار خوردم. 1 من ديروز در كتابخونه كتاب خوندم. 2 man diruz dar ketābx-une ketāb xundam من ديروز در كتابخونه كتاب خوندم. 3 man disab dar sinemā yek film didam بن امروز صبح سر كار يك ساندويچ 4 man emruz sar-e kār yek sāndevic xordam خوردم. 3 man emruz sar-e kār yek sāndevic xordam خوردم.

منزل غذای ایرانی پختم. man emruz dar manzel qazā-ye irāni poxtam 6 من امروز بعدازظهر یک برنامه ی خوب در تلویزیون دیدم. 6 man emruz ba'd-az-zohr yek barnāme-ye xub dar televizion didam 7 أخر هفته چه كار كرديد؟ 5 āxar-e hafte ce-kār kardid? میچّی! تموم روز خوابیدم! خسته بودم. 8 micci! tamum-e ruz xābidam! xaste budam وز جمعه به یک جشن تولّد رفتم. 9 ruz-e jom'e be yek jaŝn-e tavallod raftam الله بود! 20 xoŝ gozaŝt – jātun xāli bud!

1 Yes 2 No 3 No 4 Yes 5 Yes 6 No 7 No 8 No 9 Yes 10 Yes

Exercise 6

1 Needed 2 Not needed 3 Needed 4 Not needed 5 Needed 6 Needed

Exercise 7

1. من جیمز را دیدم. wan jeimz rā didam 2 غریدم. برای سوزان یک yek nuŝidani barāye u xaridam 3 خریدم. برای سوزان یک yek nuŝidani barāye u xaridam 3 خریدم. بال سوزان یک کیک خریدم. barāye suzān yek sāndevic va yek keik xaridam 4 او ساندویچ را خورد. u sāndevic rā xord او نگاه کردم. ammā keik rā naxord 6 اما کیک را نخورد. فلا سام او نگاه کردم. be u negāh kardam 7 سام ساعت ۸ شام خوردم. man sā`at-e haŝt ŝām xordam عن ساعت ۸ شامم را خوردم. man sā`at-e haŝt ŝāmam rā xordam 10 من اونها را دعوت نکردم. man unhā rā da`vat nakardam.

Exercise 8

بله، جاتون خالی بود! 2 ta`tilāt xoŝ gozaŝt? نعطیلات خوش گذشت؟ 1 bale, jātun xāli bud! 3 تعریفی نداشت! 3 ta`rifi nadāšt! 4 تو خونه موندیم و بارونو تماشا کردیم! kār-e xāssi nakardim 5 نکردیم. نسما 6 tu xune mundim o bārun-o tamāšā kardim! و خونه کار کردم. 7 axar-e hafte-ye ŝomā cetour bud? تهنبه، کار کردم. 7 axar-e hafte-ye ŝomā cetour bud? پکشنبه، رفتم خونه ی دوستم. و yek-ŝanbe, kār kardam و پکشنبه، رفتم خونه ی دوستم.

raftam xune-ye dustam 9 غذاى ايرانى خورديم. qazā-ye irāni xordim 10 غذاى ايرانى تماشا كرديم. 11 إسم من پختم! 10 man poxtam! المرانى تماشا كرديم. 12 إwek film-e irāni tamāsā kardim المرديم. 24 taxte-nard bāzi kardim من يخته نومادرم أومدند خونه م. 40 do-ŝanbe, pedar o mādaram umadand xune-am المرديم ناهار خورديم. 41 bā-ham nāhār xordim المرديم ناهار خورديم. 42 pedaram zarfhā-ro ŝost!

Comprehension On Saturday evening I went to the

birthday party of my friend Mahnaz. You should have been there, we had a very good time. Her home is not very far, but I went by bus because it was cold. She had fifty guests! The food was excellent! It was her mother's cooking (cuisine). Her husband washed the dishes. I made (some) tea. We had the tea with (some) cake. We had (some) ice cream, too. After dinner, we saw/watched a comedy film. We laughed a lot. Then we listened to Iranian music and danced. Then we gave the presents to Mahnaz. She became very happy.

1 She went to a friend's house 2 Saturday evening 3 Birthday party/ celebration 4 Simin's friend 5 She says: 'Wish you were there.' 6 By bus; it was cold 7 Fifty guests 8 Excellent 9 Mahnaz's mother 10 Mahnaz's husband washed them 11 She made tea 12 Tea, cake, ice cream 13 They watched a comedy film 14 They listened and danced to it 15 She got presents

Unit 5

Exercise 1

روبهروی pahlu-ye 5 پهلوی dāxel-e 4 داخل zir-e 3 زير pahlu-ye 5 وبهروی ru-be-ru-ye 6 بالای poŝt-e 8 پشت poŝt-e 8 جلوی bālā-ye 9 کنار dar taraf-e rāst-e

Exercise 2

(a) موّم (b) دوّم dovvom (c) سوّم sevvom (d) نهم nohom (e) مسيّم si o yekom (f) هفتادم haftādom

انگلستان، لندن، کد پستی «اس دابلیو یک»، خیابان داونینگ، پلاک ۱۰

Engelestān, landan, kod-e posti-e 'es dābelyu yek', xiābān-e dāwning, pelāk-e dah

Exercise 4

مىخونىم 4 mizane مىزنە 3 mixorim مىخورىم 2 mizane مىزدە 1 mixunim مىخونىم 5 mixunim مىزنە 3 mixunim مىكنى 5 cek mikonam مىكنى 5 kār mikonam 8 شنا مىكنە 8 tamāŝā mikonand

Exercise 5

1 هفتاد و یک، صفر، بیست و شش، هشتاد و سه haftād o yek, sefr, bist o ŝeŝ, haŝtād o se 2 هنی si o cahār, sizdah, punsad o noh 3 چهل و چهار، پنجاه و پنج، دو صفر، دو cehel o cahār, panjāh o panj, do sefr, do 4 هفتصد و هشتاد و haftsad o haŝtād o panj, si o cahār, davāzdah 5 هفتصد و هناد و نه، صفر، ششصد و سی و پنج haftsad o haŝtād o noh, sefr, ŝeŝsad o si o panj 6 پنج، نود و هفت، نود و هفت.

Exercise 6

 midunid in cie? 12 أيكشنبهها چهكار مى كنيد؟ \$anbehā/yek-ŝanbehā ce-kār mikonid? 13 مىرم خريد. 13 miram xarid.

Exercise 7

مى أند 5 miā
id مى أيم 4 miād مى أد 3 miād مى أم 2 miām مى أيد 1 miānd مى أم 6 miānd مى أند 7 miānd مى أم 6 miānd مى أم 8 miānd مى أم 8 miānd مى أم 9 miānd مى أم 9

Exercise 8

1 کوچکتر ا kucektar 2 از az 3 بزرگتر bozorgtar 4 کوچکتر تا zibātar بهتر behtar

Exercise 9

1 گرونترین ماشین geruntarin māŝin گرونترین فیلم geruntarin māŝin ارزونترین آپارتمان arzuntarin āpārtemān 4 بزرگترین شهر bozorgtarin ŝahr 5 جوونترین زن javuntarin zan 6 مسنترین مرد behtarin film 8 بهترین فیلم behtarin qazā

من سه سال xāhar-e kucektar dārid? 2 خواهر کوچکتر دارید؟ 1 شما man se sāl az barādaram bozorgtaram 3 از برادرم بزرگترم. somā bozorgtarin ozv-e xānevāde بزرگترین عضو خانواده هستید؟ hastid? 4. پدرگترین عضو خانواده pedaram do sāl az am-meam bozorgtare 5 پدرم دو سال از عمهام بزرگتره. bozorgtare 5 به نظر من، بهترین غذای ایرانی چلوکباب be nazar-e man, behtarin qazā-ye irāni celou-kabāb ast nazdiktarin resturān-e irāni نزدیک ترین رستوران ایرانی کجاست؟ 6 mā māhi do ما ماهي دو يا سه بار به اين رستوران مي آيم. 7 ?kojāst mal زياد به اين رستوران مي آيد؟ yā se bār be in resturān miāim 8 این بزرگترین سوپرمارکت تو 9 ?ŝomā ziād be in resturān miāid من تلويزيون in bozorgtarin supermärket tu in ŝahre 10 اين شهره. من (به) راديو man televizion tamāŝā nemikonam 11 تماشا نمي كنم. شما هرروز مىآيد 21 man (be) rādiou guŝ mikonam گوش مىكنم. اونها هُرُّ سَالَ نمي أند انگلستان. 13 somā har-ruz miāid injā? آينجا؟ اونها هر دو سال یک بار unhā har sāl nemiānd engelestān 14 جَمَعهها دير 15 unhā har do sāl yek bār miānd injā مى أند اينجا. تابستون به كلاس فارسى jom`ehā dir miāim xune 16 مىآيم خونه. . نمي أيم tābestun be kelās-e fārsi nemiāim.

Comprehension

We have a house in the west of Shiraz. Our address is this:

Shiraz, Post Code 18248, Sa'di Street, Narges Alleyway, No. 15, Residence of Hoseini.

Opposite our alleyway there is a petrol station. On the right side of the alleyway there is a pizza shop. On the left side of the alleyway there is a bakery. In front of our house there is a post box. Inside the alleyway, the fourth door on the left is our home.

Our house is not very big but my room is the largest room in our home. My sister's room is smaller but prettier than mine. She has many pictures and posters in her room. I only have one big poster of Shajarian in my room. In my opinion he is the best singer in Iran. I listen to his songs every night. Every three or four years he performs a concert in Shiraz. My paternal aunt and maternal uncle live in Esfahan. They come to Shiraz to see Shajarian and hear his voice. My cousin (maternal uncle's son) plays the *tār* in his orchestra. We have a very good time – wish you could be there!

1 West 2 House 3 Shiraz, Post Code 18248, Sa'di Street, Narges Alleyway, No. 15, Residence of Hoseini 4 Petrol station 5 On the right of the alleyway 6 Bakery 7 In front of their house 8 On the left side 9 Not very big 10 The writer/speaker

11 Her sister's room is smaller but prettier than hers 12 Many pictures and posters in her sister's room; only one big poster in her own room 13 Shajarian is the best singer in Iran 14 Songs by Shajarian 15 Shajarian performs a concert in Shiraz 16 Her aunt and uncle live there 17 Her aunt and uncle come to Shiraz to see and listen to Shajarian 18 Her cousin (son of her maternal uncle) 19 The *tār* 20 She wishes we could be there!

Unit 6

Exercise 1

tamāŝā mikonam تماشا می کنم ; mimunam می مونم 1 tamāŝā mikonam می کنید 3 miram می سفر 5 safar mikonid اقامت می کنید 6 eqāmat mikonid می مونید 7 mimunid اقامت می کنید 8 bar migardid

Exercise 2

1 با من مى آيد؟ bā man miāid? 2 با شما مى آيد؟ bā somā miām با من مى آيد؟ 0 bā mā miād 4 ما با شما مى آيم. mā bā somā miāim اونها با من مى آند. 5 نامى آم دفترتون. 1 unhā bā man miānd ونها با من مى آند. 5 fardā miām daftaretun أخر هفتهى آينده به مهمونيم مى آيد؟ 1 معتمونيم مى آيد؟ 2 معتمونيم مى آيد؟ 2 معتمونيم مى آيد؟ 2 معتمونيم مى آيد؟

Exercise 3

1 (3d), 2 (1g), 3 (6b), 4 (1c), 5 (5f), 6 (2e), 7 (4a)

an dāram sup mixoram. I'm eating soup 2 ما داریم فوتبال بازی می کنیم. mā dārim futbāl bāzi mikonim. We're playing football اونها دارند شنا می کنند. unhā dārand ŝenā mikonand. They're swimming 4 اونها دارند شنا می کنند. dāram be rādio guŝ mikonam. I'm listening to the radio be rādio guŝ mikonam. I'm listening to the radio 5.00 معلّم داره فارسی درس می ده. ki dāre piāno mizane? Who is playing the piano? المی داره پیانو می کنیم کنیم dārim ŝām dorost mikonim. We're making dinner 8 دارید ایمیلهاتونو dārid imeilhātun-o cek mikonid? Are you checking your emails? ومی شورم. و dārid imeilhātun-o cek mikonid? Are you checking your emails? خواهرم داره روزنامه می خونه. dāram zarfhā-ro miŝuram. I'm washing the dishes 10 بخواهرم داره روزنامه می خونه. dāre ruznāme mixune. My sister is reading a newspaper.

Exercise 5

يک ماه 2 cand vaqt injā mimunid? 2 چند وقت اينجا ميمونيد؟ د yek māh injā mimunam 3 اينجا ميمونم. yek māh injā mimunam 3 اينجا ميمونم. yek āpārtemān ejāre eqāmat mikonid? 4 مي کنيم. 4 yek āpārtemān ejāre mikonam 5 يک آپارتمان اجاره مي کنيد؟ alān dārid ce-kār mikonid? دارم به اخبار گوش مي کنيم. 6 dāram be axbār guŝ mikonam 7 روزنامه مي خونم. و dāram ruznāme mixunam 8 روزنامه مي خونم. و in āxar-e hafte ce-kār mikonid? مي کنيد؟ micci. tu xune mimunam ايران. 10 sāl-e āyande miram irān 11 داره به شما نگاه مي کنيد اره به شما نگاه مي کنيد اره به شما نگاه مي کنيد اره دارد مي رقصند. 21 dāre be ŝomā negāh mikone داريد نامه مي نويسيد؟ 21 dārid nāme minevisid?

dāram belit/lebās دارم بلیت/لباس می خرم. 14 dāram belit/lebās mixaram دارم برای سال نو خرید می کنم. 15 dāram barāye sāl-e nou xarid mikonam مهناز داره پسرشو به مدرسه می mahnāz dāre pesareŝ-o be madrese mibare.

Exercise 6

1 ببندید besinid 2 ببندید bebandid 3 برنید bezanid 4 ببندید begid 5 بشید 6 berid 7 برید 6 borou 8 بدید 6 biāid بیاید 9 biāz kon 12 بیارید 10 biārid بیارید 10 baz kon 12 صبر کنید biārid بیارید 10 baz kon 12 باز کن 14 biārid بیارید 10 baz kon 12 باز کن 15 baz kon 12 باز کن 15 baz kon 12 بیارید 10 میر کنید 25 baz kon 14 بیارید 10 میر کنید 26 میر کنید 26

1 منگید nasinid 2 نبنید nabandid 3 نبندید nazanid 4 نشینید nagid 5 نرید narid 7 نرید narou 8 نرید nasid 9 ندید nayāid 10 نیاید nayārid 11 باز نکن nayārid 11 نیارید sabr nakonid.

Exercise 8

ينجرهرو مى بندى، 2 injā miŝinid, lotfan اينجا مى شينيد، لطفاً؟ 3 panjara-ro mibandi, lotfan لطفاً؟ 3 kami كمى ويولن مى زنيد، لطفاً؟ 3 panjara-ro mibandi, lotfan اسمتونو مى گيد، لطفاً؟ 4 esmetun-o migid, lotfan اسمتونو مى ديد، لطفاً؟ 5 somāre telefonetun-o midid, lotfan مى ريد اتاق ده، لطفاً؟ 6 mirid otāq-e dah, lotfan مى ريد اتاق ده، لطفاً؟ 6 mirid otāq-e dah, lotfan بيرون، لطفاً؟ 8 mirid otāq-e dah الطفاً؟ 9 كمى آب مى آريد، 10 miāid injā, lotfan بينجا، لطفاً؟ 9 كمى آب مى آريد، 10 kami āb miārid, lotfan الطفاً؟ 1 kami āb miārid, lotfan لطفاً؟ 1 yek lahze sabr mikonid, lotfan?

Exercise 9

1 Shall we eat dinner? 2 Let's go to a restaurant tonight 3 Which restaurant shall we go to? 4 Shall I turn on the TV? 5 Let's see what's on TV (*lit* what the TV has) 6 Now let's watch TV for a little while 7 Shall I turn off the TV? 8 Now let's sit down and see what granddad is saying 9 Now let's go to sleep.

Exercise 10

1. ميوه بخور. 1 biā pahlu-ye man beŝin 3 لطفأ سالادو / نمكدونو بده. 1 lotfan sālād-o/namakdun-o bede 4 لطفأ يك كم آب بيار. bede 4 لطفأ درو / lotfan yek kam āb biār 5 لطفأ يك كم آب بيار. الطفأ درو ببند / باز كن. lotfan dar-o/panjara-ro beband/bāz kon الطفأ چراغو روشن lotfan cāi dorost kon 7 لطفأ چاى درست كن. lotfan cērāq-o rouŝan/xāmuŝ kon 8 كتابتو بردار. lotfan cerāq-o rouŝan/xāmuŝ kon 8 كتابتو بردار. galamet-o bezār tu jibet 10 إخاموش كن. bexāb! 11 إلى bexāb! 11 بخواب!

بياريد sāndevicetun-o kojā bezāram? 2 ساندويچتونو كجا بذارم؟ إ az irān از ایران سوغاتی میآرید؟ biārid injā, lotfan 3 اینجا، لطفاً. tu jaŝn-e taval تو جشن تولّده گیتار میزنید؟ 4 un sib-o naxorid اون سيبو نخوريد – خرابه. 5 un sib-o naxorid أخر 7 @māyonez-o midid, lotfan مايونزو مي ديد، لطفاً ؟ 6 māyonez-o āxar-e hafte-ye gozaŝte ce-kār هفتهي گذشته چه کار کردي؟ بگو! شام چى be mehmuniŝ narou 9 به مهمونيش نرو. 8 kardi? begu! 8 به be ahmad nagu 11 به احمد نگو. 10 ?ŝām ci boxorim بخوريم؟ چشمهاتو ببند/بازکن. be harfeŝ guŝ nakon 12 حرفش گوش نکن. ceŝmhāt-o beband/bāz kon 13 مهمونی خوش بگذره. mehmuni xoŝ begzare 14. مهمونی شما هم همین طور الحرام بگذره. ممنون، شما هم همین طور من و 15 axar-e hafte xoŝ begzare. mamnun, ŝomā ham hamin-tour man o pedaram پدرم تابستون آینده میریم ایران. خوش بگذره. بعدازظهر بريم tābestun-e āyande mirim irān. xoŝ begzare 16 بعدازظهر بريم cand چند نفرید؟ 17 !ba`d-az-zohr berim supermärket سوپرمارکت؟ cahār nafarim: چهار نفریم: من و خانمم و دو تا بچّه. 18 لطفا بيايد خونهمون و بچّههاتونو 19 man o xānomam va do tā bacce lotfan biāid xunamun va baccehātun-o ham biārid هم بياريد. لطفا چند لحظه صبر 21 lotfan negarān nabāŝid الطفا نگران نباشيد.20 lotfan cand lahze sabr konid, zud bar کنید، زود برمی گردم خونه. كدوم 32 \$āmetun-o biāram مامتونو بيارم؟ 22 sāmetun-o لطفا ديگه به اينجا نيايد! 24 ?kodum film-o bebinim فيلمو ببينيم؟ lotfan dige be injā nayāid!

Comprehension

- J: Whereshall I put this suitcace?
- D: Put it in the boot (rear trunk). ... OK, where are you going?
- J: Ferdowsi Hotel, please. Do you know where it is?
- D: Yes. ... Where are you from?
- J: Australia.
- D: How long will you stay in Iran?
- J: Two weeks. ... Please stop right here in front of the supermarket.
- D: By all means, here you are.
- J: Much obliged. How much did it come to?
- D: A thousand tumans.
- J: Here you are.
- D: Thanks. Have a good time.
- 1 Where to put his suitcase. In the boot 2 D already knows where it is 3 Australia

4 Two weeks 5 In front of the supermarket 6 A thousand tumans 7 Have a good time.

Unit 7

Exercise 1

1 بيندم berid 2 بيندم besinam 4 بيندم bebandam بيندم bez konam 6 بيندى bāsid 7 بونه bedune 8 باشيد bebini 9 بيني bedune 8 باشه 10 باشه 10 radāste bāse 11 باشه 10 bāse 14 نباشه 10 pasē

Exercise 2

امشب emruz bāyad ahmad-o bebinam 2 بهتره شام نخورم. وساقت emsab behtare sām naxoram 3 بهتره شام نخورم. بايد تلفن داشته bāyad telefon dāste bāse 4 باشد. bāyad telefon dāste bāsad 5 باشم. momkene māsin nadāste bāsand 5 شايد پول خرد داشته باشم. sāyad pul-e xord dāste bāsam 6 ممكنه آدرسشو داشته باشم. sōmā nabā-basad bāsad bāsad pul-e xord dāste bāsam 7 شما نبايد نگران باشيد. somā nabā-yad negarān bāsid 8 شمكنه در منزل نباشند. unhā momkene dar manzel nabāsand 9 فردا شايد هوا بهتر بشه. fardā sāyad havā behtar bese.

Exercise 3

biānd بياند 5 biād بيايم 4 biād بياد 3 biād بيايد 2 biām بيام 1

nitunam axbār-o bebinam? مى تونىم اخبارو ببينىم؟ خواهش مى كنىم. 1 مى تغلم قلطة mikonam 2 اين فيلمو همين الآن بايد ببينى؟ نه، مى تونىم فردا 2 in film-o hamin al'ān bāyad bebini? na, mitunam fardā bebinam 3 بهتره اينجا نشينيم. 3 behtare injā naŝinim 4 شايد شماره \$ sāyad \$ omāre telefone\$-o/ādrese\$-o dā\$te bā\$am 5 بلفنشو/آدرسشو داشته باشيد. 5 bāyad sabr dā\$te bā\$id بايد خيلى خوشحال باشيد. 6 bāyad xeili xo\$-hāl bā\$id

Exercise 5

be به ;bā با 5 az از 4 az از 3 az از 2 be به 1

Exercise 6

1. دستت درد نکنه. 2 dastet dard nakone دستت درد نکنه. saret dard nakone

Exercise 7

1 I want to book a double room with a shower, please 2 We want a four-star hotel 3 Preferably it should be in the town centre 4 How much is this room per night? 5 Does this price include lunch, too?

Exercise 8

1. yek otāq-e yek-nafare bā duŝ barāye do hafte mixām 2 قيمت شامل شام هم qeimat ŝāmel-e ŝām ham miŝe? na, un ون جداست. qeimat ŝāmel-e ŝām ham miŝe? na, un jodāst 3. مشهد رزرو كنم. mixāstam do tā jā barāye maŝhad rezerv konam 4 سوال از شما momkene/mitunam yek so`āl az ŝomā beporsam? بهرسم؟ بفرماييد. momkene/mitunam yek so`āl az ŝomā beporsam? befarmāyid 5 محربت كنم؟ mitunam bā modir sohbat konam? 6 جراغهاى حموم كار نمى كنند / خرابند. cerāqhā-ye hamum kār nemikonand/xarāband 7. وش أب نداره. fardā be ŝomā telefon mikonam

منتظر اخباره. montazer-e ki/ci hastid? 10. منتظر اخباره. montazer-e axbāram منتظر دوستم هستم. montazer-e dustam hastam 12 از من عصبانی هستید؟ az man asabāni hastid? 13 از 13 امّا از 14 az darāmadetun rāzi hastid? الله، امّا از 14 bale, ammā az ra`isam rāzi nistam!

Comprehension

- G: Sir I'm not happy with this hotel at all.
- M: What's the problem sir?
- G: I booked a large double room, but you gave us a single room with an extra bed. I wanted a room with a bathroom and a bathtub; you gave (us) a room with a shower. The telephone in the room doesn't work either.
- M: I do apologise. I'm truly ashamed. Tonight a large double room will become available. I can give you that room.
- G: To be honest we intended to stay for three weeks, but given the situation we might not stay even for one week. Meanwhile, could you tell the guests next door to be a little more quiet at night?
- M: Certainly. Would you like to come with me to see the room?
- G: Right now I'm waiting for a phone-call from England. I'll come to your office in an hour's time.
- M: OK, I'll be waiting (for you).

1 He wanted a large double room, but was given a single room with an extra bed; he wanted a room with a bathroom and a bathtub, but was given a room with a shower; the telephone in the room is broken 2 He apologises profusely 3 To give him a large double room, which will be available tonight 4 He intended to stay for three weeks; now he might not stay even for one week because of the unsatisfactory situation/service 5 Guests next door are too noisy at night 6 To show him the larger room 7 Because he is waiting for a phone-call (from England).

Unit 8

خاموشش كردم. 3 didames ديدمش. 2 xordames خوردمش. 1 xāmuŝeŝ kardam خاموشش كنم؟ 4 xāmuŝeŝ konam? be(he)ŝun به شون گفتم. 7 !na, zireŝe نه، زيرشه! 6 damumeŝ kon الله be(he)ŝun mitunam bā(hā)ŝun sohbat مى تونم باهاشون صَحبت كنم؟ 8 -hamas-o nemi همهشو نمى تونم بخورم. نصفشو مى خورم. 9 ?konam tunam boxoram, nesfeŝ-o mixoram

Exercise 2

1e, 2c, 3d, 4a, 5f, 6b

Exercise 3

ببخشيد، اين كارت پستالو مىتونيد برام بخونيد، لطفأ؟ bebaxŝid, in kārt-postāl-o mitunid barām bexunid, lotfan?

You: خواهش مى كنم. از كيه؟ xāheŝ mikonam. az kie? هزاد دوست استرالياييم. az dust-e osterāliāyim.

[after you have read the postcard]

.xeili mamnun خيلي ممنون.

xāheŝ mikonam. خواهش می کنم.

Exercise 4

- خيابون دوّم دست چپ. داخل خيابون، پستخونه دست چپه. 🗚 xiābun-e dovvom dast-e cap. dāxel-e xiābun, postxune dast-e cape.
- mostaqim مستقیم برید. بعداز چهارراه، مرکز تلفن دست راسته. B berid. ba'd-az cahār-rāh, markaz-e telefon dast-e rāste.
- د خیابون اوّل دست راست. بعد مستقیم برید تا خیابون bepicid tu xiābun-e avval dast-e rāst, ba'd mostagim berid tā xiābun-e avval dast-e cap. supermärket sar-e nabs-e.

چراغ 2 keikam kojāst? xordameŝ! کیکم کجاست؟ خوردمش! 1 خوردمش! دوشنش کن، لطفاً.

عبينه، وبهروم بشين، نه، روبهروم بشين. نه، روبهروم بشين. pahlut beŝinam? na, ru-be-rum beŝin 4 بكم بهش؟ نه، لطفاً بهش نكو. begam be(he)ŝ? na, lotfan be(he)ŝ nagu 5 اينو برات خريدم. in-o barāt xaridam 6 مى دونيد چشه؟ mitunam bāhātun biām? 7 باهاتون بيام؟ mitunam bāhātun biām? 8 اين ايميلو مى تونيد برام بخونيد، لطفاً؟ 9 sā`at cande, lotfan? اين ايميلو مى تونيد برام بخونيد، لطفاً؟ 9 يك و yek rob` be se 12 يك و yek rob` be se 12 يك بع به سه. 11 يعمل yek o rob` المعقد به دوازده. 13 yazdah o panj daqiqe be davāzdah. ابخشيد، ساعت ندارم. 15 yāzdah o panj daqiqe 15 ببخشيد، ساعت ندارم. 15 yāzdah o panj daqiqe اينجا تا ايستگاه چقدر راه است؟ 16 yāzdah ceqadr tā istgāh ceqadr rāh ast? المي كشه piāde nim sā`at rāh ast 20 با ماشين پنج دقيقه راه است. bā māŝin panj daqiqe rāh ast

Exercise 6

1 Is there a television in your classroom? 2 Are there any Iranians in your town? 3 Is there an Iranian restaurant in your area? 4 There were five English guests in/at the party 5 Is there any ice cream in the freezer? 6 There was but I ate (it)!

Exercise 7

You: بخشید، ساعت دارید، لطفاً؟ bebaxŝid, sā`at dārid, lotfan? You: میخوام ایمیلهامو چک کنم. in atrāf 'kāfi-net' hast? mixām imeilhām-o cek konam.

[At the Internet Café]

You: چقدره؟ hazine-ye estefāde az internet ceqadre?

You: کنم؟ می ساعت از اون استفاده کنم؟ mitunam nim sā`at az un estefāde konam?

You: کنم؟ می تونم از این کامپیوتر استفاده کنم؟ mitunam az in kāmpiuter estefāde konam?

ba'd-az inke ŝām xordam, miram xune 2 بعداز اینکه شام خوردم، میرم خونه. ba'd-az inke ŝām xordam, miram xune 2 بعداز اینکه شام خوردم، رفتم خونه. crdam, raftam xune 3 بعداز اینکه کلاس تموم شد، میریم رستوران. 3

ba'd-az inke kelās tamum ŝod, mirim resturān 4 سكة كلاس. ba'd-az inke kelās tamum ŝod, raftim resturān 5 تموم شد، رفتيم رستوران. ba'd-az inke duŝ gereftam, sobhune mixoram 6 بعداز اينكه دوش گرفتم، صبحونه ba'd-az inke duŝ gereftam, sobhune xordam 7 بعداز اينكه ba'd-az inke duŝ gereftam, sobhune xordam مبحداز اينكه ba'd-az inke sobhune خوردم، ايميلهامو چک می کنم. بعداز اينکه صبحونه خوردم، هماه ba'd-az inke sobhune xordam, imeilhām-o cek mikonam 8 ايميلهامو چک کردم. ba'd-az inke sobhune xordam, imeilhām-o cek kardam

Exercise 9

abl-az inke berim sinemā, sām mixorim 2 قبلاز اینکه بریم سینما، شام می خوریم. gabl-az inke berim sinemā, sām xordim 3 قبلاز اینکه شام بخورم، یک فیلم قبلاز اینکه شام بخورم، یک فیلم و qabl-az inke sām boxoram, yek film mibinam 4 قبل از اینکه شام عندم. qabl-az inke sām boxoram, yek film didam 4 قبل و qabl-az inke sām boxoram, yek film didam 5 شام بخورم، یک فیلم دیدم. qabl-az inke film-o bebinam, dus migiram 6 قبل از اینکه فیلمو ببینم، دوش گرفتم. qabl-az inke film-o bebinam, dus gereftam 7 قبل از اینکه دوش بگیرم، به دوستم تلفن می کنم. قبل از اینکه دوش بگیرم، به دوستم تلفن کردم. qabl-az inke dus begiram, be dustam telefon mikonam 8 بخوابم، به ایران تلفن می کنم. امشب قبل از اینکه دوش بگیرم، به دوستم تلفن کردم. و miko dus begiram, be dustam telefon kardam 9 نیش، دوستم قبل از اینکه بخوابم، به ایران تلفن کردم. و disab qabl-az inke bexābam, be irān telefon mikonam 10 دیشب قبل از اینکه بخوابم، به ایران تلفن کردم. و disab qabl-az inke bexābam, be irān telefon kardam

Exercise 10

ba'd-az xordan-e ŝām, miram xune 2 بعداز خوردن شام، می م خونه. ba'd-az xordan-e ŝām, raftam xune 2 بعداز خوردن شام، رفتم خونه. ba'd-az xordan-e ŝām, raftam xune 3 بعداز گرفتن دوش، صبحونه میخورم. ba'd-az gereftan-e duŝ, sobhune mixoram 4 بعداز گرفتن دوش، صبحونه خوردم. ba'd-az gereftan-e duŝ, sobhune xordam 5 بعداز خوردن صبحونه، ba'd-az xordan-e sobhune, imeilhām-o cek mikonam 6 بعداز خوردن صبحونه، ایمیلهامو چک کردم. ba'd-az xordan-e sobhune, imeilhām-o cek kardam

Exercise 12

ببخشيد، اين اطراف پستخونه اکلانترى اکتابخونه اسوپرمار کت اکافی نت؟ bebaxŝid, in atrāf postxune/kalāntari/ketābxune/super-mārket/kāfi-net hast? 2 تو يخچال شير هست؟ tu yaxcāl ŝir hast? 3 قبل ايرانى هست؟ tu mahalle-ye ŝomā irāni hast? 4 بارسال پنج تا ايرانى تو کلاسم اداره ام بود. pārsāl panj tā irāni tu kelāsam/edāream bud 5 قبل از اينکه بريد بيرون، چراغهارو خاموش dabl-az inke berid birun, cerāqhā-ro xāmuŝ konid lotfan 6. کنيه المال الم

Comprehension

Hello. I am Jalal. I am phoning from (the) Atlas Hotel. I am happy with the hotel, only the noise of traffic is a little too much. By the way, this evening, after our touring is finished, my wife and I want to go to the cinema. We would also like you to come with us. The film starts at 7 in the evening. So we'd better meet each other at 6 in order for us to have time for a chat, too. Before we go to the cinema, we will have dinner together. We have arranged to go to Hafez cinema. Opposite the cinema there is a restaurant. We will be waiting for you in the restaurant at 6 o'clock. Goodbye for now.

1 Jalal 2 Atlas Hotel 3 Happy, except for traffic noise 4 To the cinema with his wife 5 It begins at 7 p.m. 6 To have dinner 7 Touring 8 Six o'clock, to have a chat 9 In a restaurant

Unit 9

Exercise 1

بهندرت 4 ma'mulan معمولاً 3 gāhi هميشه 2 gāhi و معمولاً be-nodrat اغلب 6 ba'zi-vaqthā اغلب 6 dalab

Exercise 2

هیچکار hic-vaqt 2 هیچچیز hic-ciz 3 هیچوقت ا hic-kār 5 هیچکس hic-kas 6 هیچکس hic-kodum

Exercise 3

1 نگفت nayumad 2 نیومد nayumad 3 نیومد nayumad 4 نگفت nagoft 5 نیستند nistand 6 نمیدونم nistid 7 نیستند nemidunam نمیدونه nemidune

- A: What do you usually have for breakfast?
- P: I never have breakfast.
- A: Neither do I. Why don't you have (breakfast)? Are you on a diet?
- P: No way, what's a diet?
- A: Then why don't you eat (breakfast)?
- P: Because I'm lazy. Why don't you eat (breakfast)?
- A: Same here.

أخر هفته معمولاً چه كار مى كنيد؟ 1 āxar-e hafte ma`mulan ce-kār mikonid? 2 من هيچوقت تو خونه نمى مونم. 2 man hic-vaqt tu xune

Exercise 6

تو غذای ایرانی خوردهام. 1 man qazā-ye irāni xordeam من غذای ایرانی خوردهای. او غذای ایرانی خورده است. 3 to qazā-ye irāni xordei ایرانی خورده است. 3 u qazā-ye irāni xorde ast بایرانی خوردهایی ایرانی خوردهاید. 5 somā qazā-ye irāni xordeim شما غذای ایرانی خوردهاید. 5 unhā qazā-ye irāni xordeid اونها غذای ایرانی خوردهاند. 6 unhā qazā-ye irāni xordeand

تو غذای man qazā-ye irāni naxordeam من غذای ایرانی نخوردهای. او غذای to qazā-ye irāni naxordei 3 ایرانی نخوردهای. او غذای ایرانی نخورده u qazā-ye irāni naxorde ast 4 است. است adzā-ye irāni naxordeim 5 است څوردهایم. somā qazā-ye irāni naxordeim 5 شما غذای ایرانی نخوردهاید. unhā qazā-ye irāni naxordeid 6 اونها غذای ایرانی نخوردهاند. unhā qazā-ye irāni naxordeand.

Exercise 8

somā hic-vaqt be āmrikā rafteid? شما هيچوقت به آمريكا رفتهايد؟ 1 \$2 أمريكا رفتهايد؟ 2 \$2 شما فيلم «جيمزباند» را ديدهايد؟ 2

dideid? 3 مما هیچوقت غذای چینی خوردهاید؟ 3 somā hic-vaqt qazā-ye cini xordeid? 4 مام اصبحونه خوردهاید؟ اهرار شام اصبحونه خوردهاید؟ 5 sobhune xordeid? 5 مما هلیکوپتر سوار شدهاید؟ 5 somā helikopter savār ŝodeid? 6 مما هیچوقت چیزی گم کردهاید؟ 6 sarmā xordeid? و cizi gom kardeid?

Exercise 9

Comprehension

Hello. You know that I always write you a letter or an email. But this time I decided to send a film. I must say that I have never spoken in front of a camera. For this very reason I have panicked a little. You will forgive (me). Today, (my) wife and children are not at home. They have all gone on holiday. However I am not that much alone either: right now a number of hungry bellies are waiting for me in the reception room! Five of my friends have come to see me. You will

meet them in a few minutes. In our house, my wife often does the cooking. I rarely make a meal. I can only cook *chelo-kebab*. But this time, I have tried to make a few types of food. At the end of the film, I will show (you) the dining table. By the way, have you eaten Iranian food yet?

1 He usually sends letters or emails 2 This is the first time he is speaking in front of a camera 3 He is alone: his family are on holiday. He is not alone: his friends are visiting him 4 Hungry bellies are waiting for him to feed them 5 His friends 6 His wife does the cooking; he makes *chelo-kebab* 7 He has made different types of food 8 To show the dining table at the end of the film 9 If the listener has ever had Iranian food

Unit 10

Exercise 1

diŝab in vaqt, dāŝtam televizion tamāŝā mikardam. Last night at this time, I was watching TV 2 دى. كردى. TV 2 ديشب اين وقت، داشتى تلويزيون تماشا مىكردى. diŝab in vaqt, dāŝti televizion tamāŝā mikardi. Last night at this time, you were watching TV 3 ديشب اين وقت، داشت تلويزيون تماشا 3 diŝab in vaqt, dāŝt televizion tamāŝā mikard. Last night at this time, s/he was watching TV 4 مىكرد. ديشب اين وقت، داشتيم تلويزيون 4 diŝab in vaqt, dāŝtim televizion tamāŝā mikardim. Last night at this time, we were watching TV نوقت، داشتيد 5 مالاً على المناس مىكرديد. ديشب اين وقت، داشتيد 5 diŝab in vaqt, dāŝtid televizion tamāŝā mikardid. Last night at this time, you were watching TV 6 ديشب اين وقت، داشتيد تلويزيون تماشا مىكرديد. ديشب اين diŝab in vaqt, dāŝtid televizion tamāŝā mikardid. Last night at this time, they were watching TV وقت، داشتند تلويزيون تماشا مىكردند. zion tamāŝā mikardand. Last night at this time, they were watching TV

1. ديشب اين وقت، تلويزيون تماشا نمى كردم. I was not watching TV وقت، تلويزيون تماشا نمى كردى. I was not watching TV وقت، تلويزيون تماشا نمى كردى. diŝab in vaqt, televizion tamāŝā nemikardi. Last night at this time, you were not watching TV وقت، تلويزيون تماشا نمى كرد. I diŝab in vaqt, televizion tamāŝā nemikard. Last night at this time, s/he was not watching TV وقت، تلويزيون تماشا نمى كرديم. diŝab in vaqt, televizion tamāŝā nemikardim. Last night at this time, we were not watching TV وقت، تلويزيون تماشا نمى كرديد. diŝab in vaqt, televizion tamāŝā nemikardid. Last night at this time, you were not watching TV وقت، تلويزيون تماشا نمى كرديد. diŝab in vaqt, televizion tamāŝā nemikardid. Last night at this time, you were not watching TV 6. ديشب اين وقت، تلويزيون تماشا نمى كرديد. diŝab in vaqt, televizion tamāŝā nemikardand. Last night at this time, they were not watching TV

Exercise 3

داشتم (a) داشتم dāŝtam (b) کار می کردم kār mikardam 2 (a) داشتم dāŝtam (b) حجبت می کردم sohbat mikardam 3 (a) داشتیم dāŝtim (b) داشتیه mixordim 4 (a) درس می خوندند dāŝtand (b) می طؤددیم das mixundand 5 (a) داشتید mixundadd

داشت (a) dāŝtam (b) حک می کرده (cek mikardam 7 (a) داشتم (dāŝt (b) می کردیم (dāŝt (b) مینوشت dāŝtim (b) می کردیم (guād mikardim 9 (a) داشتید (b) باد می گرفتید yād migereftid او dāŝtam (b) عوش می کردم (dāŝtam (b) داشتم (guŝ mikardam

من tasādof cetour ettefāq oftād? 2 تصادف چطور اتّفاق افتاد؟ 1 man dāŝtam bā داشتم با سرعت ۵۰ کیلومتر در ساعت می روندم. یک ماشین ابی sor`at-e panjāh kilumetr dar sā`at mirundam 3 yek māŝin-e ābi yek-daf`e picid jelom یکدفعه پیچید جلوم. تصادفو ديدم، امّا 5 rāhnamāŝ rouŝan nabud راهنماش روشن نبود. 4 tasādof-o didam, ammā nemitunam نمى تونىم به فارسى توضيح بدم. fārsim ziād فارسيم زياد خوب نيست. 6 fārsim ziād xub nist 7 مترجم / وكيل لازم دارم. motarjem/vakil lāzem dāram mitunam be sefāratam telefon مى تونم به سفارتم تلفن كنم؟ 8 ترجيح ميدم اوّل با خانوادهام صحبت كنم. اشكالي نداره؟ 9 ?konam tarjih midam avval bā xānevādeam sohbat konam. eŝkāli nadāre? 10 ديشب اين وقت چه کار مي کرديد؟ 10 diŝab in vaqt ce-kār mikardid? dāŝtam yek film-e irāni داشتم یک فیلم آیرانی تماشا می کردم. 11 gozarnāmam-o gom گذرنامهمو گم کردهام. 12 gozarnāmam āŝpazxunam أشپزخونهام أتش گرفته. لطفاً كمك كنيد. 13 آبارتمانمو دزد زده. لطفاً یک ates gerefte. lotfan komak konid 14 äpärtemänam-o dozd zade. lotfan yek nafar-o نفرو بفرستيد. همسایهمون غش کرده. هرچه زودتر امبولانس 15 bef(e)restid hamsāyamun qaŝ karde. har-ce zudtar āmbulāns بفرستيد. شماره تلفن پلیس/آمبولانس/آتشنشانی را میخواستم،16 þef(e)restid .somāre telefon-e polis/āmbulāns/āteŝ-neŝāni rā mixāstam لطفا.

Exercise 5

غودش 1 xodes غودمون 2 xodetun خودش 2 غودش 2 غودش 2 غودش 5 xodesun خودم 5 xodes خودت 6 xodes غودش 5 xodes

Exercise 6

1 دیده بودم 3 dide budam دیده بودم 2 poxte دیده بودم 9 poxte budam درست کرده بود 5 soru` ŝode bud مرست کرده بود 5 xorde budam خورده بودم (ده بودم xorde budam

Exercise 7

1 منحورده بودم naxorde budam 2 نخورده بودم nadide budam 3 نیخته بودم sohbat nakarde budam 4 محبت نکرده بودم napoxte budam 5 سفر نکرده بودم safar nakarde budam 6 سفر نکرده بودم rānandegi nakarde budam رانندگی نکرده بودم rānandegi nakarde budam

Exercise 8

(a) 3, (b) 1, (c)2

Exercise 9

1. مسال پیش. ایران رفتید؟ avvalin bār kei be irān raftid? panj sāl piš 2 چرا به ایران رفتید؟ cerā be irān raftid? چده. و cerā be irān raftid? تا کتاب دربارهی کشورتون خونده بوده. و cand tā ketāb darbāre-ye keŝvaretun xunde budam به ایرانی دیده بوده. و cand tā film-e irāni dide budam به ایران علاقهمند شده بوده. و sode budam أیران علاقهمند شده بودید؟ و pablan be xāvar-e miāne narafte budid? محرا، به عراق رفته بوده. و cerā, be erāq rafte budam الما کار داره. و kasi bā ŝomā kār dāre العضی از مهمونها می خواند با شما کار داره. و ba'zi az mehmunhā mixānd bā ŝomā sohbat konand الحمد و عدمو عدمو عدمو شما خودمو عمرات کردید؟ محرامه عنوانه دا قاله عمرات کردید؟ محرامه دودمو تا یا xodam-o tu āine didam

Comprehension

My wife and I were having a meal in a restaurant. About 8 o'clock, the lights suddenly went out. Before that, two people were having a meal at the table next to us. After about five minutes, the lights came back on, but those two people had gone. My bag had also disappeared! One of them was tall and wearing a grey suit. His hair was black and short. He had a thick moustache and sunglasses. The second one had his back to me. I didn't see his face. But his head was bald. And his shirt was blue.

1 In a restaurant 2 His wife 3 They were having a meal 4 The lights went out 5 The two men stole his bag 6 Tall; grey suit; short black hair; moustache; sunglasses 7 He was sitting with his back towards Ali

Unit 11

ديشب، در يک رستوران بزرگ شام خورديم، امّا غذا خوب نبود. ا diŝab dar yek resturān-e bozorg ŝām xordim, ammā qazā xub nabud 2 سر هم بستنى خوردم (و) هم کيک. deser ham bastani xordam (va) ham keik 3 سر او) نه دسر. mādaram na ŝām xord (va) na deser 4 نه خوب بود (و) نه دسر. ina qazā xub bud (va) na deser 5 خونهى گذشته، نه کسى به خونهى آخر هفتهى گذشته، نه کسى به خونهى āxar-e hafte-ye gozaŝte, na kasi be xune-ye mā umad (va) na mā be xune-ye kasi raftim

Exercise 2

تو مى تونى يا بستنى بخورى (و) يا كيك. نمى تونى هردو را بخورى! 1 to mituni yā bastani boxori (va) yā keik. nemituni har-do rā boxori! 2 هم كيك، لطفاً؟ 2 المروز، نه صبحونه خوردم 3 emruz, na sobhune xordam (va) na nāhār! 4 الطفاً چند 4 emruz, na sobhune xordam (va) na nāhār! 4 لطفاً چند 4 emruz, na sobhune xordam (va) na nāhār! الطفا حيد عبدا مي المارا العظاء عبدا العلم المارا العلم العلم المارا العلم العلم المارا العلم المارا العلم المارا العلم المارا العلم المارا العلم العلم المارا العلم العل

Exercise 3

1. dar ŝirāz yek xune dāram ke xeili qaŝange 2 ديروز يک ماشين خريدم که خوب کار نمی کنه. dar ŝirāz yek xune dāram ديروز يک ماشين خريدم که خوب کار نمی کنه. diruz yek māŝin xaridam ke xub kār nemikone 3 بالاخره يک اتوبوس beſaxare yek otobus umad ke por az mosāfer bud 4. اومد که پر از مسافر بود. be yek āĝāns telefon kardam ke nazdik-e manzelemune 5 پدرم، که در لندن کار pedaram, ke dar landan kār mikone, diruz be irān raft

1. ماشینی که به من فروخت کار نمی کنه. 1 مشینی که به من فروخت کار نمی کنه. 1 قطresi ke be man dād kāmel nist 3. مته کننده بود. 3 filmi ke didam xeili xaste-konande bud 4 آپارتمانی که خریدم پنج تا 4 apārtemāni ke xaridam panj tā otāq-e xāb dāre تابی که به من دادید خیلی مفیده. 5 مفیده. 5 فوامند و بود. 6 ketābi ke be man dādid xeili mofide فذایی که برام پخت خیلی خوشمزه بود. 6 pox xeili xoŝmaze bud

Exercise 5

دنبال یک خونه ی اجارهای می گردم که این مشخصاتو داشته باشه: سه تا اتاق خواب؛ یک حمّام با دو تا توالت؛ آشپزخونه ی متوسّط؛ مرکز تهران؛ ترجیحاً نزدیک مرکز خرید؛ اجاره ماهی یک میلیون و دویست هزار تومن یا کمتر.

Donbāl-e yek xune-ye ejāreyi migardam ke in moŝaxxasāt-o dāŝte bāŝe: se tā otāq-e xāb; yek hammām bā do tā tuālet; āŝpazxune-ye motavasset; markaz-e tehrān; tarjihan nazdik-e markaz-e xarid; ejāre māhi yek milyun o devist hezār toman yā kamtar.

Exercise 6

دنبال پسرم می گردم. 2 donbāl-e ki migardid? 2 می گردید؟ 1 donbāl-e pesaram migardam 3 دنبال چی می گردید؟ 1 donbāl-e ci migardid? 4 دنبال دفتر تلفنم می گردم. 2 donbāl-e daftar-e telefonam migardam 5 دنبال یک کار تازه می گردم. 5 donbāl-e yek kār-e tāze migardam 6 دنبال یک کار تازه می گردم 6 ماشین می گردم که قابل اطمینان باشه. 6 donbāl-e yek māŝin migardam ke qābel-e etminān bāŝe ماه خونه 2 دفعه عنبال عی طوره که ده تا اتاق خواب داشته باشه! ماشینی که دیدید 8 daŝte bāŝe! اتاق خواب داشته باشه! مردی که ماشینو 9 māŝini ke didid māl-e man nabud من نبود. مردی که ماشینو و māŝini ke didid māl-e man nabud و می می مهربون بود. آقایی که شماره تلفنتونو ازش گرفتم خیلی مهربون بود. آقوی که شماره تلفنتونو ازش گرفتم خیلی مهربون بود. آقوی تو آقایی که شماره تلفنتونو ازش گرفتم خیلی مهربون بود. 5 قوسة و telefonetun-o azaŝ gereftam xeili mehrabun bud

Comprehension

Hello. I am Alizadeh. I am phoning from London. The hotel we have got is good

but it's too expensive. Therefore, we're looking for a flat that has three bedrooms and a large kitchen. Can you find (one) for us? I'd be very grateful. We'll be staying in London for one month. Its rent mustn't be more than £1000 per month. Preferably it should be in Central London, or at least somewhere close to a metro station, shopping centre, cinemas and those kinds of things. You know that my wife's hobby is shopping and the children's hobby is cinema. I'm most grateful for your kindness. Looking forward to seeing you. Goodbye for now.

1 London 2 Looking for a flat because the hotel is too expensive 3 To find a flat 4 Three bedrooms, large kitchen, monthly rent under £1000 5 In Central London or near a metro station, shopping centre and cinemas because his wife likes shopping and his children like cinema

Unit 12

Exercise 1

1 بياريد biāid 4 بيايد bemunid 3 بياريد biāid 4 بياريد biārid بياريد dabul konid 6 برگرده apabul konid 6 كنيد

Exercise 2

اگه age naxorid, nārāhat miŝam 2 اگه نخورید، ناراحت می شم. اگه نیاید، age namunid, nārāhat miŝam 3 نیاید، age nayāid, nārāhat miŝim 3 نیاید، age nayāid, nārāhat miŝim 4 (هم) عرضیم. اگه بچه هاتونو (هم) age baccehātun-o (ham) nayārid, nārāhat miŝim 5 نیارید، ناراحت می شیم. age da`vat-e mā-ro qabul nakonid, nārāhat miŝim 6 اگه به ایران برنگرده، age be irān bar nagarde, xānevād(e)aŝ nārāhat miŝand

1 اومد 1 umad الزم داشتى 1 telefon kard تلفن كرد 2 lāzem dāŝti ناگ زد 2 telefon kone تلفن كنه 5 zang zad ننگ زد 4 telefon kone ناگ كرد 6 telefon kard اومد 8 biād بياد 7 wmad ومد 8 biād بياد 7

Exercise 4

Exercise 5

ماه تولّد āpārtemān-e ŝo<u>mā</u> kojāst? 2 آپارتمان شما کجاست؟ آه شماره تلفن شما چنده؟ āpārtemān-e ŝo<u>mā</u> cie? 3 شما چنده شماره تلفن شما چنده؟ śomāre telefon-e ŝo<u>mā</u> cande? 4 آپارتمان شما قبد تا اتاق خواب āpārtemān-e ŝo<u>mā</u> cand tā otāq-e xāb dāre? 5 داره؟ داره؟ طفظهی کامپیوتر dar-e xune-ye ŝo<u>mā</u> ce range? 6 چه رنگه؟ مافظهی کامپیوتر hāfeze-ye kāmpiuter-e ŝo<u>mā</u> ceqadre?

Exercise 6

1 (تا مال شما چيه؟ 2 māl-e ŝo<u>mā</u> kojāst? مال شما كجاست؟ māl-e ŝo<u>mā</u> cie? مال شما چنده؟ 3 māl-e ŝo<u>mā</u> cande? 4 مال شما چنده مال māl-e ŝo<u>mā</u> cand tā (otāq-e xāb) dāre? 5 مال māl-e ŝo<u>mā</u> cand tā (otāq-e xāb) dāre? 5 مال شما چقدره؟ 6 māl-e ŝo<u>mā</u> ce range? 6 شما چه رنگه؟ so<u>mā</u> ceqadre?

1 كوشم مىآد xoŝam miād; خوشم نمىآد xoŝam nemiād 2 خوشت مىآد xoŝet miād; خوشت مىآد xoŝet nemiād 3 خوشش نمىآد xoŝeŝ miād; خوشش مىآد xoŝeŝ nemiād 4 خوشمون نمىآد xoŝemun miād; خوشمون مىآد xoŝetun nemiād 5 خوشتون نمىآد xoŝetun miād; خوشتون مىآد xoŝetun nemiād 6 خوششون نمىآد xoŝeŝun miād; خوششون مىآد

Exercise 8

خوشت 2 xoŝam nayumad خوشم نيومد ; xoŝet umad خوشم اومد 3 خوشش اومد 3 خوشش اومد 3 خوشش نيومد ; xoŝet umad خوشش نيومد ; xoŝeŝ umad خوشش نيومد ; xoŝeŝ nayumad خوشمون نيومد 5 xoŝetun umad خوشمون نيومد 5 xoŝetun umad خوششون اومد 6 xoŝetun umad خوششون نيومد 3 xoŝeŝun umad خوششون نيومد 6 xoŝeŝun umad خوششون نيومد 7 xoŝeŝun umad خوششون نيومد 7 xoŝeŝun umad

Exercise 9

1. بله، خیلی. او śomā az qazā-ye/filmhā-ye irāni xoŝetun miād? bale, xeili از فیلم/غذا شما از فیلم/غذا څولتو څوشتون اومد؟ نه زیاد. شما از فیلم/غذا څولتون اومد؟ نه زیاد. څوستون اومد؟ نه زیاد. څوستون اومد؟ نه زیاد. څوستون اومد؟ نه زیاد. څوستون می آد؟ ۵ څوستون می آد؟ ۵ څوستون می آد څو شمه چیز: غذاهاش؛ منظرههاش؛ فرهنگش؛ مردمش؛ ترافیکش! مهمه چیز: غذاهاش؛ منظرههاش؛ فرهنگش؛ مردمش؛ ترافیکش! مخاسی، نقاشی، گوش 6 sargarmihātun cie? مور شاتون چیه؟ 5 چیکاسی، نقاشی، گوش 6 sargarmihātun cie? مور شیمهای شما چیه؟ ورزش. سرگرمیهای شما چیه؟ ویونی پیه؛ مورد علاقه تون چیه؟ مورد علاقه تون کیه؟ مورد علاقه تون کیه؟ مورد علاقه تون کیه؟ میبرمت سینما. مورد علاقه تون کیه؟ اگه پول داشته باشم، این اشی، میبرمت سینما. 10 ge doxtar-e xubi bāŝi, mibaramet sinemā المؤلف. ایران. او عور میرم ایران.

Comprehension

Hello. I just wanted to say that next week, if the weather is good, we will come to London for a tour. You know that the major hobby of me and my wife is theatre and we like London theatres very much. We will be happy if you have

the time to come with us. We will kill two birds with one stone (*lit* hit two targets with one arrow): we will see both each other and a good play. Looking forward to seeing you. Ali, 14 Mordad (fifth month in Iranian calendar) 1 He lives in London. Ali is *coming* to London to see him 2 Theatre 3 To go for a tour of London, weather permitting 4 For Peter to join Ali and his wife, if he is free 5 If Peter can join them, they can see each other as well as a good play

Unit 13

Exercise 1

midunestam; مى دونستم midunestam; مى گفتم midunestam; مى كردم mitunestam; مى كردم sohbat mikardam 3 صحبت مى كردم mitunestam; مى تونستم mineveŝtam 4 صحبت مى كردى mikardi 5 مى بودم mikardi 5 سفر مى كردم mikardam 6 بودم nemikardam 6 سفر مى كردم mikardam 7 سفر مى كودم mifahmidam 8 بود mifahmidam 8 بود 9 bud; مى فهمىدىد daŝtam; مى فهمىدىد daŝtam; مى فهمىدىد midadam 10 داشتىد mifahmidid

Exercise 2

/in kolāhاین کلاه/روسری/پیرهن/بارونی/کت (و) شلوار/دامن چنده؟ 1 این شلوار / rusari/pirhan/bāruni/kot (o) ŝalvār/dāman cande? 2 ?in ŝalvār/dastkeŝ/kafŝ/jurāb cande دستكش/كفش/جوراب چنده؟ /ŝāl-e gardan-e/kot-e شال گردن /كت/كراوات/بالتوي قَشنگُي داريد. 3 این ماشین پنجاه میلیون تومن 4 kerāvāt-e/pālto-ye qaŝangi dārid مى ارزه، امّا براى in māŝin panjāh milyun toman miarze? 5 مى ارزه؟ اگه جای من بودید 6 miarze, ammā barāye man gerune من گرونه. اگه age jā-ye man budid ce-kār mikardid? 7 چه کار می کردید؟ -age milyuner budid ce-kār mikar ميليونر بوديد چه کار می کرديد؟ -yek bimā یک بیمارستان برای بچّههای مریض میساختم. 8 ?did restān barāye baccehā-ye mariz misāxtam 9 اگه زیاد پول داشتم، age ziād pul dāŝtam, dour-e donyā safar دور دنیا سفر می کردم. age mādaram اگه مادرم اینجا بود، عصبانی میشد. 10 injā bud, asabāni mišod 11 حُوب صحبت age mitunestam كنم، بهش مى گفتم چقدر از كشورش خوشم مى اد. fārsi xub sohbat konam, beheŝ migoftam cegadr az keŝvareŝ xoŝam miād

Exercise 3

1d = If you had eaten that rotten sandwich, you would have become ill.

2c = If you had told my father about the subject, I would have become upset.

3f = If we had left home later, we would not have arrived in time.

4b = If you had come five minutes earlier, you would have seen my brother.

5a = If you had not married me, I would have committed suicide.

6e = If you had invited me, I would have come to your party.

Exercise 4

punzdah tā toxm-e morq; دو کیلو خیار do kilu به ونزده تا تخم مرغ do tā hendevāne; یک کیلو گوجهفرنگی yek kilu gouje-farangi; سه تا نان nim kilu panir; نیم کیلو پنیر

Exercise 5

toxm-e morqhā duneyi cande? How much are the eggs each? پونزده تا لطف کنید. punzdah tā lotf konid. Please give (me) fifteen of them. پونزده تا لطف کنید. xiārhā kiluyi cande? How much are the cucumbers per kilo? دو کیلو لطف کنید. do kilu lotf konid. Please give (me) two kilos. بعنده! bendevānehā kiluyi cande? How much are the watermelons per kilo? مناوبات do tā bedid, lotfan. Please give (me) two of them. Please give (me) two of them. کیلویی چنده! gouje-farangihā kiluyi cande? How much are the tomatoes per kilo? کیلویی چنده! yek kilu, lotfan. One kilo, please. پنیر کیلویی چنده! panir kiluyi cande? How much is the cheese per kilo? پنیر کیلویی چنده! nim kilu lotf konid. Please give (me) half a kilo. چنده! میلو الطف کنید. nim kilu lotf konid. Please give (me) half a kilo. چنده! nunhā duneyi cande? How much are the bread (loaves) each? lotfan. Three of them, please.

Exercise 6

1 Sir, how much are these oranges per kilo? 2 Sir, do you sell these chickens by kilo/weight or by number? 3 Please give me five kilos of rice and two chickens 4

How much did it come to in total? 5 Be my guest, it's not worth a mention 6 I insist. How much did it come to?

Exercise 7

1 بندره. 2 xob, cand sod? بندره. 2 بند شد؟ خب، چند شد؟ و qābeli nadāre عند شد؟ د تقاه خواهش می کنم، چند شد؟ د xāheŝ mikonam, cand sod? 4 بنج هزار تومن. 4 ruye-ham panj hezār toman ویهم پنج هزار تومن. 4 yek eskenās-e devist-tomani بندرو لطف می کنید؟ و yek sekke-ye dah-riāli بندره لطف می کنید؟ و yek sekke-ye dah-riāli بندره کنید کنید خوریالی. 6 sekar-o lotf mikonid? اگه مقدار گوجه رنگه؟ قهوه ای تیره. 8 kotetun ce range? qahveyi-e tire و کاهو خریدم. و کاهو خریدم نمک بخرم! یک مقدار گوجه فرنگی و کاهو خریدم. و yek meqdār gouje-farangi o kāhu xaridam. farāmuŝ kardam namak bexaram! 10

age riŝetun-o tarāŝide budid, nemiŝ(e) nāxtametun 11 بودید، نمی فوردم، بهتر نمی شدم. age āntibiutik-o nemixordam, behtar nemiŝodam

Comprehension

Yesterday, I bought an overcoat for my father. When he saw it, he became very happy, but I felt that he didn't like its colour very much. To take the overcoat back, I asked my mother to come with me. My mother is not shy at all, but I'm very inhibited. The shop owner asked: What's wrong with the overcoat? I said: Nothing's wrong with it, only its colour is too bright for my father. The seller said: It doesn't matter, it shows your father (to be) younger. I no longer knew what to say. If my mother had not come with me, I would have returned home with that same overcoat! However, my mother immediately said: His father doesn't like this colour. If you were in his place, would you impose this overcoat on your father? The seller had no answer and immediately took the overcoat back, but before we came out of the shop, he said to my mother, with a smile: If you were my wife, I would give you a glass of poison! My mother also said, with a smile: If you were my husband, I would drink that poison to the last drop!

1 An overcoat for his father 2 His father did not like the colour 3 He is shy/inhibited; his mother is the opposite 4 Surely, if the shopkeeper was in Masoud's place, he would not impose the 'disliked' overcoat on his father 5 Masoud would have returned home with the same overcoat 6 *Evasion*: When

Masoud says that the colour of the overcoat is too bright for his father, the shopkeeper dismissively states that this is not a problem; it makes him look younger. *Reasoning*: Masoud's mother says: 'His father doesn't like this colour. If you were in his place, would you impose this overcoat on your father?' *Conviction*: 'The seller had no answer.' 7 When the shopkeeper says to Masoud's mother: 'If you were my wife, I would give you a glass of poison!' his mother retorts: 'If you were my husband, I would drink that poison to the last drop!'

Unit 14

Exercise 1

tu-ye sālon/tāksi miŝe sigār keŝid? 2 دارو می شه با پست فرستاد؟ 2 dāru miŝe bā post ferestād? دارو می شه با پست فرستاد؟ 3 bā in kāmpiuter miŝe imeil فرستاد؟ 3 bā in kāmpiuter miŝe imeil اونجا/ اینجا می شه ماشینو پارک کرد؟ 4 ves teʾātr miŝe māŝin-o pārk kard? 5 بناتر می شه بستنی برد؟ 5 tu-ye teʾātr miŝe bastani bord? 6 ز سخنران می شه عکس گرفت؟ 6 az soxanrān miŝe aks gereft?

Exercise 2

neside bāŝand 2 خورده باشيد vorde bāŝid 3 رسيده باشند senide bāŝid 4 خورده miresid 5 دعوت مى كرديد da'vat mikardid 6 مى ضورديد mixordid 7 مى ضورديد da'vat mikardid 6 مى ضورديد nabudam; بخرم nabudam; نبودم telefon mikardam 9 تلفن مى كردم bexaram 10 نيستم nistam; نيستم beŝ(e)navam

1 tu-ye havāpeimā miše sigār kešid? توى هواپيما مىشە سيگار كشيد؟ 1 in basta-ro miŝe bā این بستهرو می شه با پست سفارشی فرستاد؟ 2 توی تئاتر می شه ساندویچ / نوشیدنی برد؟ 3 ?post-e sefāreŝi ferestād شما باید چلوکباب 4 ?tu-ye te`ātr miŝe sāndevic/nuŝidani bord -ŝomā bāyad celouk خورده باشيد. شما چندين بار به ايران رفتهايد. abāb xorde bāŝid. ŝomā candin bār be irān rafteid 5 بايد اونهارو bāyad unhā-ro dide bāŝid. hamiŝe ديده باشيد. هميشه تو رستورانند. tu resturānand 6 بايد دارو را مي خورديد. bāyad dāru rā mixordid bāyad unhā-ro da`vat mikardid بايد آون هارو دعوت مي كرديد. 7 ŝir rā nabāyad mixordid. xarāb شير را نبايد مىخورديد. خراب بود! 8 un sāndevic-o اون ساندویچو نباید می خورد. مال من بود! 9 با او نباید این طور حرف می زدید.10 !nabāyad mixord. māl-e man bud bā u nabāyad in-tour harf mizadid. nārāhat ŝode! 11 ناراحت شده! bāyad bāhāŝun miraftam. (ammā بايد باهاشون مىرفتم. (امّا نرفتم.) باید باهاش میرفتم. و رفتم، چون (به) کمک نیاز bāyad bāhāŝ miraftam. va raftam, con (be) komak niāz barāye in nāme ceqadr براى اين نامه چقدر تمبر لازمه؟ dāŝt 13 kojā mitunam كجا مى تونىم چَند تا فَتوكپى بگيرم؟ 14 kojā mitunam از كجا مى تونم فكس / أيميل (يست 15 cand tā fotokopi begiram? أيميل

(الكترونيك) بفرستم az kojā mitunam faks/imeil (post-e elekteronik) bef(e)restam?

Exercise 4

دیده شدن 3 baste ŝodan بسته شدن 2 xorde ŝodan خورده شدن dide ŝodan 4 شنیده شدن 5 senide ŝodan 5 گفته شدن 6 foruxte ŝodan 5 خریده شدن 4 xaride ŝodan 5 شدن 6 soste ŝodan 8 شدن 8 soste ŝodan

Exercise 5

1 Excuse me, your voice can't be heard 2 Your head can't be seen in the picture 3 The chicken has not been cooked well 4 This letter has not been signed 5 The window was opened 6 Ali has not been freed/released from prison yet 7 This soup has not been warmed up well 8 My watch was found 9 Foreign currency rate (of exchange) has not been announced yet 10 In the year 1998, the American football (soccer) team was defeated by the Iranian team!

Exercise 7

1 مارتین لوتر کینگ در سال ۱۹۶۸ کشته شد. 1 مارتین لوتر کینگ در سال ۱۹۶۸ کشته شد. 2 گوشت خوب و guŝt xub poxte naŝode. 3 پخته نشده. و yek-daf`e dar baste ŝod 4 بخشید، خورده شد! ببخشید، خورده شد! چیم کجاست؟ ببخشید، خورده شد! و sāndevicam kojāst? bebaxŝid, xorde ŝod! 5 ببخشید، این چک bebaxŝid, in cek emzā naŝode

Comprehension

- A: Excuse me, has the foreign currency rate (of exchange) been announced for today?
- C: It must have been. Wait a moment, please ... I'm sorry, it will be announced at 11 o'clock. What have you got?
- A: I wanted to change £1,000.
- C: The rate of purchasing for yesterday was 1,600 tumans. For today's rate you can phone this number: 38756.
- A: I'm afraid I'm in a hurry. Is it possible to sell at yesterday's rate?
- C: Yes, fill in this form (and) take (it) to counter 3.

1 If today's exchange rate has been announced 2 It must have been announced by now 3 It will be announced at 11 o'clock 4 To change £1,000 5 He has to sell the pounds at yesterday's rate because he is in a hurry.

Unit 15

تنهایی 4 hasudi حسودی 3 sādi شادی 2 voŝ-hāli خوش حالی 1 tanhāyi 5 خوش مالگی 6 por-ruyi 6 پررویی 5 hāmelegi 7 آوارگی 7 tufāni-budan توفانی بودن

Exercise 2

1e, 2d, 3a, 4b, 5f, 6c

Exercise 3

inemitunam nafas bekeŝam 3. نمى خوابم. nemitunam nafas bekeŝam 3 نمى خاره بخوابم. nemizāre bexābam نمى خاره بخوابم. adu adu adu adu adu evaluati miram tu pārk, veili atse mikonam 5. مى سرفه مى كنم، خيلى عطسه مى كنم، بخيلى سرفه مى كنم. adu jāru mikonam, xeili sorfe mikonam 6 درطول شب، لازمه كه چندين dar-tul-e ŝab, lāzeme ke candin bār be tuālet beram

Exercise 4

مهمونها ahmad goft (ke) xast(e)am 2 گفتند (که) خستهام. 1 مهمونها mehmunhā goftand (ke) mā gorosneim گفتند (که) ما گرسنهایم. 3 برادرم گفت (که) u porsid sā`at cande 4 او پرسید ساعت چنده. 3 barādaram goft (ke) māŝinam-o foruxtam ماشینمو فروختم. 5 hasan goft (ke) nemidunam televizion ceŝe

Exercise 5

1b, 2c, 3d, 4e, 5a

1 ببخشید، برای دندون درد/کمردرد چی دارید؟ bebaxŝid, barāye dandun-dard/kamar-dard ci dārid? 2 از این خمیردندونها کدوم zin xamir-dandunhā kodum behtare? 3 چته؟ cete? چته مثل اینکه سرما خوردهام. 4 فقت 5 mesl-e inke sarmā xord(e)am مثل اینکه سرما خوردهام. 9 goft (ke) qatār-e sāʾat-e noh-o az dast dādeam فیتم (که) قطار ساعت نه و از دست دادهام. porsid ŝomā motaʾahhelid. وچی گفتی؟ to ci gofti? 8 بهش گفتم (که) نامزد دارم. و to ci gofti? 8 تو چی گفتی؟ و چی گفتی؟ و چی گفتی؟ foci goftam (ke) nāmzad dāram

Comprehension

- A: Do you know that you're about one hour late?
- B: I'm really sorry. I was supposed to come with Ahmad. Two hours ago, he phoned (and) said he had sold the car; he couldn't come without a car; he was very tired. As for me, I missed the train because I was late.
- A: You said you would phone if it was late.
- B: I'm truly ashamed. Are you feeling better?
- A: No, I have a temperature. All my body is aching. I can't sleep because of the severity of the pain.
- B: Have you eaten anything?
- A: No, I don't have an appetite.
- B: Didn't the doctor give (you) any medicine?
- A: Yes, he gave (me) a sucking tablet, a cough mixture and a penicillin injection.
- B: Aren't you allergic to penicillin?
- A: Fortunately not.
- B: Lucky you!

1 B apologises for being late and for not phoning to say that he would be late 2 Ahmad was supposed to give B a lift 3 He phoned two hours ago to say that he had sold the car and that he could not come without a car as he was very tired 4 He has a temperature. His body aches all over. The pain is so severe he cannot sleep 5 When B realises that A is not allergic to penicillin, he says: 'Lucky you!' This suggests that b is allergic to it, and wishes he wasn't.

Unit 16

Exercise 1

avvalin ruz-e sāl 2 آخرین روز سال āxarin ruz-e sāl 3 سوّمین ماه سال dovvomin hafte-ye sāl 4 سوّمین ماه سال sevvomin māh-e sāl 5 چهارمین فصل سال cahāromin fasl-e sāl

Exercise 2

1 Sohrab Hashemi 2 A friend 3 Merry Christmas and Happy New Year

Exercise 3

sohrāb-e aziz Dear Sohrab سهراب عزيز kerismas va sāl-e nou mobārak! Merry Christmas and Happy New Year! ... Your friend . . . (signed)

Exercise 4

azizam, in (hedye) qābel-e to nist. sālgard-e ezdevājemun mobārak
am, in (hedye) qābel-e to nist. sālgard-e ezdevājemun mobārak
منزل نو sāhebes qābele. xeili zahmat kesidi 3 تولدتون مبارک. tavallodetun mobārak 4 منزل نو tavallodetun mobārak 5 مبارک. manzel-e nou mobārak 5 مبارک میالگرد ازدواجتان را به dahomin sālgard-e ezdevājetān rā be somā tabrik miguyam 6 شما تبریک می گویم.

tavallodetun mobārak 4 مبارک فرمی میالگرد ازدواجتان را به dahomin sālgard-e ezdevājetān rā be somā tabrik miguyam 6 شما تبریک می گویم.

tavallodetun mobārak 4 مبارک فرمی فرمی نوابی می میالگرد ازدواجتان را به be pedar (o) mādaret salām beresun 8 به پدر (و) مادرت سلام برسون. jāt xāli, mehmuni xeili xos gozast

پوشیده (است) xābideand 3 خوابیدهاند xābideand 3 پوشیده (است) puŝide (ast) 4 دراز کشیدهام derāz keŝideam 5 نشستهاید

Exercise 6

unhā kenār-e panjare istāde اونها كنار پنجره ايستاده بودند. 1 بهترين baccehā xābide budand 3 بچّهها خوابيده بودند. 2

روى تخت دراز behtarin lebāses-o puŝide bud 4 لباسشو پوشيده بودم. كجا نشسته بوديد؟ ru-ye taxt derāz keŝide budam 5 كشيده بودم. kojā neŝaste budid?

Exercise 7

1 Do you feel like going to a concert tonight? 2 No, I don't feel like it tonight. Leave it (for) tomorrow night 3 Do you feel like going for a swim this afternoon?

Exercise 8

ru-ye taxt derāz keŝide o televizion tamāŝā mikone 2. من بهترین لباسمو پوشیدهام. ru-ye taxt derāz من بهترین لباسمو پوشیدهام. man behtarin lebāsam-o puŝid(e)am. ŝomā ci puŝid(e)id? شما خوابیدهاند. lotfan sāket bāŝid; baccehā xābid(e)and 4 كنار بخاری ایستادهاند و شیر کاکائو kenār-e boxāri istād(e)and o ŝir-kākā'o mixorand میخورند. barādaram televizion tamāŝā mikone va mādaram pahluŝ neŝaste اخر هفتهی پیش دوست ایرانیم اومد دیدنی. āxar-e hafte-ye piŝ dust-e irānim umad didanam 7 میدن عموم. diruz raftam didan-e amum 8 امشب حالشو داری بریم تئاتر؟ diruz raftam امشب حالشو داری بریم تئاتر؟ kei va kojā hamdiga-ro bebinim?

Comprehension

Dear Marjan

Hello. I hope you and your family are well. Thank you very much for the nice present you sent me. Pity you were not (present) at my birthday party. Wish you had been there. For my part, I congratulate you and your husband on your wedding anniversary. Right now, as I'm writing this letter to you, Parviz is lying on the bed and listening to music and Sudabeh is standing by the desk and watching me. I know that, having a young child, you are always short of time, but should you feel like writing a letter, we would be happy to see your beautiful handwriting. Parviz and Sudabeh send their regards. Please also convey my greetings to your husband and give your pretty daughter a kiss. Looking forward to seeing you.

Zahra – 23 Shahrivar (Iranian calendar)

1 Informal. Zahra does not use a title with Marjan's name, and she uses 'to 'you' (inf) 2 For the birthday present she had sent 3 Marjan could not come to her birthday party 4 She says جایت خالی بود jāyat xāli bud 'wish you had been there' 5 She is married and has a young daughter 6 On her wedding anniversary 7 Her husband, Parviz, and her daughter, Sudabeh 8 Parviz was lying on the bed and listening to music. Sudabeh was standing by the desk and watching her mother 9 On her 'beautiful handwriting'

Exercise 1

خب، فرمایشی 2 ?xob, farmāyeŝi nadārid خب، فرمایشی دارید؟ د ندارید؟ xob, farmāyeŝi nadārid عرضی ندارم. 3 xob, farmāyeŝi nadārid

Exercise 2

1 As far as we are concerned, our seats are good 2 As far as money is concerned, it's no problem 3 As for me, I know nothing about car mechanics.

Exercise 3

تير، farvardin, ordibeheŝt, xordād 2 فروردين، ارديبهشت، خرداد tir, mordād, ŝahrivar 3 مرداد، شهريور dei, bahman, esfand 4 مهر mehr

Exercise 4

بله، بفرمایید. ?az kojā telefon mikonid بخشید، شرکت کورش؟ اور کجا تلفن می کنید؟ az kojā telefon mikonid? از کجا تلفن می کنید؟ az irān telefon mikonam 3 از ایران تلفن می کنی. من که از کامپیوتر az irān telefon mikonam 3 از ایران تلفن می کنی. مفتهی man ke az kāmpiuter hicci nemidunam 4 هیچّی نمی دونی. شفتهی man ke az kāmpiuter hicci nemidunam 4 هیچّی نمی دونی. امهار آینده می بینمت. و zemestun-e ayande mibinamet 5 میران برای اسکی. و zemestun-e ayande miram irān barāye eski 6 پاییز گذشته دوست ایرانیم اومد 6 payiz-e gozaŝte dust-e irānim umad landan 7 بایین الله بایین بایین المور با pāyiz-e gozaŝte dust-e irānim umad landan 7 مایل بودم با pāyiz-e gozaŝte dust-e irānim umad landan 7 مایل بودم با pāyiz-e gozaŝte dust-e irānim umad landan 7 مایل بودم با pāyiz-e gozaŝte dust-e irānim umad landan 3 مایل بودم با pāyiz-e gozaŝte dust-e irānim umad landan 3 مایل بودم با pāyiz-e zudtar behtar. هرچه زودتر بهتر. و المورز بعداز طهر خوبه و ساعتی و عداد عدوده و عداد عدوده و ساعتی بعداز طهر خوبه و ba'd-az-zohr xube? 11 خوبه. پس ساعت سه می بینمتون. xube. pas sā'at-e se mibinametun

1 ببخشید، شما انگلیسی بلدید؟ bebaxŝid, ŝomā engelisi baladid? این جملهرو نمیفهمم. می تونید ترجمهاش کنید، لطفاً؟ in jomla-ro nemifahmam. mitunid tarjom(e)aŝ konid, lotfan?

Exercise 6

1 I can play badminton well 2 Can you play the violin? 3 My brother can swim well 4 We can speak Persian well 5 can you drive? 6 I can't ride a horse well 7 My father knows a little about car mechanics.

Exercise 7

1d, 2c, 3e, 4g, 5b, 6f, 7a

Exercise 8

1 This is where J says he also knows 'a bit of Persian' 2 The interviewer is complimenting J on his command of Persian 3 J is applying for a translator's job but asks the interviewer to translate a sentence on the form 4 He says it is easier for him to translate from English (his mother tongue) into Persian (a foreign language for him) 5 'Particularly if a dictionary is not available.'

Exercise 9

نه، فرانسه بلدم. ?piāno baladid بيانيولى بلديد؟ na, farānse baladam 2 بيانيست خوبيه. ?piāno balade موتور (سيكلت) سوارى بلديد؟ motor (siklet) savāri baladid? موتور (سيكلت) سوارى بلديد؟ na, ammā docarxesavāri baladam بامن ترجمه امّا دو چرخهسوارى بلدم. أمّا دو چرخهسوارى بلدم. in jomla-ro mitunid barām be engelisi/fārsi tarjome konid, lotfan? 5 بنجا ايستادهايد؟ cand vaqte injā istādeid? 6 بنجا ايستادهايد؟ cand vaqte injā neŝasteid? چند وقته اينجا نشستهايد؟ cand vaqte injā orizdريد؟ چند وقته انگليسي cand vaqte engelisi mixunid? 8 پيد وقته منظريد؟ چند وقته تو انگليسي cand vaqte engelisi mixunid? 9 بيد وقته تو انگليسي cand vaqte tu engelis zendegi mikonid? 10 مي خونيد؟ چند وقته براى اين شرکت کار مي کنيد؟ مي کنيد؟ مي کنيد؟ مي کنيد؟ مي کنيد؟ do sāle fārsi mixunam

Comprehension

Hafez Publications

No. 790, Hafez Street, Tehran

Tel: 380156 Fax: 380157

Email: info@haafezchaap.com

Date: 16 Aban 1389

Dear Mr Jackson

With (my) greetings and gratitude for attending the interview on Saturday 15 Aban 1389, you are invited to call at the office of this company on Saturday 29 Aban 1389, at 8:30am. The company's director would like to talk to you about details of the job, amount of salary and other terms and conditions of employment.

If the proposed time is not suitable for you, please contact the above telephone number or email (address) as soon as possible and inform the company's secretary of the matter. Meanwhile, fill in the attached form and send it to this company's address by 26 Aban 1389 at the latest.

Yours sincerely

Ehsan Jafari

1 Saturday 15 Aban 1389 (Iranian calendar) 2 The following day 3 He is inviting J to go to the firm on Saturday 29 Aban 1389, at 8:30 a.m. The director wants to talk to him about the details of the job, salary and other conditions of employment 4 If the proposed time is unsuitable, he can change it 5 By phoning or emailing the company's secretary 6 He is asked to fill in a form and send it to the company by 26 Aban 1389

Answers to the reading exercise matching the English-Persian equivalents on pp. xxxvi-xxxviii.

أتُم59	ثُلث23	سَخت1	لَذيذ17
آسفالت27	جَذب48	سرویس14	مَأمور70
أغلَب60	چک57	سُس5	ماسْک9
امضاء 21	حَاجِي37	سوء68	مُبل33
أيدز50	حَريص38	شاه35	مَثَلاً2
ِ بَچّه69	حَريف32	صُبح67	مَريض39
بُطری51	حِفظ16	صَد 43	مَسئول54
بَعد18	خُوب6	صَغير13	مَظلوم65
بَنا61	دارائی62	ضامِن7	مَگَس44
بَنَّا22	دارایی24	طوطى15	مُؤمِن45
پاپ49	ذات4	ظُلم20	ميخ3
پاسپورت58	رئيس25	عَكس26	نه 64
پَنج8	رَأْس63	فَقير28	نُه30
تابِع40	ريش19	فيوز66	ويزا46
تَصميم52	زير11	قاشُق56	هال55
تَقريباً42	ژِست12	كيلو47	يارد10
تِهران29	سُوال53	گاز31	
تيغ41	سايز36	لامپ 34	

Reference grammar

This grammar summary is not exhaustive. To economise on space, grammar sections given in the lessons have not been reproduced here, but are cross-referenced.

- 1 Grammar of the sound
- 2 Grammar of the syllable
- 3 Grammar of the word
- 4 Grammar of the phrase
- 5 Grammar of the sentence
- 6 Grammar of communication
- 1 Grammar of the sound The sounds of Persian are explained on pp. xiv and xix.
- 2 Grammar of the syllable The syllable structure in Persian is: C+V+C+C (where C = consonant, V = vowel). This means that a single vowel may carry only one consonant before it, and a maximum of two consonants after it. Examples: **sag** 'dog'; **sang** 'stone'; **bast** 'He/she closed'

In theory, this should not present the native English speaker with much difficulty because English syllable structure allows a far greater number of consonants before and after a single vowel: C+C+C+V+C+C+C (e.g. the word

'strengths'*). However, the two languages differ in the way they distribute consonants within the syllable. For instance, the sounds **t** and **h** occur in both languages. While Persian allows the final cluster **t+h**, English does not allow this.* Examples in Persian: منطح sath 'surface', فقتح fath 'conquest'.

* You will note that here we are talking about consonant *sounds*, not *letters*!

3 Grammar of the word

Word stress

Persian words of more than two syllables are mostly stressed on the last syllable. Here are some of the exceptions where the first syllable carries the stress:

```
ولى vali but; امّا ammā but; ولى balke rather; چرا agar/age (col) if; مگر مگه magar/mage (col) except, but; مگر har-vaqt whenever; هروقت har-cand although; مركس har-kas whoever; زيرا zirā because (l); هركس hic-kas nobody; هيچوقت hic-vaqt never; هيچكس hic-jā nowhere; هيچجا
```

Prefixes and suffixes

با	bā	with, having
باادب	bā-adab	polite (lit with courtesy)
بااراده	bā-erāde	decisive (lit with willpower)
باسواد	bā-savād	literate, educated (lit with literacy)
بامزه	bā-maze	witty, cute (lit with taste)
بی	bi	without, lacking
بىادب	bi-adab	impolite (lit without courtesy)
بىارادە	bi-erāde	indecisive (lit without willpower)
بىسواد	bi-savād	illiterate (lit without literacy)
بيمزه	bi-maze	bland, tasteless (lit without taste)
بيكار	bi-kār	jobless, unemployed (lit without work)

```
full (of)
          por-kār
                           hardworking, workaholic (lit full of
                           lucrative, well-paid (lit full of income)
          por-darāmad
                           (of colour) dark (lit full of colour)
          por-rang
                           cheeky (lit full of face)
          por-ru
          por-zur
                           strong (lit full of strength)
                           hairy (lit full of hair)
          por-mu
                           (with/having) little
          kam
          kam-kār
                           work-shy (lit of little work)
          kam-darāmad
                           badly-paid (lit of little income)
                           (of colour) light (lit with little colour)
          kam-rang
                           shy (lit with little face)
          kam-ru
                           weak (lit with little strength)
          kam-zur
          kam-mu
                           having little hair
                           (similar to the English suffix '-mate')
          ham
          ham-kār
                           workmate, colleague
همكلاس
                           classmate
          ham-kelās
                           roommate
          ham-otāq
          ham-safar
                           travel mate
          ham-tim
                           team-mate
          ham-xāne
                           housemate
          ham-rāh
                           companion (lit of the same way/route)
          ham-zamān
                           simultaneous (lit same time)
                           neighbour (lit sharing the same
          ham-säye
                             shadow)
                           spouse (lit of the same/equal head)
          ham-sar
          ham-vatan
                           compatriot (lit of the same homeland)
```

Some of the different roles played by the suffix • -i are shown in the following examples. Note the stress pattern.

```
mard/<u>mar</u>di مرد/ مردی
                                   man/a man
                                   man/manhood
    مردامردي
                mard/mardi
   خوب/ خوبی
                 xub/xubi
                                   good/goodness
                 abr/abri
                                   cloud/cloudy
                 telefon/telefoni
                                   telephone/telephonic;
                                     by telephone
                xordan/xordani
                                   eating/edible
خوردن/ خوردنی
سیگار / سیگاری
                 sigār/sigā<u>ri</u>
                                   cigarette/smoker
 أشغال/ أشغالي
                 āŝqāl/āŝqāli
                                   garbage/garbage collector
                 nānvā/nānvā<u>yi</u>
    نانوا/ نانوایی
                                   baker/bakery
```

We add the suffix -ande to the present stem of the verb to produce a noun of

the agent or an adjective:

(بینده میننده binande viewer, onlooker

(میننده څوانه binande senidan (ŝenav) to hear

(هنونه څوانه څوانه عنونه senavande hearer, listener

(radio audience)

(خان (خان) عام علا علا علا علا الله على ا

The present stem can act as a suffix to produce nouns or adjectives:

xaste-konande خسته کننده

tiring; boring

violon ويولن violin (زنـ) zadan (zan) to play violon-zan ويولنزن violinist pul پول money (دار) dāŝtan (dār) to have pul-dār پول دار rich, moneyed (lit money haver) doruq دروغ [goftan [gu] گفتن [گو] a lie to tell doruq-gu liar; dishonest tin, can bāz kardan (kon) to open quti-bāz-kon tin/can opener

For possessive endings/suffixes, see pp. 23ff.

Nouns

Plural markers are described at pp. 33ff.

After a number, or (تا) چند (تا) how many', 'a few', a noun comes in a singular form: پنج کامپیوتر panj kāmpiuter five computers (lit computer)

جند (تا) کامپیوتر؟ (cand (tā) kāmpiuter? How many computers? (lit computer)

Pronouns

Subject pronouns are dealt with at pp. 6ff.

The possessive endings introduced at pp. 23ff may also be used as objects after verbs or prepositions (see p. 64). Examples:

didameŝ. I saw him/her/it.
be(h)eŝ goftam. I told him/her. (lit I said to him/her.)

do pond azam qarz gereft. I saw him/her/it.
He borrowed two pounds from me.

Definite article for the object

When the object is known to both the speaker and the listener, the speaker uses the word \mathbf{r} \mathbf{r} after the object. It can be placed after a name, a noun or a

pronoun: احمد را دیدم. ahmad rā didam. I saw Ahmad.
mo`allem rā didam. I saw the teacher.
u rā didam. I saw him/her.

(See pp. 54ff.)

Adjectives and adverbs

Most adjectives may also be used as adverbs: مونيده المحمد خواننده المحمد خواننده المحمد خواننده المحمد خواننده خوبيه. Ahmad is a good singer. خوب مي خونه عليه xub mixune. He sings well.

تهران از مشهد بزرگ تر است. -tar: تهران از مشهد بزرگ تر است.

tehrān az maŝhad bozorg-tar ast.

Tehran is larger than Mashhad.

To produce a superlative form, we add the suffix تَرين **-tarin:** تهران بزرگترین شهر ایران است.

tehrān bozorg-tarin ŝahr-e irān ast.

Tehran is the largest city of/in Iran.

Irregular forms

These include:

behtarin best بهترين ; behtar better بهتر غوب behtarin best

Note: Simple and comparative adjectives follow the noun; superlative adjectives precede the noun.

```
ماشین گرون māšin-e gerun (an) expensive car ماشین گرون تر māšin-e gerun-tar (a) more expensive car gerun-tarin māšin the most expensive car
```

Prepositions

Some prepositions are formed by adding the **ezāfe** (a linking sound **-e**, or **-ye** after a vowel) to a noun or an adverb (see section 4 below for more on **ezāfe**).

داخل	dāxel	interior
داخل سينما	dāxel-e sinemā	in/inside the cinema
پشت	poŝt	back
يشت سينما	poŝt-e sinemā	behind the cinema
رو	ru	face; surface
روی میز	ru-ye miz	on the table

4 Grammar of the phrase

ezāfe

This is an **-e** sound which we add to a noun (or a noun phrase) to link it to the following word(s). If the word immediately before the **ezāfe** ends in a vowel, we use **-ye** instead. The use of **ezāfe** after a noun often sends this message to the listener from the speaker:

I'm going to give you more information about the word(s) you have just heard!

This 'information' may indicate ownership, origin, description, name, and so on.

```
الفن جک telefon-e jak Jack's telephone فیلم ایرانی film-e irāni Iranian film bad film فیلم بد film-e bad bad film film-e āvātār the film Avatar خانهی بزرگ مقصوبی خانهی بزرگ مقصوبی خانهی بزرگ مقصوبی خانهی بزرگ ما
```

The **ezāfe** is also used in various prepositional phrases:

az taraf-e on behalf of (lit from the side of)

be taraf-e towards (lit to the side of)

towards (lit to the side of)

be vasile-ye be vasile-ye by means of on/to the left of

(See also pp. 21ff.)

5 Grammar of the sentence

Word order – statement

Here is a basic formula:

pesaram be madrese mire.

My son goes to school.

پسرم هرروز به مدرسه میره.

pesaram har-ruz be madrese mire.

My son goes to school every day.

pesaram har-ruz bā māŝin be madrese mire.

My son goes to school by car every day.

man har-ruz pesaram rā bā māŝin be madrese mibaram.

I take my son to school by car every day.

Word order - auestion

TOTA OTACE YACKION

Structurally, questions are similar to statements. Their main difference is in intonation.

```
شما ایرانی هستید. (> falling tone) You are Iranian. (> falling tone) You are Iranian. (> rising tone) Are you Iranian? (> somā ki hastid? (> falling tone) Who are you? (> falling tone) Whore are you? (> falling tone) Where are you?
```

Intonation

You will note from the above examples that statements, as well as questions that begin with a question word (e.g. 'who', 'where', etc.) have a falling tone. 'Yesno' questions normally have a rising tone. This is similar to English. However, in Persian, the question word normally carries the sentence stress, while in English it is usually the verb that is stressed: (اله) Where were you? or Where have you been?

Note: A stressed question word in English would make the sentence rather aggressive. The Persian sentence is neutral.

```
(See also pp. 7–8, 16 and 368.)
```

Verb – infinitive

Present and past stems All Persian infinitives end with these two sounds -an, e.g. xordan 'to eat', didan 'to see'. Persian verbs have two stems (or roots): present stem and past stem, used for present and past tenses, respectively. The past stem is regularly obtainable from the infinitive by omitting the last two sounds -an. Thus,

the past stems of the above verbs are مخورد **xord** and did, respectively. The present stem is irregular. Therefore, with every new verb introduced, its present stem is placed in round brackets after it: مخوردن (خور) didan (bin) to see

Some verbs, such as those given above, are written and pronounced in colloquial Persian as they are in literary Persian (i.e. newsreaders' style). Some verbs may be colloquialised. This may affect only the present stem (A), only the infinitive

```
(B), or both (C): (A) (گفتن (گو) گفتن (گ)
                                           goftan (gu)
                                                              to tell; to say (1)
                                           goftan (g)
                                                              to tell; to say (col)
                              آمدن (آ)
                                           āmadan (ā)
                                                              to come (I)
                              اومدن (اً)
                                           umadan (ā)
                                                              to come (col)
                       (C) ماندن (مانــ) māndan (mān)
                                                              to stay (/)
                           موندن (مونـ)
                                          mundan (mun)
                                                              to stay (col)
```

Infinitive used as a gerund The gerund is a verbal-noun form, e.g. 'eating'. 'To eat' and 'eating' are represented by the same form in Persian:

```
خوردن مندویچ خورده. nāhār sāndevic xordam.
I ate a sandwich for lunch.
! سرگرمی من خوردن است! sargarmi-e man xordan ast!
My hobby is eating!
```

Tenses

Compared to English, Persian uses far fewer tense forms to refer to acts or facts of past, present and future. Here's the list using my favourite verb خوردن (خور) **xordan (xor)** 'to eat'. The following scenario is not very exciting, but it provides a context for the various tense forms used in English and Persian. The

tense forms have been underlined to make comparison easier.

Ahmad is in an Iranian restaurant contemplating his eating habits!

man har-ruz sā`at-e davāzdah dar resturān nāhār mixoram.

I eat lunch in a restaurant at 12 o'clock every day.

diruz dar yek resturān-e hendi nāhār xordam.

I ate lunch in an Indian restaurant yesterday.

fardā dar yek resturān-e itāliāyi nāhār mixoram.

I will eat lunch in an Italian restaurant tomorrow.

(It takes Ahmad 2 hours to eat his lunch! He normally begins at 12 and finishes at 2 p.m. It is now a quarter past 2 p.m.) ناهار خوردهام.

nāhār xorde-am.

I have eaten lunch.

diruz in vaqt, nāhār xorde budam.

Yesterday (at) this time, I had eaten lunch.

fardā in vaqt, nāhār xorde-am.

Tomorrow (by/at) this time, I will have eaten lunch.

(It is now a quarter past 12 noon.)

(hālā) dāram nāhār mixoram.

(Now) I am eating lunch.

diruz in vaqt, dāstam nāhār mixordam.

Yesterday (at) this time, I was eating lunch.

fardā in vaqt, dāram nāhār mixoram.

Tomorrow (at) this time, I will be eating lunch.

(It is now 1 p.m.)

yek sā'at ast ke dāram nāhār mixoram.

I have been eating lunch for one hour.

diruz in vaqt, yek sā`at bud ke dāstam nāhār mixordam.

Yesterday (at) this time, I had been eating lunch for one hour.

fardā in vaqt, yek sā'at ast ke dāram nāhār mixoram.

Tomorrow (at) this time, I will have been eating lunch for one hour.

* In literary Persian, the future tense is expressed according to this formula:

You will note that the literary present stem of the verb 'خواستن اخواها 'to want' is used as an auxiliary verb in the above formula. Here is the full table:

```
Verb used: (خور خور) xordan (xor) to eat
Past stem:
                   xord خورد
     من خواهم خورد.
                       man xāham xord.
                                              I will eat.
     تو خواهی خورد.
                                              You will eat. (inf)
                        to xāhi xord.
      او خواهد خورد.
                       u xāhad xord.
                                              S/he will eat.
     ما خواهیم خورد.
                       mā xāhim xord.
                                              We will eat.
   شما خواهید خورد.
                                              You will eat.
                        ŝomā xāhid xord.
  آنها خواهند خورد.
                        ānhā xāhand xord.
                                              They will eat.
```

Subjunctive

When two verbs go together (and the second verb is somehow affected or influenced by the first verb), the second verb takes a simple subjunctive form:

Thus:

```
dunestan (dun) to know
I know.
I know.
I know.
I must/should know.

هُقَyad bedunam.
قَyad bedunam.
I might know.
momkene bedunam.
I may know.
mixām bedunam.
I want to know.
I wanted to know.
I wanted to know.
```

When the second verb relates to past act or fact, it takes a perfect subjunctive form:

Past stem of verb +
$$^{\circ}$$
 -e + باشه \mathbf{b} $\mathbf{\bar{a}}$ $\mathbf{\hat{s}}$ + personal ending

Thus:

```
من او را دیدهام.

. من او را دیدهام.

. شاید او را دیده باشم.

. شاید او را دیده باشم.

. man u rā dideam.

. i might have seen him.

. bāṣam.

. i must have seen him.

. i must have seen him.
```

Passive voice

To turn an active verb into a passive form, we add the suffix • -e to its past stem followed by the verb شدن (شـــ) sodan (\$) 'to become':

```
پختن poxtan to cook →
(ش) پخته شدن (ش) poxte ŝodan (ŝ) to be cooked

cucio c
```

Intransitive, transitive, causative

When added to the present stem of a verb, the suffix الدن -āndan (col -undan)

intransitive turns or transitive verb into causative: an (خواب xābidan (xāb) خوابيدن to sleep (خوابانــ) xābāndan (xābān) to cause . . . to sleep (خند) خندیدن خند (مند) to laugh xandāndan (xandān) to cause . . . to laugh (خور) xordan (xor خوردن (خور) to eat (خورانـ) xorāndan (xorān) to cause . . . to eat

Conditionals

Type 1

اگه آنتی بیوتیکو بخوری، خوب میشی.

age āntibiutik-o boxori, xub miŝi.

If you take the antibiotic, you'll get well.

Type 2

اگه پول داشتم، یک ماشین نو میخریدم.

age pul dāstam, yek māsin-e nou mixaridam.

If I had money, I would buy a new car.

اگه جای من بودی، چهکار میکردی؟

age jā-ye man budi, ce-kār mikardi?

If you were in my place, what would you do?

اگه فارسی میدونستم، میفهمیدم چی میگه.

age fārsi midunestam, mifahmidam ci mige.

If I knew Persian, I would understand what he says/said.

Type 3

اگه تو تلفن نمی کردی، من تلفن می کردم.

age to telefon nemikardi, man telefon mikardam.

If you hadn't phoned (me), I would have phoned (you).

Expressing a wish

```
(ای) کاش می دونستم. ا wish I knew. (But I don't.)

(ei) kāŝ midunestam. ا wish I knew. (But I don't.)

(ei) kāŝ ŝām naxorde budam. I wish I hadn't eaten dinner. (But I did).
```

Imperative

Add the prefix **be-** to the present stem. For the formal, also add the personal ending **id**: Verb needed: نشستن (شین neŝastan (ŝin) 'to sit down'.

```
بشین. beŝin. Sit down. (inf)
beŝinid. Sit down. (f)
```

6 Grammar of communication 'Using the waste product of our respiratory system, we make one of the most beautiful phenomena in existence, i.e. language.' This beautiful phenomenon has given mankind plenty of pleasure in the form of poetry and literature. However, it can be equally devastating and destructive if used inappropriately.

'In cross-cultural communication, we often find ourselves bumping our heads against invisible barriers.' These invisible barriers can potentially ruin relations between individuals, not to mention nations.

If we find a remark offensive, it is often because of its social inappropriateness rather than its grammatical inaccuracy. You can easily hurt or offend a foreign friend with a perfectly grammatical sentence, pronounced with a near-native accent!

We may have mastered all the 'grammars' mentioned above (1–5). What may have been neglected here is the Grammar or Highway Code of Communication, i.e. the culturally defined 'rules of engagement': what to say to whom, where and when; how to say or not to say it.

Let us remember that learning a foreign language without bothering about the (often) culture-specific norms governing the use of that language would be like learning how to drive a car without bothering about the Highway Code!

What follows is only a small selection of the areas where English and Persian do not seem to follow the same 'Grammar of Communication'. These and many other similar areas need to be carefully noted when speakers of English and Persian are attempting to communicate with each other.

Politeness

People in both cultures are polite to one another, but the way in which this is shown in language and behaviour is not always the same. For instance, the frequency of occurrence of the word 'please' is far greater in English than its dictionary equivalent in Persian: Lotfan. This often leads to misunderstanding in a cross-linguistic situation: the English speaker may consider Iranians to be 'rude because they do not say "please" as often as they should', while the Persian speaker may conclude that his English friend does not wish their friendship to grow any further to a point where what he considers to be an 'overuse' of such formality markers as the word 'please' would be unnecessary!

Taboos (personalness)

Certain topics are considered personal in one culture and perhaps not so in the other. For instance, when an Iranian notices that his friend has just bought something, the first question that comes to his mind would be about the price: 'How much did you pay for it?' This is often regarded as 'personal' in England. Other 'enquiries' considered generally acceptable in Iran, and perhaps not so in England, may include questions about other people's age, income, religion and politics.

Joking

voming

Joking exists in both cultures, but the areas in which this is allowed are not always the same. An Iranian couple living in England take their newborn baby to their family doctor to register. Upon seeing the baby, the doctor says: 'Who does he look like, the milkman?' Not surprisingly, the couple are infuriated by the doctor's remark, which is apparently a standing joke in England!

Complimenting

In England, it may be socially acceptable for a man to compliment another man on the appearance of his wife. Such practice is almost completely unacceptable in Iran.

Soothing

When an Iranian, A, consults another Iranian, B, about his own problem and seeks B's advice, one way in which B may attempt to soothe A, before he can come up with a practical solution, would be to try to play down the enormity of the problem, by saying: مهم نیست mohem nist (lit: It's not important.)

This has led to many instances of misunderstanding between Iranians and English people. Two actual examples, one at a personal level and the other at the International level: One of my students, an English lady, reported that one Saturday, late afternoon, she said to her Iranian husband: 'The shops are about to close and we still haven't bought my birthday cake.' The husband replied: 'It's not important.' The wife was, understandably, infuriated!

In a TV interview, a British official once expressed his fury at what he perceived to be lack of concern on the part of an Iranian official towards the problem about which the former had sought the assistance of the latter. The cause of the fury, according to the British official, was that the Iranian official had said that the matter was 'not important'!

It is noteworthy that what was aimed at soothing and giving reassurance actually burned! By saying **mohem nist** (*lit* It's not important) the Iranian individual was in fact attempting to downplay the problem – or the difficulty of its solution – rather than belittle the victim of the problem!

See also 'Language and culture notes' in each of the 17 units above, notably the following: **ta`ārof** in U9D1

Congratulating in U16D1

Persian-English glossary

The present stem/root of Persian verbs is irregular. Thus, the present stem of each verb is given in round brackets where the verb is introduced. To make life even easier, the present stem of most common verbs is also given as separate entries in the Persian–English glossary. This will be helpful when you meet a verb which is either new or has slipped your memory. All you need to do is to remove the prefixes and suffixes from the verb, and the verb root emerges. You can now look it up in the Persian–English glossary.

For those who do not wish to learn Persian script (yet!) here is an indication of the order in which Persian words are arranged in the Persian–English glossary.

```
\bar{a}, a/e/o, u, i b, p, t, j, c, h, x, d, z, r, z, \hat{g}, s, \hat{s}, s, z, t, z, \bar{a}, a/e/o, u, i, q, f, q, k, g, l, m, n, v, h, y
```

Note: This is just a rough guide as the position of each word is dictated by its Persian spelling. A stroke (/) shows some of the 'vulnerable' boundaries. A more reliable guide would be the alphabet itself (see pp. xviii–xix).

```
(گیر) āteŝ gereftan (gir
    اومدن ā ps for
        أمدن/umadan
                                       to catch fire
                             āteŝ-neŝāni Fire
        āmadan
  āb water; juice
                                       Brigade
                                āxar last, end آخر
  ābān Aban (eighth
                              āxares final آخرش
        month in Iranian
        calendar)
                                       (price)
                             āxar-e hafte آخر هفته
āb-o-havā climate آبوهوا
  ābi blue آبي
                                       weekend
āpārtemān أيارتمان
                               āxarin last آخرين
                                ädres address آدرس
       apartment, flat
```

آر	آوردن ār col ps for	أماده	āmāde prepared,
	āvordan		ready
أرنج	ārenj elbow	أميولانس	āmbulāns
آره	āre yeah		ambulance
أزاد	āzād free	آميول	āmpul injection
أزاد شدن (شــ)	āzād ŝodan (ŝ)	آمريكا	ā mrik ā America
	to be freed	أمريكايي	ā mrik ā yi American
آزاد کردن (کنــ)	āzād kardan (kon)	ان	ān it, that /
	to free	أناناس	ānānās pineapple
أژانس	āĝāns taxi agency	أنتىبيوتيك	āntibiutik
أسانسور	āsānsor lift,		antibiotic
	elevator	أنجا	ā nj ā there /
آسم	ā sm asthma	آنها	ānhā they /
آسمان	āsemān sky	آ وارگی	āvāregi
	āsun easy		homelessness
آش	āŝ soup (Iranian)	أواره	āvāre homeless
آشيز	āŝpaz cook,	آواز	
	chef	أور	آوردن ā var / ps for
أشيزخانه	āŝpazxāne kitchen		āvardan
آشيزخونه	āŝpazxune kitchen	آوَردن (آوَر)	āvardan (āvar)
	col		to bring /
	āŝ pazi cooking	آوُردن (آر)	āvordan (ār)
أشپزی کردن (کنــ)	āŝpazi kardan		to bring col
	(kon) to do (the)	أها	āhā Ah, Aha, Oh
	cooking	أهسته	āheste slow(ly)
آشنا	āŝ en ā familiar;	آهنگ	āhang song, tune
	acquainted;	أينده	āyande coming,
	acquaintance		next
أفتابي	āftābi sunny	آينه	
أقا	ā q ā an honorific		abr cloud
	title used before		abru eyebrow
	or after a male		abri cloudy
100	name		operator operator
أقا	ā q ā gentleman, sir	اتاق	otāq room
آقای	ā q ā-ye Mr	اتاق خواب	
أقايان	ā q ā y ā n gentlemen		bedroom
	ālmān Germany	اتاق يكنفره	otāq-e yek-nafare
ألماني	ālmāni German		single room
آلو	ā lu plum	اتَّفَاق افتادن (افت)	
آمادگی	āmādegi		(oft) to happen
	preparation,		otobus bus
	readiness	اجاره	ejāre rent

اجارهای	ejāreyi rented,	از پرهيز کردن	az parhiz
	rental, for rent	(کنے)	kardan (kon)
اجاره کردن (کنہ)	ejāre kardan (kon)		to avoid
	to rent	ازپیش	az-piŝ already
اجازه	ejäze permission	ازتون	azatun from you
اجازه بديد	ejāze bedid allow	از دست دادن (د)	az dast dādan (d)
	(me)		to lose (e.g. a
اجازه دادن (د)	ejāze dādan (d)		job); to miss
	to allow/let (lit to		(e.g. a train)
	give permission)	ازدواج	ezdevāj marriage
اجرا	ejrā performance	ازدواج کردن (کنے)	ezdevāj kardan
اجرا کردن (کنہ)	ejrā kardan (kon)		(kon) to marry
	to perform	ازقبل	az-qabl already
	ehsās feeling	ازقبل از لذّت بردن	az lezzat
احساس كردن	ehsās kardan	(بر)	bordan (bar)
(کنـ)	(kon) to feel		to enjoy
احسان	ehsän Ehsan (male	از نزدیک	az nazdik lit from
	name)		near/close; from
احمدى	ahmadi Ahmadi		close quarters
	(surname)	اس	es short for است
اخبار	axbār news		ast 'is' [in
اخيرأ	axiran recently		Esfahani accent]
اداره	edāre office	اسب	asb horse
	(department/	اسبسواري	asb-savāri horse
	organisation)		riding
ارادتمند	erädatmand	اسپاگتی	espägeti spaghetti
	sincerely (yours)	اسپانیا	espāniā Spain
ارزان	arzān cheap /	اسپانیایی	espānlāyi Spanish
ارزش	arzes value, worth	است	ast is
ارزون		استخدام	estexdām
ارزیدن (ارز)	arzidan (arz) to be		employment
	worth	استخدام كردن	estexdām kardan
ارسال فرمودن	ersäl farmudan	(کنـ)	(kon) to employ
(فرما)	(farmā) to send	استخر	estaxr pool
	(used for others) I	استخر شنا	estaxr-e ŝenā
ارسال کردن (کنہ)	ersäl kardan (kon)		swimming pool
	to send /	استراليا	osterāliā Australia
اركستر	orkestr orchestra	استراليايي	osterāliāyi
از	az from; of; than		Australian
,	az estefāde	استفاده	
کردن (کئے)	kardan (kon)		using
	to use	استفراغ	estefrāq vomiting

استفراغ كردن	estefrāq kardan	اقامت کردن (کنے)	eqāmat kardan
(کنـ)	(kon) to vomit		(kon) to stay/
اسقناج	esfenāj spinach		reside
	eskātland Scotland	اگر	agar if /
اسكاتلندي	eskātlandi Scottish	اگه	age if col
اسكناس	eskenās banknote	الآن	al'ān now, right now
اسكى	eski ski, skiing	البته	albatte of course
	eski kardan (kon)	الو	alou hello
	to ski		(telephone)
أسم	esm name	tal	ammā but
اسهال	eshāl diarrhoea	امروز	emruz today
اشتها	eŝtehā appetite	امروز بعدازظهر	emruz ba`d-az-
اشكال	eŝkāl problem,		zohr this
	difficulty		afternoon
اشكالى نداره	eŝkāli nadāre OK,	امروز صبح	emruz sobh this
	it's OK		morning
اصفهاني	esfahāni Esfahani,	امشب	emŝab tonight, this
	of/from Esfahan		evening
اصلا"	asian at all;	أمضا	emzā signature
	originally	امضا شدن (شــ)	emzā ŝodan (ŝ) to
اضافه	ezāfe extra,		be signed
	additional	امضا کردن (کنے)	emzā kardan (kon)
اطراف	atrāf sides;		to sign
	quarters		omid hope
اطّلاع	ettelā` information,		omidvār hopeful
	awareness	انار	anār pomegranate
اطّلاعات	ettelā`āt	انتشارات	enteŝārāt
	information;		publications
	intelligence	انجام دادن (د)	anjām dādan (d)
اطِّلاع دادن (د)	ettelā` dādan (d)		to do; to carry out
	to inform	انداختن (انداز)	andāxtan (andāz)
	e`tebār credit		to throw/put (in)
اعلام کردن (کنے)	e`lām kardan (kon)	انداز	andāz ps for
	to announce		andāxtan انداختن
اغلب	aqlab often;		andāze size
	frequently		angoŝt-e pā toe
افت	افتادن oft ps for	انگشت دست	angoŝt-e dast
	oftādan		finger
افتادن (افت)	oftādan (oft)	انگشت شست	angoŝt-e ŝast
	to fall		thumb
اقامت	eqāmat residence;	انگلستان	engelestän
	stay		England

اتگلیس	engelis England	ايميل	imeil email
انگلیسی	engelisi English	این	in this
	(language/person)	این اطراف	
انگور	angur grapes		here (lit these
اواخر اكتبر	avāxer-e oktobr		quarters/sides)
	late October	اينترنت	internet Internet
اواسط اكتبر	aväset-e oktobr	اينجا	injā here, this
	mid-October		place
اوايل اكتبر	avāyel-e oktobr	این حرفها چیه؟	in harfhā cie?
	early October		Don't mention it.
اوّل	avval first	اينطور	
اوّلين	avvalin first	اينكه	
اومدم	umadam I came	اينها	
اومدن (۱)	umadan (ā)	اينهم	
10	to come		(lit this also)
اون	un it, that; he, she		ei-vāi! Oh dear!
1	col	با	
اونجا	unjā there col unke the fact that	با أشنا شدن	
اونکه	un-vagt then	(شــ)	sodan (s) to get to know :
اونوقت	(lit that time)		to meet
la col	unhā they, those		(first time)
اونها	col	با این حساب	
اهل ايران	ahl-e irān native of	ب این حسب	the situation
المن المران	Iran	u.	bābā dad
اهل يودن	ahl-e budan	بابابزر گ	
(هست)	(hast) to come	77	granddad
	from	باجه	bāje counter,
ايتاليايي	itāliāyi Italian	1.70	cashier's desk
ايران	irān Iran	یا حرف زدن	bāharf zadan
ايراني	irāni Iranian	(زنـ)	(zan) to talk
ايرانيان	irāniān Iranians I		to
ايرانىها	irānihā Iranians	باختن (باز)	bāxtan (bāz)
ايست	ist ps for ايستادن		to lose
	istādan	باختى	
ایستادن (ایستـ)	istādan (ist)	باد	
	to stand up	بادتجان	bādenjān
ايستگاه	istgāh station;		aubergine
88	stop		bār time(s)
ايشون	iŝun he, she pol;		bārān rain
42,004	(originally) they	بارانى	
ایکاش	ei-kāŝ I wish		raincoat

با. هن	bārun rain col	بالاء	bālā-ye above,	
بارون اومدن (آ)	bārun umadan (ā)	0-4	over	
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	to rain	بالعكس	bel'aks vice versa	
بار وئی	bāruni rainy;		bānk bank	
377.	raincoat col		bāhāsun with	
<u>ا</u> ل	باختن bāz ps for	0,	them	
,	bāxtan	باهام	bāhām with me	
باز	bāz open	باهم	bā-ham together	
بازر گانی	bāzargāni	بايد	bāyad must,	
	commerce,		should	
	commercial,	ببخشيد	bebaxŝid sorry,	
	business		forgive/excuse	
باز شدن (شــ)	bāz ŝodan (ŝ)		(me)	
	to be opened	אית	bebar take/carry	
باز کردن (کنہ)	bāz kardan (kon)		(please)	
	to open	ببينم	bebinam (for me	
	(something)		to) see	
باز کنید	bāz konid open	ببينمش	bebinames (for me	
	(please)		to) see it	
	bāzu arm	ببينيم	bebinim (for us to)	
	bāzi game; playing		S88	
بازی کردن (کت)	bāzi kardan (kon)	بپیچید	bepicid turn	
-1	to play (a game) bāŝ imp/sub stem		(please)	
باشد	for بودن budan		bacce child baxŝ ps for بخشيدن	
s ±1.	الله bāŝad / for		baxsidan	
2000	bāŝe	(**) ** ***	baxsidan (baxs)	
باشه	bāŝe may it be;	بسيدان ربسب	to forgive	
	let it be; OK;	بخوابير	bexābam (for me	
	so be it	(6.7.1	to) sleep	
باشيد	bāŝid may you be;	بخوايد	bexāld (if) you	
	(please) be		want	
با کسی ازدواج	bā kasi ezdevāj	بخوتم	bexunam (for me	
کردن (کنے)	kardan (kon)		to) read	
	to marry	بخونمش	bexunames (for	
	someone		me to) read it	
	bā kasi molāqāt	بد اومدن (آ)	bad umadan (ā)	
کردن (کنـ)	kardan (kon)		to dislike	
	to meet with	بدمينتون	badminton	
222%	someone		badminton	
	bālā up, upstairs		badan body	
بالاخره	bel'axare at last	بدون	bedun-e without	

بده	bede (may He)	برنامه	barnāme plan;	
	give		programme;	
بذارم	bezāram shall l		timetable	
	put		berenj rice	
بذاريد	bezārid (for you to)		beritāniā Britain	
	put; (please) put	_	beritāniāyi British	
بذاريد كنار	bezärid kenär set	بزرگ	bozorg big, large;	
	aside		old; great	
بر	بردن bar <i>p</i> s for	بزرگان	bozorgān great	
	bordan		people	
	bar on /	بزرگترین	bozorgtarin eldest;	
	barāt for you inf	31	biggest	
	barātun for you		bozorg-sāl adult	
	barādar brother	بستن (بند)	bastan (band)	
	barās for him/her/it		to close, to shut	
	barām for me	بستنى	bastani ice cream	
	barāmun for us	يسته	baste parcel;	
برای	baraye for; for the		closed	
	purpose of	بسته شدن (شـ)	baste ŝodan (ŝ)	
برايت	barāyat for you /		to be closed	
	inf	بشه	bese (it may)	
براى ديدن خالهام	barāye didan-e		become; (if it)	
	xāleam in order		becomes	
	to see my aunt	بشينيد	besinid sit down	
برای شماست	barāye ŝomāst		(please)	
	(it)'s for you	بشينيم	beŝinim (for us to)	
	barāyam for me /		sit down	
برداشتن (دار)	bar dāŝtan (dār)	بعد	ba'd then,	
	to pick up	1	afterwards	
بردن (بر)	bordan (bar)		ba'dan later	
	to take/carry; to win	بعداز	ba'd-az after (time),	
0102-01	bordi you won		following; after (space), past	
	barf snow	15 1	ba'd-az-zohr	
	barf umadan (ā)	بعدازطهر	afternoon	
برف اومدن (أ)	to snow		ba'zi az some of	
	barq electricity;	, .	ba`zi-vaqthā	
برق	lightning	بعضىوقتها	sometimes	
2	barqi electric(al)		beferestid you	
	barakat blessing	بفرسنيد	(can) send	
بر دت بر گشتن (گرد)	bar gaŝtan (gard)		befarmäyid here	
بر تسن (درد)	to return	بقرماييد	you are	
	to return		you are	

0.000			
بفرماييد	befarmāyid go ahead please	بوسیدن (بوســ)	busidan (bus) to kiss
يفرماييد	befarmāyid What	بوق أزاد	buq-e āzād dialling
/-	can I do for you?	, 0,.	tone
ىڧ مايىد	befarmāyid help	به	be in; to
/.	yourself	بهار	bahār spring
ىقتە	bagiye the rest	/ .	(season)
	begam (for me to)	بهاصطلاح	be-estelāh
1-1	say		supposedly
ىگىد	begid (for you to)	به امید	be omid-e in the
	say/tell/ask		hope of
بلافاصله	beläfäsele	أميما	bah-bah! Wow!
	immediately		How lovely!
ىلد	balad able to do	بهتر	behtar better
	(or familiar with)	بهترین	behtarin best
	the stated thing	بهترین لباس بهترین لباس	behtarin lebās
یلد شدن (شــ)	•	0 . 0.74.	best clothes,
	to learn		Sunday best
ىلتد	boland long; tall;	بەتون	
	loud	بهخير	be-xeir may it be
ملندت	bolandtar taller;	<i>y</i>	good
, .	louder	بهزادى	behzādi Behzadi
بلندتر صحبت	bolandtar sohbat	C 74.	(family name)
کردن (کنہ)	kardan (kon)	بەزودى	be-zudi soon (in
	to speak up	- 23 .	the near future)
بلند شدن (شــ)	boland ŝodan (ŝ)	بەسختى	be-saxti
	to get up		with difficulty
بلوز	boluz blouse	به سلام رسوندن	be salām
	bale yes	(رسوئے)	resundan
	belit ticket		(resun) to say
بند	بستن band ps for		hello to
	bastan	يەش	be(h)es to him/her/
بندر	bandar port		it
#	bu smell	بهش	behes to him/her/it
بو دادن (د)	bu dādan (d)	به علاقه داشتن	be alāqe
	to smell	(دار)	dāŝtan (dār)
بود	bud was		to be interested
بودن (هست)	budan (hast) (bāŝ)		in
(باشــ)	to be	به فارسی	be färsi in Persian
, 9 ec	bur blond(e)	به کمک کردن	be komak
23.	ps for بوسیدن	(کنے)	kardan (kon)
بوس	بوسیدن ۱۵۱ کم معام	()	Kai dali (Koli)

بهموقع	be-mouqe` in time	پارک کردن (کنہ)	pārk kardan (kon)
	be-nodrat rarely		to park
به نظر اومدن (آ)	be nazar umadan		pārking car park
	(ā) to seem		pāris Paris
به نگاه کردن	be negāh		pārisi Parisian
(کنہ)	kardan (kon)	پاسپورت	päsport passport
	to look at	پاشنه	pāšne heel
بيارم	blāram shall I bring	_ ,	pākestān Pakistan
بيارند	biārand (for them	پاکستانی	pākestāni
	to) bring		Pakistani
بياريد	biārid bring	پالتو	pāltou overcoat
	(please)	پانزده	pänzdah fifteen
بيايد	biāid come (please)	پانصد	pānsad five
بىخولبى	bi-xābi		hundred
	sleeplessness,	پاییز	pāyiz autumn
	insomnia	پایین	pāyin down
بيدار	bidär awake	پايين	pāyin-e below,
بیدار شدن (شـ)	bidār ŝodan (ŝ)		beneath
	to wake up	پايينتر	päyintar further
بيرون	birun out, outside		down
بيرون	birun-e outside	پختن (پز)	poxtan (paz)
	(of)		to cook
بيست	bist twenty	پخته شدن (شــ)	poxte ŝodan (ŝ)
ییست و یکُم	bist o yekom		to be cooked
	twenty-first	يدر	pedar father
بيشتر	biŝtar more; more	پدرتون	pedaretun
	often; mostly		your father
بيشتر وقتها	biŝtar-e vaqthā	پدرم	pedaram
	most of the		my father
	times	پدر و مادر	pedar o mādar
بيمار	bimār patient; ill,		parents col
	sick		pazirāyi reception
بيمارستان	bimārestān	ж	por full
	hospital		por az full of
بين	bein-e between	پر تقال	porteqal orange
بين	ديدن bin <i>p</i> s for	پررو	por-ru cheeky
	didan	پررویی	por-ruyi
بینی	bini nose	17.55	cheekiness
	pā foot	پرســ	pors ps for پرسیدن
پارتى	pārti party		porsidan
	pārsāl last year	پرسیدن (پرسـ)	porsidan (pors)
پار ک	pārk park (garden)		to ask/enquire

پرکردن (کنہ)	por kardan (kon)	پنجاه	panjāh fifty
	to fill in		panj-tomani a
يرويز	parviz Parviz		five-tuman piece
	(male name)	پنجره	panjare window
پرهيز	parhiz diet	پنج ساله که	panj sale ke it's
	(avoiding certain		five years that
	food items)	ينجشنبه	panj-ŝanbe
پريروز	pariruz day before		Thursday
	yesterday	پنجم	panjom fifth
پريز	periz socket		panjomin fifth
	(electricity)		panir cheese
54	پختن paz ps for		penisilin penicillin
	poxtan		pust skin
پس	pas so, then, in		poster poster
	that case	پوشہ	puŝ <i>p</i> s for پوشیدن
پساز	pas-az after		puŝidan
تسي	post mail, post	پوشیدن (پوشــ)	puŝidan (puŝ) to
يست الكترونيك	post-e elekteronik		wear, to put on
	email		pul money
پستچی	postci postman	پول تمبر	pul-e tam(b)r
يستخونه	postxune post		postage
	office col		(lit money for
	posti postal		stamp)
پس دادن (د)	pas dādan (d) to		pul-dar rich
	return (something	پوليور	poliver pullover,
	bought)		sweater
	pesar son, boy		pond pound (Σ)
پس گرفتن (گیر)	pas gereftan (gir)	پهلوی	pahlu-ye beside,
	to take back		next to
1000	(by seller)	پهلويي	pahluyi adjacent,
*	post back		next-door
*	post-e behind		piāde on foot
پشت دست	post-e dast back of hand	پیادہ شدن (شہ)	piāde šodan (š)
01		A	to get off/out
پلاک	pelāk number (on	پیاده میسم	piāde mišam
1	a house door) polls police	4	I'll get off/out
	polisi detective,		plāz onion
پلیسی	relating to police		piāno piano piānist pianist
	pomp-e benzin		pitzā pizza
پمپ بنزین	petrol station		pitzā-foruŝi
-1.	panj five	پيىرمروسى	pizza shop
5~4	ben'i mo		here and

پیچـ	پیچیدن pic <i>p</i> s for		tās bald	
	picidan		tāksi taxi	
	picid s/he turned		te`ātr theatre	
	picidan (pic) to turn	تب	tab fever,	
پیدا کردن (کن)	peidā kardan (kon)		temperature	
	to find	تب داشتن (دار)	tab dāstan (dār)	
پيراهن	pirāhan shirt, dress		to have a	
	1		temperature	
پيرهن		تبديل	tabdil conversion;	
	col		changing	
	piŝ last, ago	تبدیل کردن (کنـ)		
پیشاز	piŝ-az		(kon) to change	
	before	تبریک	tabrik	
	piŝ-bini forecast		congratulations	
	piŝ-qazā starter		tabrik goftan	
0 -,	piškeš gift	(گ)[گو]	(g)[gu] to	
پیشنهاد	piŝnahād		congratulate	
	suggestion,		topoli plump	
	proposal	تپلىھا	topolihā plump	
	pisnahād kardan		ones	
(کنے)	(kon) to suggest	تحميل كردن (كنـ)		
پیشنهادی	piŝnahādi		(kon) to impose	
	proposed	تخت	taxt (short for	
	peiqām message		تختخواب taxtexāb)	
	peivast attached		bed	
li .	tā unit(s); piece(s);		taxtexāb bed	
	up to; as far as;	تختهنرد	taxte-nard	
	in order to; until		backgammon	
	tābestān summer /		toxm-e morq egg	
تابستون	tābestun summer		tarāzu scale	
af-	col	تراتب	tarāŝ ps for تراشيدن tarāŝidan	
	ta`sir impact	4 41 45 - 41 4		
تا حالا	tā hālā by now; until now	تراشیدن (نرائس)	tarāšidan (tarāš) to shave	
.1-		e 11 -		
	ta`xir delay	ترافيت	terāfik traffic	
نار	tār tar (Iranian musical	ترجمه	tarjome translation tarjome kardan	
		ترجمه تردن (تنه)		
	instrument)	1 -	(kon) to translate	
	tārix date		tarjihan preferably	
تاريح نولد	tārix-e tavallod date of birth	ترجيع دادن (د)	tarjih dādan (d) to prefer	
	tāze fresh; new			
مازه	taze iresii, ilew	ترسى	torŝi pickles	

تر ک	tarak <i>p</i> s for ترکیدن tarakidan	تلفن همگانی	telefon-e hamegāni
ترک کردن (کنہ)	tark kardan (kon)		public telephone
	to leave	تلويزيون	televizion
ترکیدن (ترک)	tarakidan (tarak)		television
	to burst	تماس گرفتن (گیر)	tamās gereftan
تشكّر	taŝakkor gratitude,		(gir) to contact
	thanks	تماشا	tamāšā watching
تشکّر کردن (کنــ)	taŝakkor kardan	تماشا کردن (کنہ)	tamāŝā kardan
	(kon) to thank		(kon) to watch
تشنگی	tešnegi thirst	تمام	tamām finished
تشنه	tesne thirsty	تمام	tamām-e all/whole
تصادف	tasādof accident,		of
	collision	تمبر	tam(b)r stamp
تصميم	tasmim decision	تموم	tamum finished col
تصميم كرفتن	tasmim gereftan	تموم	tamum-e all/whole
(گیر)	(gir) to decide		of col
تعارف	ta`ārof polite ritual	تموم شدن (شــ)	tamum ŝodan
تعارف کردن (کنے)	ta`ārof kardan		to be finished
	(kon) to stand on	تموم کردن (کنے)	tamum kardan
	ceremony		(kon) to finish
تعريف	ta`rif compliment		(something)
تعريفي نداشت	ta`rifi nadāŝt	تميز	tamiz clean
	nothing to write	تميز كردن (كنـ)	tamiz kardan (kon)
	home about		to clean
تعطيل	ta'til closed (bank,	تنيل	tanbal lazy
	etc.)	تنها	tanhā alone;
تعطيلات	ta'tilāt holiday(s)		lonely
تقويم	taqvim diary,	تنهایی	tanhāyi loneliness
	calendar	تنيس	
تكليف	taklif homework	تو	tu in; into col
تگه	tekke piece	توالت	tuālet toilet
تگرگ	tagarg hail	توانــ	توانستن tavān ps for
تگرگ اومدن (أ)	tagarg umadan (ā)		tavānestan
	to hail	توانستن (توانـ)	tavānestan (tavān)
تلفن	telefon telephone,		to be able I
	telephone (call)	توتفرنگى	tut-farangi
تلفن کردن (کنــ)	telefon kardan		strawberry
	(kon) to	توضيح	
	telephone	توضيح دادن (د)	touzih dādan (d)
تلفن همراه	telefon-e hamrāh		to explain
	mobile phone	توفان	tufān storm

	2722 270		190 9000 D
	tufāni stormy		jasn celebration
توفانى يودىن	tufāni-budan	جشن تولد	jaŝn-e tavallod
7	storminess		birthday party/
تولد	tavallod	10021 10021	celebration
	birth; birthday	جشن گرفتن (گیر)	jaŝn gereftan (gir)
تولدت مبارك	tavallodet		to celebrate
	mobārak	جعفرى	ja fari Jafari (family
	Happy birthday		name)
12	to you		joft pair
تومان	tumān tuman	جلوم	jelom in front of
	(Iranian currency		me col
	= 10 rials)		jelo-ye in front of
تومن	toman tuman col	جليقه	
	(Iranian currency		vest
	= 10 rials)		jom'e Friday
تونـ	تونستن tun ps for		jomle sentence
	tunestan	جناب آقای	jenāb-e āqā-ye
تونستن (تونـ)	tunestan (tun)		Dear Mr
	to be able col	جنابعالي؟	jenāb-āli?
	tu-ye in; into col		Who's calling?
تهرانى	tehrāni Tehrani,		jonub south
	from Tehran	جواب	javāb answer
	tir arrow	جواب دادن (د)	
	tire dark (colour)		to answer
	ti-sert T-shirt		javān young
تيم	tim team	جوجهكباب	juje-kabāb chicken
ثانيه	sānie second		kebab
	(1/60 minute)	جور	jur kind, sort,
	jā place, seat		type col
	jātun your place	جوراب	jurāb sock(s)
جارو کردن (کنہ)	jāru kardan (kon)	جوگندمی	jougandomi grey
	to sweep, to		(of hair)
	vacuum clean		javun young col
جالب	jāleb interesting		jib pocket
	jāyat your place !	جيبير	jib-bor
جابى	jāyi somewhere		pickpocket
جثه	josse build, body	چارشونه	cār-ŝune
جدا	jodā separate		broad-shouldered
جدأ	jeddan seriously,	چاق	cāq fat
	really	چانه	cāne chin
جديد	jadid new (latest)	چای	cāi tea
جزئيات	joz`iyāt details	چپ	cap left

چرا	cerā 'yes' to a	چند	cand how much;
	negative		what
	question/	چندتا	cand tā how many
	suggestion		col; a few
چرا	cerā why	چند وفت	cand vaqt
	cerāq light(s), lamp		how long
	cerk infection	چند وقته	cand vaqte how
چرک کردن (کنہ)	cerk kardan (kon)		long is it
	to become		candin several
	infected; to have	چندین بار	candin bār
	an infection		several times
چشم	casm by all means		cangāl fork
	(responding to a		con because
	request)	چونه بزنید	cune bezanid
چشم	ceŝm eye		(for you to)
چشه	cese what's wrong		haggle
	with it/him/her	چونه زدن (زنـ)	cune zadan (zan)
چطور	cetour how; how		to haggle
	about	چه	ce what
چطور شد	cetour sod how		cahār four
	come (lit how it	چهارده	cahārdah
	became)		fourteen
چطور مگه؟	cetour mage?	چهارراه	cahār-rāh
	What about it?		cross-roads;
	Why do you ask?		intersection
	But why?	چهارشنبه	cahār-ŝanbe
چقدر	ceqadr how much		Wednesday
	(amount)	چهارصد	cahārsad
*	cek cheque		four hundred
چک کردن (کنہ)	cek kardan (kon)		cahārom fourth
	to check		cahāromin fourth
	cakme boot(s)	چه ساعتی	ce sā`ati
چگونه	cegune how /		what time
چلوکیاب	celou-kabāb	چەكار	ce-kār
	chelo-kabab (rice		what (activity)
	with kebab)	چەكار مىكنىد؟	ce-kār mikonid?
	camedun suitcase		What do you do?
چمدونتون	camedunetun	چهل	cehel forty
	your suitcase		ci what col
*	cand how many I		ciz thing
چند	cand how much	چیزی	cizi anything;
	(price)		something

چیز خاصی	ciz-e xāssi		hassāsiyat allergy
	anything special;	حس کردن (کنہ)	hess kardan (kon)
	any special thing		to feel
	cin China		hasud jealous
_	cini Chinese		hasudi jealousy
	cie what's		hoquq salary
حادثه	hādese accident,	حموم	hamum bathroom
	incident		col
	hāzer ready		havāle order
حاضر شدن (شــ)	häzer ŝodan (ŝ)	,	houle towel
	to get ready	حياط	hayāt garden;
حاضر کردن (کت)	hāzer kardan		courtyard
	(kon) to make		heif pity, alas
	ready	خارجى	xāreji from
حافظ	hāfez Hafez (a		overseas,
	name)	****	foreigner; foreign
	hāfez protector	خاص	xāss special,
	hāfeze memory	1.0000000	specific
حال	hal health, state of	-,	xākestari grey
	well-being; mood	خاله	xāle aunt
	hālā now		(maternal)
	häletun your health		xāli vacant; empty
	hāleŝ-o mood for it	خاموش	xāmuŝ
حاملگی	hāmelegi		switched off
	pregnancy	خاموش شدن (شــ)	xāmuŝ ŝodan (ŝ)
	hāmele pregnant		to go out (lights)
	hatman certainly		xāmuŝ kardan
حدّ اقل	hadd-e aqal	(کنہ)	(kon) to switch/
	at least		turn off; to
حداكثر	hadd-e aksar	1000	extinguish
	at most;		xāme cream
20200000	at the latest	خانم	xānom wife,
حدس زدن (زئـ)	hads zadan (zan)		madam, lady
	to guess		xānom-e Ms/Mrs
حدود	hodud-e about,		xānevāde family
	approximately		xāne house, home
حرف	harf speech,	خاور ميانه	xāvar-e miāne
	conversation		Middle East
حرکت کردن (کنہ)	harkat kardan	7	xob OK, so; well
	(kon) to depart;		xabar news item
	to start a		xejālati shy
	journey	خدا	xodā God

خدا حافظ	xodā hāfez	خندیدن (خند)	xandidan (xand)
	Goodbye		to laugh
	[lit God be your	خنک	xonak cool
	protector]	خوا	xā col ps for
خدا نگهدار	xodā negahdār		xāstan خواستن
	Goodbye	خواب	xāb sleep,
	[lit God be your		sleeping; asleep
	protector] /	خواب	خوابیدن xāb ps for
خدمت	xedmat service		xābidan
خر	خريدن xar ps for	خوابیدن (خواب)	xābidan (xāb)
	xaridan		to sleep
خراب	xarāb broken	خواستن (خوا)	xāstan (xā) [xāh]
	(not working);	[خواهـ]	to want; to ask
	bad (rotten),	خواننده	xānande singer
	off	خواه	خواستن xāh / ps for
ځرېزه	xarboze melon		xāstan
خرد	xord small	خواهر	xāhar sister
خريد	xarid shopping,	خواهش	xāheŝ request
	buying	خواهش كردن	xāheŝ kardan
خرید کردن (کنہ)	xarid kardan (kon)	(کنـ)	(kon) to request
	to shop	خواهش میکنم	xāheŝ mikonam
خريدم	xaridam I bought		I request (you
خریدن (خر)	xaridan (xar)		not to say such
, , ,	to buy		things)
خریده شدن (شـ)	xaride ŝodan (ŝ)	خواهش مىكنم	xāheŝ mikonam
	to be bought		please; I request
خستگی	xastegi tiredness,	خواهش میکنم	xāheŝ mikonam
	fatigue		no problem
خسته	xaste tired		(responding to
خستهكننده	xaste-konande		apology)
	boring, tiring	خواهش می کنم	xāheŝ mikonam
خشک	xoŝk dry		you're welcome
خطر	xatar danger	خواهش می کنم	xāheŝ mikonam
خطرناک	xatarnāk		by all means
	dangerous	خوب	xub fine, good,
خليج	xalij gulf		well
خليج فارس	xalij-e fārs	خوبان	xubān the good
	Persian Gulf		(i.e. good
خميردندان	xamir-dandān		people)
-	toothpaste	خوب شدن (شـ)	xub ŝodan (ŝ)
خند	خندیدن xand ps for		to get well
	xandidan	خود	xod own; self

خودت	xodet your own;	خوشحالي	xoŝ-hāli happiness
	yourself (inf)	خوشرو	xos-ru friendly,
خودتون	xodetun your own;		cheerful
	yourself	خوش رويان	xos-ruyan friendly/
خودتون	xodetun your own;		cheerful people
	yourselves	خوشمزه	xoŝmaze tasty,
خودش	xodes himself/		delicious
	herself; his/her	خوشوقت	xosvaqt pleased
	own; itself/its own	خوشوقتم	xoŝvaqtam
خودشون	xodeŝun		I'm pleased
	themselves;	خونہ	خوندن xun ps for
	their own		xundan
خودم	xodam my own;	خوندن (خونـ)	xundan (xun) to
	myself		read; to study; to
خودمون	xodemun		sing; reading col
	ourselves;	خونه	xune home, house
	our own		col
خور	خوردن xor ps for	خيابان	xiābān street /
	xordan	خیابان داونینگ	xiābān-e dāwning
خوراكي	xorāki food		Downing Street
	(general)		xiābun street col
	xord (s/he) ate	خيار	xiār cucumber
خوردم	xordam ate	خیلی	xeili very; many;
خوردن (خور)	xordan (xor) to		much; a lot (of)
	eat; to drink col;	خيلى ممنون	xeili mamnun
	to have; to take		much obliged
	(medicine)	خيلىها	xeilihā many
خوش	xoŝ happy;		people
	pleasant(ly)	3	دادن d col ps for
خوش اومدن (آ)	xoŝ umadan (ā)		dādan
	to like; to fancy		dā'em constantly
خوش اومدید	xos umadid	داخل	dāxel-e inside (of);
	welcome		into
خوشبختانه	xosbaxtāne luckily,		dādāŝ brother col
	fortunately	دادن (د)[دَهـ][دِه]	dādan
خوش بگذره	xoŝ begzare		(d)[dah][deh] to
	Have a nice time		give; to pass vt
خوش به حالت	xoŝ be hālet	دار	برداشتن dār ps for
	lucky you; good		bar dästan
	for you	دار	داشتن dār <i>p</i> s for
	xoŝ-tip handsome		dāŝtan
خوشحال	xoŝ-hāl happy	دارو	dāru medicine

	dārid you have	درجه	daraje degree
داشتم مىروندم	dāŝtam mirundam		dard ache, pain
	I was driving	در دسترس	dar dastras
داشتن (دار)	dāstan (dār)		available; within
(داشتهباشــ)	(dāŝte-bāŝ)		access
	to have	درد کردن (کنہ)	dard kardan (kon)
داشتەباش	dāŝte-bāŝ imp/sub		to ache
	داشتن stem for	درد گرفتن (گیر)	dard gereftan (gir)
	dāŝtan		to begin to ache
داشتەباشى	dāŝte-bāŝi (if you)		dars lesson
	have	درست	dorost correct(ly),
ذاغ	dāq hot		right; just,
	(temperature)		exactly
داماد	dāmād groom,	درست کردن (کنـ)	dorost kardan
	bridegroom;		(kon) to make;
	son-in-law		to fix
دامن	dāman skirt		dars xundan (xun)
ناء ا	دانستن dān ps for		to study
	dānestan	درس دادن (د)	dars dādan (d)
دانستن (دانــ)	dānestan (dān)		to teach
	to know /	درس مىدم	dars midam
	dāneŝju student		I teach
دانشجويان	dāneŝjuyān	درس مىدىد	dars midid
	students		you teach
	dānesgāh university	در ضمن	dar zemn in the
دایی	dāyi uncle		meantime,
	(maternal)		meanwhile;
دختر	doxtar daughter;		incidentally
	girl	در طرف چپ	dar taraf-e cap-e
دختردایی	doxtar-dāyi cousin		on the left
	(maternal uncle's		side of
	daughter)	در طرف راست	dar taraf-e räst-e
در	dar at, in, on; door		on the right
	col		side of
	darāmad income		dar-tul-e during
دراز کشیدن (کشـ)	derāz keŝidan	در مقابل	dar moqābel-e
	(keŝ) to lie down		vis-à-vis,
دراز كشيده	derāz keŝide (s/he)		against
	is lying (down)		daryā sea
	darb door /	ەزە	dozd thief, robber,
دربارهى	dar-bāre-ye about,		burglar
	concerning	دست	dast hand

دستپخت	dast-poxt	دوچرخەسوارى	docarxe-savāri
	cooking, cuisine		bicyle riding,
دستخطأ	dastxatt		cycling
	handwriting	دوخوابه	do-xābe two-
	dastrasi access		bedroomed; with
دست شما درد	dast-e ŝomā		two bedrooms
نكنه	dard nakone	دور	dour-e around
	Thank you	دور	dur far away, distant
	dast-ŝuyi toilet	دوربين	durbin camera
	dastkeŝ gloves		dust friend
	deser dessert		dustān friends
	da`vā fight n	دوست داشتن (دار)	dust dästan (där)
	da'vat invitation		to like
دعوت شدن (شــ)	da`vat ŝodan (ŝ)		dustam my friend
	to be invited	دوش	duŝ shower
دعوت کردن (کنہ)	da`vat kardan	دوشنبه	do-ŝanbe Monday
	(kon) to invite	دوغ	duq yoghurt drink
دفتر	daftar office		(salted)
	(room, building);		dovvom second
	book	دومي	dovvomi the
دفترچەي تلفن	daftarce-ye		second one
	telefon	دوّمين	dovvomin second
	phonebook	دون	دونستن dun <i>p</i> s for
دفعهی بعد	daf`e-ye ba`d		dunestan
	next time	دونستن (دونـ)	dunestan (dun) to
دقيقه	daqiqe minute		know (something)
دكتر	doktor doctor		col
دل	del heart (also	دونه	dune number, unit
	'stomach'!)		col
دليل	dalil reason	دونهای	duneyi by number
دنبالِ گشتن	donbāl-e	- ,	duneyi each
(گرد)	gaŝtan (gard)		devist two hundred
	to look for	دهـ	دادن dah / ps for
	dandān tooth		dādan
دندان درد	dandān-dard	ده	de(h) imp inf ps for
	toothache		دادن dādan
	donyā world		dah ten
	do two	دهان	dahān mouth
	davā medicine col	ده سالشه	dah sāleše s/he's
دوازده	davāzdah twelve		10 years old
دوباره	dobāre again		(lit it's 10 years
دوچرخه	docarxe bicycle		of him/her)

دهمين	dahomin tenth	راه رفتن (ر)	rāh raftan (r)
ديدار	didār seeing,		to go, to move;
	meeting,		to walk
	visiting	راهنما	
دیدن (بینـ)		راهنمایی	
	seeing		guidance
ديدنش	didanes to see	رئيس	ra'is boss
	her/him/it	ربع	
دیده شدن (شــ)	dide ŝodan (ŝ)		an hour)
	to be seen	رزرو کردن (کنـ)	rezerv kardan
	dir late		(kon) to book/
	diruz yesterday		reserve
	diŝab last night	رژیم	*
دیگه	dige else, other,	رژیم دارم	reĝim dāram
	more; no more;		I'm on a diet
	no longer;		(lit I have diet)
	from now	رسـ	رسیدن res ps for
ذار	zār col ps for		residan
	gozāŝtan گذاشتن	رستوران	resturān restaurant,
ر	رفتن r col ps for		canteen
	raftan	رسون	رسوندن resun ps for
	rā object marker		resundan
راحت	rāhat easy,	رسوندن (رسونــ)	resundan (resun)
	comfortable		to convey/send
راديو	rādio radio	رسيد	resid receipt
راست	rāst right (not left);	رسیدن (رسـ)	residan (res)
	truth		to arrive/reach
راستش	**	رشته	reste subject,
	to be honest		branch/field of
	(lit its truth)		study
راستى	rāsti by the way	رضا	rezā Reza (male
راضى	rāzi happy,		name)
	satisfied	رعد	ra'd thunder
ران	rān thigh	رفتن (ر) [رَو] [رُوْ]	raftan (r) [rav]
رانندگی	rānandegi		[rou] to go;
	driving		going
رانندگی کردن	rānandegi		rafte has gone
(کنہ)	kardan (kon)	رقص	
	to drive; to do	رقصـ	رقصیدن raqs ps for
	the driving		raqsidan
راه	rāh way,	رقصیدن (رقص)	raqsidan (raqs)
	distance		to dance

رنگ	rang colour		riŝ beard
رو	رفتن rav I ps for	ريش تراش	riš-tarāš shaver
	raftan	زانو	zānu knee
رۇ	 ro object marker 	زبان	zabān language,
	col		tongue
رو	rou inf imp ps for	زبانشناس	zabān-ŝenās
	raftan رفتن		linguist
	ru on col	زبانشناسي	zabān-šenāsi
	ru be facing		linguistics
روبهروى	ru-be-ru-ye	زبان مادری	zabān-e mādari
	opposite; facing		mother tongue
روز	ruz day		zahmat trouble
روزنامه	ruznāme	زحمت دادن (د)	zahmat dādan (d)
	newspaper		to trouble/bother
روزى	ruzi per day; each	زحمت كشيدن	zahmat keŝidan
	day	(کش)	(keŝ) to take
	rusari headscarf		trouble
روشن	rouŝan switched	زدن (زنــ)	zadan (zan) to hit;
	on, on; light		to play (musical
	(colour)		instrument)
روشن شدن (شـ)	rouŝan ŝodan (ŝ)		zartosti Zoroastrian
	to come on		zard yellow
	(lights)		zardālu apricot
روشن کردن (کنے)	rouŝan kardan	زرنگ	zerang clever
	(kon) to turn/		zoqāl charcoal
	switch on;	زلاند نو	zelānd-e nou New
	to light		Zealand
رولزرويس	rolz-rois		zemestān winter
	Rolls-Royce	زمستون	zemestun winter
رونــ	روندن run ps for		col
	rundan	زنــ	zan ps for زدن
روندن (رونـ)	rundan (run)		zadan
	to drive col	زن	zan woman;
	ru-ye on		wife
	ruye-ham in total		zendān prison
	riāzi maths		zendegi life
ريال	riāl rial (Iranian	زندگی کردن (کنہ)	zendegi kardan
	currency)		(kon) to live
ریختن (ریز)	rixtan (riz) to pour;	زنگ زدن (زنـ)	zang zadan (zan)
	to spill		to ring, to phone
ريز	ریختن riz ps for	زود	zud early, soon,
	rixtan		quick(ly)

زهر	zahr poison	سبزى	sabzi fresh herbs,
زهرا	zahrā Zahra		greens
	(female name)	سبزيجات	sabzijāt vegetables
زياد	ziād many, plenty,	سبيل	sebil moustache
	much	سيتامبر	septāmbr
زيبا	zibā beautiful		September
	zibāyi beauty	ستاره	setāre star
زير	zir-e under, below	سخاوت	saxāvat generosity
زيرپوش	zirpuŝ underwear	سخت	saxt difficult,
	ĝā pon Japan		hard
ژاپنی	ĝāponi Japanese	سختى	saxti difficulty;
ژاکت	ĝāket cardigan		hardship
ژاکتش	ĝāketes the	سخنران	soxanrān speaker
	cardigan (lit its	سخنرانى	soxanrāni
	cardigan)		speech; lecture;
ساخت ايران	säxt-e irän made		presentation
	in Iran	سخى	saxi generous /
ساختمان	säxtemän building		sar head
ساختمون	säxtemun building	سو	sar-e at; on
	col		sorx red
ساعت	sā'at clock, watch,	سرد	sard cold adj
	time, hour		sar-dard headache
ساعت چنده؟	sā`at cande?	مىر شما درد نكنه	sar-e ŝomā dard
	What time is it?		nakone You're
ساق پا	sāq-e pā leg		welcome
ساک	sāk bag, holdall	سرعت	sor`at speed
ساكت	sāket quiet		sorfe cough
ساكدستى	sāk-dasti handbag,	سرفه کردن (کنہ)	sorfe kardan (kon)
	holdall		to cough
_	sāl year		sar-e kār at work
	sālād salad	سركار خانم	
	sälgard anniversary		xānom-e
	sālon hall		Dear Ms
سال نو	săl-e nou New		sargarmi hobby
	Year	,	sarmā cold n
سالى	sāli a year; each/	سرماخوردگی	sarmā-xordegi
	per year		cold n (state of
سانتيگراد	säntigeräd		having caught
12	centigrade	10. 1000 1.000	a cold)
		سرما خوردن (خور)	
,	säyer-e other /		(xor) to catch
سيز	sabz green		a cold

	sormeyi navy blue	سوپرمار کت	supermärket
	seriāl serial		supermarket
سريع	sari fast	سوختن (سوز)	suxtan (suz)
	sos sauce		to burn/sting
سطل آشغال	sati-e āŝqāl	سودايه	sudābe Sudabeh
	dustbin, garbage		(female name)
	can	سوز	سوختن suz ps for
سعی کردن (کنہ)	sa`y kardan (kon)		suxtan
	to try (to attempt)		souqāt souvenir
سعى مىكنم	sa`y mikonam		sevvom third
	I'll try	سومين	sevvomin third
سفارت	sefārat embassy	سوهان	suhān a sweet
	sefāreŝ order		se three
سفارش دادن (د)	sefāreŝ dādan (d)	سهراب	sohrāb Sohrab
	to order		(male name)
سفارشي	sefāreŝi registered	سهشنبه	se-ŝanbe Tuesday
	(mail)	سى	si thirty
سفارشي كردن	sefāreŝi kardan	سياه	siāh black
(کنـ)	(kon) to register	سيب	sib apple
	(mail)	سیب زمینی	sib-e zamini
سفر	safar journey, visit,	60 7 .507.659.00	potato
	trip	سير	sir full (fully fed);
سفر کردن (کنہ)	safar kardan (kon)		garlic
	to travel	سيزده	sizdah thirteen
سفيد	sefid white	سيصد	sisad three
سكوت	sokut silence		hundred
سکوت کردن (کنے)	sokut kardan	سیگار	sigār cigarette
	(kon) to keep	سیگار کشیدن	sigār keŝidan
	silent/quiet	(کشــ)	
سکّه	sekke coin		cigarette(s)
سلام	salām hello	سينما	sinemā cinema
سلامت	salāmat health	سينه	sine chest
سمينار	seminar seminar	سی و یکم	si o yekom thirty-
سن"	senn age		first
	sangin heavy	شـ	شدن s col ps for شدن
سوار شدن (شـ)	savār ŝodan (ŝ)		ŝodan
	to get on/board	شاد	ŝād joyful
	(a vehicle)		ŝādi joy
سؤال	so`āl question		ŝāl-e gardan
	suyic-e māŝin	0,0	scarf
J. 0.7	car key	شام	ŝām dinner
اسواب	sup soup		ŝāmel inclusive
**			

شامل شدن (شــ)	ŝāmel-e ŝodan	شصت	sast sixty
- S	(ŝ) to include	شطرنج	ŝatranj chess
شانزده	§ānzdah sixteen	شکت	ŝakk doubt
شانه	ŝāne shoulder	شكر	ŝekar sugar
شايد	ŝā yad maybe,		(granulated)
	perhaps; might	شكست	sekast defeat
شب	ŝab night; evening;	شكست خوردن	šekast xordan
	eve	(خور)	(xor) to be
شبى	ŝabi per night		defeated
شجريان	ŝajariān Shajarian	شکست دادن (د)	šekast dādan (d)
	(Iranian singer)		to defeat
شخصى	ŝaxsi personal	شكستن (شكنـ)	sekastan (sekan)
	seddat severity		to break
شدن (شــ)[شَو]	ŝodan (ŝ)[ŝav][ŝou]	شكستهنفسي	šekaste-nafsi
[شُوُ]	to become; to	کردن (کنہ)	kardan (kon)
	happen; to be		to be modest
	possible; to cost		(self-deprecate)
شديد	ŝadid severe	شكل	šeki shape
شرايط	ŝarāyet conditions,		šekam belly
	terms	شكن	šekan ps for
شربت	ŝarbat syrup		sekastan شکستن
شرق	ŝarq east		ŝalqam turnip
شركت	serkat company,	شلوار	ŝalvār trousers
	firm		ŝalvār-e jin jeans
شرکت کردن (کنہ)	ŝerkat kardan	شما	ŝomā you (f)
	(kon) to take		somare number
	part	شماره تلفن	somäre telefon
شرمنده	ŝarmande		telephone
	ashamed		number
شروع شدن (شــ)	ŝoru` ŝodan (ŝ)	شمال	ŝ om āl north
	to begin vi	شمر	ŝomor ps for
شروع کردن (کنــ)	ŝoru` kardan (kon)		somordan شمردن
	to begin	شمردن (شمر)	ŝomordan (ŝomor)
	(something) vt		to count
	ŝ ast-e p ā big toe		somorde clear(ly)
	ŝostan (ŝur)[ŝui]	شمرده شدن (شــ)	ŝomorde ŝodan (ŝ)
اشويــا	to wash		to be counted
شسته شدن (شــ)	ŝoste ŝodan (ŝ)	شمرون	semrun col for
	to be washed		semirān شميران
	ŝeŝ six		Shemiran (place
	ŝeŝsad six hundred		name)
ثشم	ŝeŝom sixth	شنا	ŝ en ā swimming

شناختن (شناسـ)	ŝenāxtan (ŝenās)	صاحب	sāheb owner
	to recognise; to	صبح	sobh morning
	know (someone)	صبحاته	sobhäne
شناس	ŝ enās ps for		breakfast /
	ŝenāxtan شناختن	صبحونه	sobhune breakfast
شنا کردن (کنہ)	ŝenā kardan (kon)		col
	to swim	صبر	sabr patience
شنيه	ŝanbe Saturday	صبر کردن (کنے)	sabr kardan (kon)
شنو	شنیدن senav ps for		to wait, to
	ŝ enidan		exercise
شنو	ŝ enou imp inf ps		patience, to
	for شنیدن		bear with (the
	ŝ enidan		speaker)
شنيدن (شنو)	ŝenidan (ŝenav/	صيور	sabur patient, with
	ŝ enou) to hear		patience
شنیده شدن (شـ)	ŝenide ŝodan (ŝ)	صحبت	
	to be heard	صحبت كردن	
شنيدى	ŝ enidi did you	(کنہ)	(kon) to speak
	hear	صد	
شو	شدن sav I ps for	صدا	
	ŝodan		noise
شو	sou imp inf ps for	صدا کردن (کنــ)	sedā kardan (kon)
	ŝodan شدن		to call
شور	شستن sur col ps for		sefr zero
	ŝostan	صندلى	
شوقاژ	ŝofāĝ central	صندوق پست	sanduq-e post
	heating (radiator)	42 (0.1	postbox
	ŝouhar husband	صندوق عقب	sanduq-e aqab
	sahr city, town		car boot, trunk
شهريور	sahrivar Shahrivar	صورت	
	(fifth month in Iranian calendar)	صورتحساب	(restaurant)
	ŝir milk; tap; lion		surati pink
شیر شیر کاکائو	ŝir-kākā`o hot	ضورتی ضد	
سير ٥ ٥٠و	chocolate, milk	طبقه	
	chocolate drink	طبعه طرفها	
	ŝirin sweet	طوفاها	quarters, area
شیرین شیرینیها	ŝirinihā sweets,	طمين	tusi grey
سيريسى	pastries	طوسی طول	
5.	ŝik chic	طول کشیدن	
شيت	قin col ps for نشستن	طول حسیدان (کشہ)	to take (time)
	neŝastan		zarf dish, container

ظرف	zarf-e within	عکس گرفتن (گیر)	aks gereftan (gir)
	zolm injustice,	, , , ,	to take a picture
	oppression	علاقه	alāge interest
ظهر	zohr noon	علاقهمند	alāqe-mand
	ādi normal,		interested
	ordinary	علاقەمند بە _	alāqe-mand be
عالى	āli excellent		interested in
عجب	ajab surprise	عليزاده	alizāde Alizadeh
عجله	ajale hurry, rush,		(surname)
	haste	عليه	aleih-e against
عجله داشتن (دار)	ajale dāŝtan (dār)	عمده	omde main, major
	to be in a	عمو	amu uncle
	hurry		(paternal)
عجله کردن (کنے)	ajale kardan (kon)	عمومي	omumi public
	to hurry	406	amme aunt
	erāq Iraq		(paternal)
عرض	arz submission,	عيب	eib problem
	something	عيب نداره	eib nadāre
	humbly said		no problem
عرض کردن (کنـ)	arz kardan (kon)	-	einak glasses
	to say	غذا	
	(something)		meal
	humbly	غرب	
عروس	arus bride;	غش کردن (کنہ)	qaŝ kardan (kon)
	daughter-in-law		to faint, to
	arusi wedding	93	collapse
	aziz dear	غم	qam sorrow,
	asabāni angry		sadness
عصر	asr afternoon (late),		qanā richness
	early evening	غنی	
عضله/عضالات	azole/azolāt	عيرممكن	qeir-e-momken
	muscle/muscles	12	impossible
	ozv member atse sneeze		fārsi Persian, Farsi fārsi baladam
	atse kardan (kon)	فارسى بلدم	I can speak
عطسه بردن (بنه)	to sneeze		Persian
ič.	akkās	. 18	fāsed off, rotten,
عداس	photographer	فانست	bad, mouldy
.jč.	akkāsi	Cái Ciá	fāks/faks fax
عدسى	photography		fāmil family
. 50	aks picture,	فاميل	(extended),
عنس	photograph		relative(s)
	h.iotograpii		10101110(0)

فتوكيي	fotokopi	فرهنگ	farhang culture
	photocopy	فرهنگ لغت	farhang-e loqat
فراموش كردن	farāmuš kardan		dictionary
(کنــ)	(kon) to forget	فريز,	ferizer freezer
في انسوي	farānsavi French		fesenjun a meat
0, ,	(person)	٥,٠	sauce (see menu
فرانسه	farānse French		in U9D1)
	(language),	فعلاً	fe`lan for now
	France	فقط	faqat only
فر دا	fardā tomorrow	فك	fekr thought, idea
فرست	فرستادن ferest ps for		fekr kardan (kon)
	ferestädan		to think
فرستادن (فرست)	ferestādan (ferest)	قلقل	felfel pepper
, , ,	to send		felfel-e sabz
فرة.	farq difference		green pepper
	form form	فندک	fandak lighter
	فرمودن farmā ps for	فوتبال	futbāl football
	farmudan		fouran instantly
فرمایش	farmāyes business		fouq above
	(lit command)	0,	(mentioned)
فرمودن (فرما)	farmudan (farmā)	فهم	فهمیدن fahm ps for
,,,,,	a polite	•	fahmidan
	substitute for	فهمیدن (فهم)	fahmidan (fahm)
	kardan in کردن		to understand
	compound verbs	فيلم	film film
	(used for others)		qābel worth;
فرمودن (فرما)	farmudan (farmā)	0.	worthy
, , , ,	to say (used only	قابل اطمينان	qābel-e etminān
	for others)		reliable
فروختن (فروش)	foruxtan (foruŝ)	قابلي	qābeli a/any worth
,, , ,,	to sell		qābeli nadāre
فروخته شدن (شـ)	foruxte ŝodan (ŝ)	, ,	it has no worth;
,	to be sold		don't mention it
فرودگاه	forudgāh airport	قاشق	qāŝoq spoon(ful)
	farvardin Farvardin		qabl ago
0. ,,,	(1st month in		qablan previously,
	Iranian calendar)		before; already
ف و شـ	فروختن forus ps for	قبل از	qabl-az before
,,	foruxtan	,0.	(+noun)
	forus colling colo	قا انارنکه	qabl-az-inke
ف دش .	forus selling, sale		
	foruš selling, sale forušgāh	حبرريت	before

قبول کردن (کنہ)	qabul kardan	كاپشن	kāpšan jacket:
	(kon) to accept		bomber jacket
	qadd height	کار	kār work, job;
قدبلند	qad-boland		activity,
	tall (person)		something to do
قدم زدن (زنـ)	qadam zadan	كارت	kārt card
	(zan) walking;	كارت اعتبارى	kārt-e e`tebāri
	to walk		credit card
قديمى	qadimi old	كارتيستال	kārt-postāl
	(thing/friend)		postcard
قرار	qarār arranged;		kārd knife
	arrangement	کار کردن (کنہ)	kār kardan (kon)
قرار گذاشتن (ذار)	qarār gozāstan		to work
	(zār) to arrange	کارگر	kārgar labourer,
قربان	qorbān Sir (used		manual worker
	by a junior in	كارمند	kārmand civil
	rank addressing		servant; white-
	a senior)		collar worker
قربانت	qorbānet cheerio	كافى	kāfi enough
	(lit your sacrifice!)	كافينت	kāfi-net
قرص	qors tablet, pill		Internet café
قرص مكيدني	qors-e makidani	كامپيوتر	kāmpiuter
	lozenge (lit		computer
	suckable tablet)	كامران	kāmrān Kamran
قرمز	qermez red		(male name or
قشنگ	qasang pretty, nice		surname)
قصد	qasd intention	كامل	kāmel complete
قصد داشتن (دار)	qasd dāŝtan (dār)	كاتايه	kānāpe sofa,
	to intend		settee
قطار	qatār train	كانادا	kānādā Canada
قطره	qatre drop	كانادايي	kānādāyi Canadian
قطع کردن (کنـ)	qat` kardan (kon)	كاهو	kāhu lettuce
	to interrupt	کت	kot jacket
قفل	qofl lock	كتاب	ketāb book
قلم	qalam pen	كتابخانه	ketābxāne library
قلمي	qalami slim	كتابخونه	ketābxune library
قلمىها	qalamihā		col
_	slim ones	كتوشلوار	kot-o-ŝalvār suit
قند	qand sugar (cube)		(lit jacket and
	qahve coffee		trousers)
	qahveyi brown	كثيف	kasif dirty
	geimat price	1.0	kojā where

		r and the control of	
	kojāst where's	كلاس	
كجاند		كلانترى	
	kojā كجا هستند	Ne	station
	hastand where	كلاه	
	are they	كلفت	
کجای	kojā-ye where in;	كلم	
0.00	which part of	كلمه	
كجايى			word
کد پستی	kod-e posti	كليمى	
	postcode	کم	
	kadu courgette	كماشتها	
	kodum which		little appetite
	kerāvāt necktie		kambud shortage
کرایه کردن (کنـ)	keräye kardan		kamtar less
	(kon) to hire	-	komedi comedy
	kardan (kon) to do	كمر	kamar waist, lower
	karafs celery		back
كرم			kamarband belt
	(colour)	كمردرد	kamar-dard
	kare butter		backache
كريسمس	kerismas	كمرو	kam-ru inhibited,
	Christmas		bashful
کس			komak help
كسى		كمكم	
کسی را بیدار			gradually, little by
کردن (کنہ)	kardan (kon)		little
	to wake	کمی	kami a little, a bit
	someone up	کنـ	
كشـ	,		kardan
	keŝidan		kenār side
كشـ	کشتن ps for کشتن	كنار	
	koŝtan		side of)
_	koŝtan (koŝ) to kill	کنار گذاشتن (ذار)	kenār gozāŝtan
کشته شدن (شـ)	koŝte ŝodan (ŝ)		(zār) to put/set
	to be killed		aside
كشور			konsert concert
کشیدن (کشہ)		کو	
	to draw, to pull;		(col)
	to smoke	كوتاه	
کف دست		کوچک	
	hand	كوچكتر	
كفش	kafŝ shoe(s)		smaller

كوچكترين	kucektarin	گردوخاک	gard-o-xāk dust
	youngest;	گرسنگی	gorosnegi hunger
	smallest	گرسنه	gorosne hungry
کوچه	kuce alleyway	گرفتن (گیر)	gereftan (gir)
که	ke that, which,		to get, to obtain,
	who; surely		to catch; to get
کهنه	kohne old (worn		blocked
	out)	كرفته	gerefte blocked
کی	kei when (question	گوم	
	word)	گرم شدن (شــ)	
	ki who		to be warmed up;
-	kif bag		to become warm
-	keik cake	گرم کردن (کنہ)	garm kardan (kon)
	ki <u>lu</u> kilo		to warm
	kilumetr kilometre		(something) up
كيلويى	kiluyi by kilo/	گرون	gerun expensive
12	weight		col
	kiluyi per kilo	محز	
	kie who's (who is)	گفتم	goftam I told
گ	گفتن ps for گفتن		(myself); I
1112	goftan	I di a	thought
	gārāģ garage	گفتن (گ)اگوا	goftan (g)[gu]
	gāz gas		to say, to tell
	gāhi occasionally	کفته شدن (شــ)	gofte ŝodan (ŝ)
	gozāŝtan (zār)	le* 101	to be said/told
اگذارا	[gozār] to put,	کل کلم	gol-kalam cauliflower
	to leave; to allow, to let	10	
. 1. 1.0		گلابی	
تدرنامه	gozarnāme passport	گلابیشکل	pear-shaped
(18) 118	gozaŝtan (gozar)	.16	galu throat
تدستن (تدر)	to pass vi	تبو گلودر د	
	(speaking of	تعودرد	throat
	time)	2.200	gom kardan (kon)
كنشته	gozašte last, past	م مردی رحب	to lose
3 <i>5</i>		گناه	gonāh guilt, sin
-7	bar gastan	گو	
35	گشتن gard ps for	,	for گفتن goftan
-7	gaŝtan	گداهر نامه	gavāhi-nāme
3.5	gerd round	3.7	driving licence
	gardes touring	گوجەفرنگى	
گردن		0,.,	tomato

گوش	guŝ ear	ليبى	libi Libya
	guŝ dādan (d) to	ليبيايي	libiāyi Libyan
	listen; listening		(person)
گوش کردن (کنہ)	guŝ kardan (kon)	ليمو	limu lemon
	to listen; listening	ليوان	livān glass,
گوشت	gušt meat		tumbler
گوش.درد	guŝ-dard earache	مادر	mādar mother
گوشی	guŝi receiver	مادرزن	mādar-zan
گونه	gune cheek		mother-in-law
گير	گرفتن gir ps for		(wife's mother)
	gereftan	مادرشوهر	mādar-ŝouhar
لازم	läzem necessary,		mother-in-law
	needed		(husband's
لازم دارم	läzem däram		mother)
	I need	ماست	mäst yoghurt
لازم داشتن (دار)	läzem dästan (där)	ماشاءاتله	māŝā(a)llā(h)
	to need		May God preserve
لاغو	lāqar slim		him, her, etc.
لب	lab lip	ماشين	māŝin car
لباس	lebās clothes	ماشينقراضه	māŝin-qorāze
لباس پلوخوری	lebās-e polou-xori		jalopy, old
	best bib and		banger
	tucker	ماك	māl ps for ماليدن
لبخند	labxand smile		mālidan
لبخند زدن (زنـ)	labxand zadan	مال	māl belonging,
	(zan) to smile		property
لثه	lase gum	مال او	māl-e u his/hers
لحظه	lahze moment		māl-e unhā theirs
لذا	lezā therefore		māl-e to yours inf
لطف	lotf kindness		māl-e ŝomā yours
لطفأ	lotfan please,		māl-e mā ours
	kindly		māl-e man mine
لطف کردن (کنہ)	lotf kardan (kon)	ماليدن (مالـ)	mālidan (māl)
	to give (kindly)		to rub
لطف كنيد	lotf konid kindly	_	māmān mum
	give	مانتو	māntou robe (worn
-	landan London		by women in
	landani Londoner		public in Iran)
لوازم	lavāzem		māh month; moon
	appliances		māhi per month
,	lule pipe	_	mā <u>hi</u> fish
لهجه	lahje accent	مايل	māyel inclined

مايونز	māyonez	مجبور کردن (کنـ)	majbur kardan
	mayonnaise		(kon) to force
مبارك	mobārak blessed,		moc-e pā ankle
	(may it be)	مج دست	moc-e dast wrist
	blessed	محلّ	mahall place
مبارك باشه	mobārak bāše	محلّه	mahalle area,
	Congratulations		neighbourhood
	(lit may it be	مخالف	moxālef opposed;
	blessed)		in disagreement
متأستفانه	mota`assefāne	مخالف با	moxālef bā
	unfortunately;		opposed to; in
	I'm afraid		disagreement with
متأهل	mota`ahhel	مخصوصأ	maxsusan
	married		particularly
مترجم	motarjem	مداد	medād pencil
	interpreter,	مدرسه	madrese school
	translator	مدير	modir manager,
مترو	metro metro, tube		director
متشڭر	mot(a)ŝakker	مذاكره	mozākere
	thankful; grateful		negotiation
متشكّرم	mot(a)šakkeram	مذاکرہ کردن (کنے)	mozākere kardan
	I'm grateful;		(kon) to
	thanks		negotiate
متغير	motaqayyer	موا	marā me / (short
	changeable		for من را man r ā)
متفرقه	motafarreqe	مراجعه فرماييد	morāje`e farmāyid
	miscellaneous		please report/go
متنوع	motanavve` varied		(to)
متوستط	motavasset	مراجعه کردن (کنہ)	morāje'e kardan
	average; medium		(kon) to refer/
متولد ايران	motavalled-e irān		report/go (to)
	born in Iran		morabbā jam
مثل اينكه	mesl-e inke	مرجان	marjān Marjan
	it seems		(female name)
مثل	mesl-e like (similar	مرد	mard man
	to)	مرداد	mordād Mordad
مجبور	majbur forced,		(5th month in
	compelled		Iranian calendar)
مجبور بودن	majbur budan		mardān men
(هست)	(hast) to have to	مردم	mardom people
مجبور شدن (شــ)	majbur ŝodan (ŝ)	مردن (میر)	mordan (mir)
	to be forced		to die

	mersi thanks	مشهدى	maŝhadi	
	martub humid		Mashhadi, from	
	morq chicken, hen		Mashhad (city)	
	markaz centre	مصاحبه	mosāhebe	
مركز تلفن	markaz-e telefon		interview	
	telecom/	مطالعه	motāle`e reading	
	telephone centre		(general)	
مركز تهران	markaz-e tehrān	معتدل	mo`tadel	
	centre of Tehran		moderate,	
مريض	mariz ill, sick		temperate	
مزاحم	mozāhem	معذرت خواستن	ma`zerat xāstan	
	nuisance	(خوا)	(xā) to apologise	
مؤه	moĝe eyelash	معذرت مىخوام	ma`zerat mixām	
مسابقه	mosābeqe match,		I apologise (lit I	
	competition, race		want/beg pardon)	
مسافر	mosäfer passenger	معلّم	mo`allem teacher	
مسافرت	mosāferat	معمولأ	ma'mulan usually,	
	travelling,		normally	
	holidaying	مغازه	maqāze shop	
مساوي	mosāvi equal		mofid useful	
	mosāvi ŝodim		maqtu` fixed	
	we drew (lit we	-	mak ps for مكيدن	
	became equal)		makidan	
مسئله	mas`ale issue	مكاتبات	mokātebāt	
مستقيم	mostaqim straight	10.00	correspondence	
	maskan	مکانیک	mekānik	
0	accommodation		mechanics;	
مسڭ	mosakken		mechanic	
0	painkiller	مكىدن (مك)	makidan (mak)	
مسلمان	mosalmān Muslim		to suck	
	mosen old (person)	مكندنى	makidani suckable	
مسح	masihi Christian	_	megābāit	
	moŝtari customer		megabyte	
	moŝaxxas specific,	مگه	mage but	
0	known		malāfe sheet	
مشخصات	moŝaxxasāt		(bedding)	
	distinctive	ملاقات	molāgāt meeting	
	features;		molāqāt kardan	
	specifications		(kon) to meet	
15.00	moŝkel problem;	ملابه	molāyem mild	
,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	difficult		melli national	
544	meški black		melliyat nationality	
مسحى		مييت	,	

ممكن	momken possible	موندن (مونــ)	mundan (mun)
ممكنه	momkene it's		to stay, to remain
	possible; may	مه	meh fog
ممنون	mamnun grateful,		meh-ālud foggy
	obliged; thank	مهربون	mehrabun kind
	you		(person) col
من	man I, me		mehmān guest /
مناسب	monāseb suitable,		mehmāni party /
	appropriate		mehmun guest col
-	montazer waiting		mehmuni party col
منچسترى	mancesteri from	مهمونيت	mehmunit your
	Manchester;		party
	Mancunian	مهندس	mohandes
منزل	manzel home,		engineer (also a
	residence		title)
منشى	monŝi secretary	مىأد	miād he/she/it
منظره	manzare view,		comes or will
	scenery		come
منظرهاش	manzaraŝ		miām I come
	its view		miāid you come
	man-o me		miarze it's worth
	mu hair	مىبخشيد	mibaxŝid you will
موتورسيكلت	motorsiklet		forgive (me)
	motorbike	مىبريد	mibarid will you
موتورسيكلتسوارى	motorsiklet-savāri		take/carry
	motorbike riding		mitunid can you
مورد علاقه	moured-e alāqe		mixarand they buy
	favourite	مىخريدم	mixaridam I would
	mouz banana	7004-1900 1904	buy
	muze museum		mixām I want
	musiqi music	مىخونىد	mixunid you are
موضوع	mouzu` subject,		studying/reading
	matter, topic	مىخونىدش	mixunideŝ will you
موفق	movaffaq		read it
	successful	ميدان	meidān square,
موفق باشيد	movaffaq bāŝid		circus
	good luck		midunid you know
	(lit may you be	مير	mir ps for مردن
100410	successful)	0000000	mordan
	mouge` time	مىرسونه	miresune he/she
مون	موندن mun ps for		sends/conveys
	mundan	مىريم	mirim we'll go

	miz table; desk	_	nabs corner
	mizān amount, rate		nabud wasn't
مىشە	miše is it possible;	نتيجه	natije result,
	it becomes; it		outcome
	comes to	نخستوزير	noxost-vazir
	miforuŝid you sell		Prime Minister
میگم	migam I (will)	نوخ	nerx rate
	say/tell	نزدیک	nazdik near,
	meigu prawn		close
	miguyam I say /	نزدیک	nazdik-e near,
	mell inclination		close to
میل دارید	meil därid would	نزدیکی	nazdiki proximity;
	you like		vicinity
	milyun million		neŝastan (ŝin)
	milyuner millionaire	[نشين]	[neŝin] to sit
مىمونيد	mimunid you (will)		down
	stay		nesun target
	mimunim we'll stay	نشون دادن (د)	nesun dādan (d)
	minevisam I write		to show
ميوه	mive fruit	نشه	naŝe (if) it doesn't
ناپدید	nāpadid invisible		become
ناپدید شدن (شــ)	nāpadid ŝodan (ŝ)	نصف	nesf half
	to disappear	نظر	nazar opinion,
ناراحت	nārāhat upset;		view
	uncomfortable	نفر	nafar person/
نارگیل	nārgil coconut		people (when
فارنج	närenj sour orange		counting)
نارنجى	nārenji orange	ئفس	nafas breath
	(colour)	نفس كشيدن	nafas keŝidan
تامزد	nāmzad fiancé,	(کشہ)	(keŝ) to breathe
	fiancée, engaged	نقاشى	naqqāŝi
نامه	nāme letter		painting
نان	nān bread	ئقد	naqd cash
تانوایی	nānvāyi bakery;	نگاه کردن (کنہ)	negāh kardan
	baker's shop		(kon) to look
ناهار	nāhār lunch	نگران	negarān worried
ناهارخوري	nāhār-xori dining	نگران يودن	negarān budan
	(room)	(هست) (باشـ)	(hast) (bāŝ) to
نباشيد	nabāŝid may you		worry, to be
	not be		worried
نبايد	nabāyad must not;	نگرانی	negarāni worry,
	should not		anxiety
			. 101

نگهدار	negahdār protector	نه	noh nine	
نگه داشتن (دار)	negah dästan	نهصد	nohsad nine	
	(dār) to stop (a		hundred	
	vehicle); to hold,	نهم	nohom ninth	
	to keep	نياز	niāz need	
نمايشنامه	namāyeŝnāme	نیاز داشتن (دار)	niāz dāŝtan (dār)	
	play (theatre)		to require, to	
نمک	namak salt		need	
نمكدون	namakdun	نيروى انتظامي	niru-ye entezāmi	
	saltcellar,		police force	
	saltshaker	نيم	nim half	
نمىذاره	nemizāre it doesn't	نيومدهاند	nayumadeand	
	let		they haven't	
نمىشە	nemiše it's not		come	
	possible	نيويورك	niu-york New York	
نمىفهمم	nemifahmam	,	o and col	
	I don't	9	-o object marker	
	understand		col	
نو	nou new (brand	9	va and	
	new)	وارد شدن (شــ)	vāred ŝodan (ŝ)	
نود	navad ninety	[شو]	[ŝav] to arrive,	
نوروز	nouruz New Year's		to enter	
	Day (Iranian)	واقعأ	vāqe`an truly	
نوزده	nuzdah nineteen	واقع در	vāqe` dar	
نوش	نوشيدن nuŝ ps for		located in	
	nuŝidan	والدين	vāledein parents /	
نوشابه	nuŝābe drink	واللا	vāllā well [from	
	(bottled)		والله Arabic	
نوشتن (نویسـ)	neveŝtan (nevis)		wallah by God]	
	to write	وان	vān bathtub	
نوش جان	nuŝ-e jān	ورزش	varzes sport	
	bon appetit	ورود	vorud entrance	
نوشیدن (نوشـ)	nuŝidan (nuŝ)	وسايل	vasāyel means;	
	to drink /		things	
نوشيدني	nuŝidani drink, a	وسايل شخصى	vasāyel-e ŝaxsi	
	drink (hot, cold)		personal effects/	
نوع	nou' kind, type,		belongings	
	sort		vaz` situation	
نون	nun bread col		vaqt time	
نويسـ	نوشتن nevis ps for		vaqti when	
	neveŝtan		vakil lawyer	
ته	na no	ولى	vali but, however	

.1	violon violin	5 12	helikopter
	hāšemi Hashemi	سيمويد	helicopter
مسمي	(family name)		ham too, also;
l-a	hotel hotel	- Para	even
	hejdah eighteen		hamcenin also
	hadaf purpose, aim		hamdige each
	hedye present, gift	100,000	other
-	har any; every	همراه	hamrāh companion
,	har cand vagt yek	,	hamsäye
یک بار	bār how often	-	neighbour
	har-ce whatever;	همكا.	hamkār colleague
47	to whatever		hamkāri
	degree	0,	cooperation
هرچه زودتر	har-ce zudtar	همگانی	hamegāni public
, ,, ,,	as soon as		hamun that same
	possible	0,	(one)
هرچه زودتر بهتر	har-ce zudtar	همه	hame all
, , , , , ,	behtar the	همهچيز	hame-ciz
	sooner the better	,	everything
هردو	har-do both	همەش	hamas all of it
هر روز	har ruz every day	همهشو	hamaŝ-o all of it
هزار	hezār thousand		(plus rā)
هزينه	hazine cost	همهي	hame-ye all of
هـــــ	hast ps for بودن		hamiše always
	budan	همين	hamin same; this
هست	hast is (normally		same/very
	emphatic); there	همينجا	hamin-jā right here
	is/are		(lit this very
هستم	hastam (I) am		place)
	hast eight	همينجاها	hamin-jāhā
	hastād eighty		somewhere
هشتصد	haŝtsad		here
	eight hundred	همينطور	hamin-tour
	haft seven		same way
	haftād seventy	هندوانه	hendevāne
هفتادم	haftādom		watermelon
	seventieth	هندونه	hendune
هفتصد	haftsad		watermelon col
79040-721	seven hundred	_	hendi Indian
	hafte week		honar art
	hefdah seventeen	هنرپیشه	honar-piŝe actor,
هلو	holu peach		actress

هنرهای زیبا	honarhā-ye zibā	ياد	yād memory,
	fine arts		recollection
هنوز	hanuz still, yet	يادتون باشه	yādetun bāŝe
هوا	havā weather		remember (lit let
هواپيما	havāpeimā		it be in your
3.50	airplane,		memory)
	aeroplane	يادتون هست؟	yādetun hast? Can
هوشنگی	huŝangi Hooshangi	1000	you remember?
	(surname)	یاد کردن (کنہ)	yād-e kardan
هول شدن (شــ)	houl ŝodan (ŝ)		(kon) to
	to panic;		remember ;
	to become		to think of
	nervous	یاد گرفتن (گیر)	yād gereftan (gir)
هويج	havij carrot		to learn
هيج	hic none; nil	يادم نيست	yādam nist I can't
هيججا	hic-jā nowhere;		remember
	not anywhere	یاد میگیرم	yād migiram I'm
هيچچيز	hic-ciz nothing;		learning
	anything	/-	yāzdah eleven
هیچ کار	hic-kār nothing,		yobusat constipation
	no activity		yax ice
هيج كدام	hic-kodām neither;	يخبندان	yaxbandān frost,
	none		frosty
هيجكدوم	hic-kodum neither;	0 , -	yaxcāl fridge
	none col	_	ya'ni i.e.; you mean
هيچكس	hic-kas nobody;	-	yek one, a, an
	no one		yek bār once
هيجوقت	hic-vaqt ever;		yek-daf`e suddenly
	never; at any		yek-ŝanbe Sunday
	time		yeki one unit
هیچّی	hicci nothing;	يكىشون	yekisun one of
	anything col		them
_	-i a, an	ين ژاپن	yen-e ĝāpon
ا	yā or		Japanese yen

English-Persian glossary

Important Note: Verbs are given in infinitive forms. Thus, e.g., for 'eat' look under 'to eat'.

a, an -i	ی	actually rāsteš	راستش
a few cand tā	جند تا	address ādres	أدرس
a little, a bit kami	*	adjacent, next-door	اعرس
a lot (of) xeili	کمی خیلی	pahluyi	پهلویی
a; one yek	ىك	adult bozorg-sāl	
able to do (or	يد	advice, guidance	بزرگسال
familiar with) the		rāhnamāvi	, اهنمانی
stated thing balad		after (time),	راهنمایی
•	بلد	following; after	
about, approximately hodud-e		•	
	حدود	(space), past	
about, concerning		ba`d-az	يعداز
dar-bāre-ye	دربارهی	after pas-az	پساز
above (mentioned)	2000-219	afternoon	
fouq	فوق	ba`d-az-zohr	بعدازظهر
above, over bālā-ye	بالاي	afternoon (late) asr	عصر
accent lahje	لهجه	again dobāre	دوباره
access dastrasi	دسترسى	against aleih-e	عليه
accident, collision		age senn	سن"
tasādof	تصادف	ago piŝ	سن پیش پیش قبل
accident, incident		ago qabl	قبل
hādese	حادثه	Ah, Aha, Oh āhā	أها
accommodation		aim, purpose	
maskan	مسكن	hadaf	هدف
ache dard	درد	airplane, aeroplane	
acquaintance;		havāpeimā	هواييما
acquainted āŝenā	أشنا	airport forudgāh	فرودگاه
activity, something		all hame	همه
to do kār	کا,	all of hame-ye	همدي
actor, actress	,	all of it (plus ra)	_
honar-piŝe	هنربيشه	hamaŝ-o	همهشو

all of it hamas	همەش	appliances lavāzem	لوازم
all/whole of col	0	apricot zardālu	زردآلو
tamum-e	تموم	area, neighbourhood	7-11
all/whole of	1.3	mahalle	محلّه
tamām-e	تمام	arm bāzu	بازو
allergy hassāsiyat	حساست	around dour-e	دور
alleyway kuce	كوچه		3,5
allow (me) ejāze	~,	these quarters/	
bedid	اجازه بديد	sides) in atrāf	این اطراف
alone; lonely tanhā	تنها	,	این اطرات
already az-piŝ	نچ ازپیش	arrangement qarār	قرار
already az-qabl	ارپیس ازقبل		تير
already gablan	قبلاً		هنر
also hamcenin	همچنین		,
always hamiše	همیشه		3301 A2-0
am hastam	هستم		هرچه زودتر شرمنده
ambulance	Comme	asthma āsm	أسم
āmbulāns	أمبولانس		lam.
America āmrikā	آمريكا	aslan	اصلاً
American āmrikāyi	آمریکایی آمریکایی	at, in, on dar	در
amount, rate mizān	میزان	at last bel'axare	در بالاخره
and col o	• • •	at least heads a seed	حدّ اقل
and va	9	at most; at the latest	الله الله
angry asabāni	و عصبانی		حدّ اكثر
ankle moc-e pā	حصباتی مج پا		
anniversary sälgard	سے پ سالگرد		سر سر کار
answer javāb	حواب جواب	attached peivast	پیوست
antibiotic āntibiutik	بر ب آنتی پیوتیک	aubergine bādenjān	بادنجان
any har	انىيىيونىت ھر	aunt (maternal) xāle	خاله
anything special; any	سر	aunt (paternal)	
special thing ciz-e		amme	عمه
xāssi	چيز خاصي	Australia osterāliā	استراليا
anything; nothing col	چير حصي	Australian	
hicci	هیچی	osterāliāvi	استراليايي
anything; nothing	هيچى	autumn pāyiz	يابيز
hic-ciz		available; within	200
anything; something	هيچچيز	access dar	
cizi	~	dastras	A. Contain
apartment, flat	چیزی	average motavasset	در دسترس متوسط
āpārtemān	أيارتمان	•	متوسط بیدار
appetite estehā	,پرىمان اشتها	back of hand post-e	بيدر
apple sib	dim	dast	

back post	يشت	below, under zir-e	زير
backache		belt kamarband	کمربند کمربند
kamar-dard	كمردرد	beside, next to	
backgammon	,,	pahlu-ye	يهلوي
taxte-nard	تختهز د	best behtarin	بهترين
bad (rotten), off	,	best bib and	0.5 (.
xarāb	خراب	tucker lebās-e	
bad, off, rotten	. ,	polou-xori	لباس پلوخوری
fäsed	فاسد	best clothes	0,, ,, 0 .
badminton		behtarin lebās	بهترين لباس
badminton	بدمينتون	better behtar	بهتر
bag kif	کیف	between bein-e	بين
bag, holdall sāk	ساک	bicycle docarxe	دوچرخه
bakery; baker's		bicycle riding, cycling	
shop nānvāyi	نانوایی	docarxe-savāri	دوچرخەسوارى
bald tās	تاس	big bozorg	ہزرگ
banana mouz	موز	big toe ŝast-e pā	شست یا
bank b ānk	بانگ	big, large; old; great	•
banknote eskenās	اسكناس	bozorg	بزرگ
bashful, inhibited		bill (restaurant)	**
kam-ru	كمرو	surat-hesāb	صورتحساب
bathroom col	,,,,	birth; birthday	
hamum	حموم	tavallod	تولّد
bathtub vān	وان	birthday party/	
beard ris	ریش	celebration jaŝn-e	
beautiful zibā	زيبا	tavallod	جشن تولّد
beauty zibāyi	زيبايي	black meški	مشكى
because con	چون	black siāh	ساه
bed taxtexāb	تختخواب	blessed, (may it	
bedroom otāq-e xāb	اتلق خواب	be) blessed	
before (+noun)	.,	mobārak	مبارک
qabl-az	فيلاز	blessing barakat	برگت
before (+sentence)	,,,	blocked gerefte	گرفته
qabl-az-inke	قبل إزاينكه	blond(e) bur	بور
before qablan	قىلاً	blouse boluz	بلوز
beforepiŝ-az	پیشاز	blue ābi	آبی
behind post-e	يشت	body badan	بدن
belly sekam	شكم	bon appetit nuŝ-e	0.
belonging, property	1-	jān	نوش جان
māl	مال	book daftar	دفتر
below, beneath		book ketāb	كتاب
pāyin-e	يايين	boot(s) cakme	چکمه

boring, tiring		by kilo/weight kiluyi	يلويى
xaste-konande	خستهكننده	by now; until now tā	
born in Iran		hālā	حالا
motavalled-e		by the way rāsti	ستى
irān	متولّد ایران	by; with b ā	
boss ra`is	رئيس	cabbage kalam	6-
both har-do	هردو	cake keik	یک
boy, son pesar	, , ,	camera durbin	وربين
bread col nun	نون	Canada kānādā	نادا
bread nān	نان	Canadian kānādāyi	انادایی
breakfast col		canteen, restaurant	
sobhune	صيحونه	resturān	ستوران
breakfast sobhäne	صبحاته	car māŝin	شين
breath nafas	نفس	car boot sanduq-e	
bride arus	عروس	aqab	ندوق عقب
bridegroom dāmād	داماد	car key suyic-e	
Britain beritāni ā	بريتانيا	mäŝin	وئيج ماشين
British beritāniāyi	بريتانيايي	car park pärking	کینگ
broad-shouldered		card kārt	ارت
căr-ŝune	جارشونه	cardigan ĝāket	کت
broken (not working)		carrot havij	200
xarāb	خراب	cash naqd	4
brother barādar	برادر	cauliflower	
brother col dādāŝ	داداش	gol-kalam	لكلم
brown qahveyi	قهوهای	celebration jaŝn	شن
build, body josse	جثه	celery karafs	رفس
building col		centigrade	
säxtemun	ساختمون	säntigeräd	انتيگراد
building säxtemän	ساختمان	central heating	
bus otobus	اتوبوس	(radiator) ŝofāĝ	وفاؤ
but ammā	اما	centre markaz	کز
but mage	مكه	centre of Tehran	
but, however vali	ولى	markaz-e tehrān	کز تھران تما
butter kare	کرہ	certainly hatman	تمأ
buying xarid	خريد	chair sandali	بندلي
by (the side of)		changeable	
kenār-e	كنار	motaqayyer	نغير
by all means	7.0	charcoal zoqal	فال
(responding to a		cheap arzān	زان
request) caŝm	چشم	cheap col arzun	زون
by all means xāheŝ	87 15	cheek gune	ونه
mikonam	خواهش می کنم	cheekiness por-ruyi	رویی

cheeky por-ru	بررو	cold n (state of	
cheese panir	پنیر	having caught	
chelo-kabab (rice		a cold) sarmā-	
with kebab)		xordegi	سرماخوردگی
celou-kabāb	چلوکباب	cold n sarmā	سرما
cheque cek	چک	colleague hamkār	همكار
chess ŝatranj	شطرنج	colour rang	رنگ
chest sine	سينه	comedy komedi	كمدى
chic ŝik	شيک	comfortable rāhat	راحت
chicken kebab		coming, next āyande	أينده
juje-kabāb	جوجهكباب	commerce,	
chicken, hen morq	مرغ	commercial,	
child bacce	بچه	business	
chin cāne	چانه	bāzargāni	بازرگانی
China cin	چين	companion hamrāh	همراه
Chinese cini		company, firm	0.50
Christian masihi	مسيحى	ŝerkat	شركت
Christmas kerismas	كريسمس	competition	
cigarette sigār	سیگار	mosābeqe	مسابقه
cinema sinem ā	سينما	complete kāmel	كامل
circus, square		compliment ta'rif	تعريف
meidän	ميدان	computer kāmpiuter	كامپيوتر
city sahr	شهر	concert konsert	كنسرت
civil servant; white-		conditions, terms	
collar worker		ŝarāyet	شرايط
kārmand	كارمند	Congratulations	
class kelās	كلاس	mobārak bāŝe	مبارک باشه
clean tamiz	تميز	congratulations	
clear(ly) ŝomorde	شمرده	tabrik	تبريک
clever zerang	زرنگ	constantly dā'em	دائم
climate ā b-o-hav ā	آبوهوا	constipation	
clock sā`at	ساعت	yobusat	يبوست
closed (bank, etc.)		conversation harf	حرف
ta`til	تعطيل	conversion;	
closed baste	بسته	changing tabdil	تبديل
clothes lebās	لباس	cook, chef āspaz	أشيز
cloud abr	ابر	cooking āŝpazi	آشپزی
cloudy abri	ايرى	cooking, cuisine	-
coconut nārgil	نارگیل		دستپخت
coffee qahve		cool xonak	خنک
coin sekke	سكّه	cooperation hamkāri	همكارى
cold adi sard	سو د	corner nabs	نبش

correct(ly) dorost	درست	Dear Ms sarkār	
correspondence		xānom-e	ِسرکار خانم
mokātebāt	مكاتبات	decision tasmim	تصميم
cost hazine	هزينه	defeat sekast	شكست
cough sorfe	سرفه	degree daraje	درجه
counter, cashier's		delay ta`xir	تأخير
desk bāje	باجه	desk; table miz	ميز
country keŝvar	كشور	dessert deser	دسر
courgette kadu	كدو	details joz`iyāt	جزئيّات
cousin (maternal		detective, relating to	
uncle's daughter)		police polisi	پلیسی
doxtar-dāyi	دختردایی	dialling tone	(Table 1
cream (colour)		buq-e āzād	بوق أزاد
kerem	كرم	diarrhoea eshāl	اسهال
cream xāme	خامه	diary, calendar	
credit e'tebār	اعتبار	taqvim	تقويم
credit card kārt-e		dictionary farhang-e	
e`tebāri	كارت اعتبارى	logat	فرهنگ لغث
cross-roads;	\$155.6 P.T.	diet (avoiding certain	5)
intersection		food items) parhiz	پرهيز
cahār-rāh	چهارراه	diet reĝim	رژیم
cucumber xiār	خيار	difference farq	فرق
culture farhang	فرهنگ	difficult moŝkel	مشكل
customer moŝtari	مشترى	difficult, hard saxt	سخت
dad bābā	بابا	difficulty eskal	اشكال
dance raqs	رقص	difficulty; hardship	
danger xatar	خطر	saxti	سختى
dangerous		dining (room)	
xatarnāk	خطرناک	nāhār-xori	تاهارخوري
dark (colour) tire	تيره	dinner ŝām	شام
date tārix	تاريخ	director, manager	•
date of birth tarix-e	-	modir	مدير
tavallod	تاريخ تولد	dirty kasif	كثف
daughter doxtar	دختر	dish qazā	غذا
daughter-in-law	,	dish, container zarf	ظرف
arus	عروس	distinctive features;	,
day ruz		specifications	
day before yesterday	***	moŝaxxasāt	مشخصات
pariruz	پريروز	doctor doktor	دكتر
dear aziz	عزيز	Don't mention it.	*
Dear Mrjenāb-e	7-5	in harfhā cie?	اين حرفها چيه؟
āgā-ye	جناب أقاى	door col dar	در
10000			,

door / darb	1000	alayon vēzdah	
doubt šakk	درب شک	eleven yāzdah	يازده
down pāyin		else, other, more dige	دیگه
Downing Street	پايين	email imeil	
xiābān-e dāwning	6.11.11.2	email post-e	ايميل
dress col pirhan	خیابان داونینگ	erraii post-e	C CII -
drink (bottled)	پيرهن	embassy sefärat	پست الكترونيك
nuŝābe	نوشايه	,	سفارت
drink n (hot, cold)	نوسابه	employment estexdām	استخدام
nuŝidani	** * .	empty; vacant xāli	
driving rānandegi	نوشیدنی	empty, vacant xaii end āxar	خالی
driving licence	رانندگی		أخر
gavāhi-nāme	. 1: .1 #	engaged nāmzad	نامزد
•	گواهینامه	engineer; (also a	
drop qatre	قطرہ خشک	title) mohandes	مهندس
dry xoŝk		England engelestan	انگلستان
during dar-tul-e	درطول	England engelis	اتگلیس
dust gard-o-xāk dustbin satl-e	گردوخاک	English (language/	16.0
āŝqāl	max u	person) engelisi	انگلیسی
10 To	سطل آشغال	enough kāfi	كافى
each duneyi	دونهای	entrance vorud	ورود
each other hamdige	همدیگه	equal mosāvi	مساوى
ear guŝ	گوش	Esfahani, of/from	
earache gus-dard	گوشدرد	Esfahan esfahāni	اصفهانى
early zud	زود	eve ŝab	شب حتّی
early October		even hattā	حتى
avāyel-e oktobr	اوايل اكتبر	evening sab	شب
east sarq	شرق	ever; at any time	177.00 <u>—</u> 17.07.07.00
easy ā sun	أسون	hic-vaqt	هيجوقت
easy rāhat	راحت	every har	هر
egg toxm-e morq	تخم مرغ	every day har ruz	هر روز
eight hast	هشت	everything hame-ciz	همهچيز
eight hundred		excellent āli	عالى
haŝtsad	هشتصد	excuse (me); sorry	
eighteen hejdah	هجده	bebaxŝid	ببخشيد
eighty hastād	هشتاد	expensive col gerun	گرون
elbow ārenj	أرنج	explanation touzih	توضيح
eldest; biggest		extra, additional	
bozorgtarin	بزرگسال	ezāfe	اضافه
electric(al) barqi	ہرقی	eye ce ŝ m	چشم
electricity; lightning		eyebrow abru	أبرو
barq	برق	eyelash moĝe	مژه
elevator, lift āsānsor	آسانسور	face surat	صورت

		flat anadoused	
facing ru be	رو به	flat, apartment	1.11
familiar; acquainted;		āpārtemān	اپارتمان
acquaintance		floor, storey tabaqe	طبقه
āŝenā	أشنا	fog meh	مه
family (extended)	2112200	foggy meh-ālud	مهآلود
fāmil	فاميل	food (general) xorāki	خوراکی
family xānevāde	خانواده	food qazā	غذا
far away, distant dur	دور	foot pā	ل
Farsi fārsi	فارسى	football futbal	فوتبال
fast sarí `	سريغ	for now fe'lan	'beak'
fat c āq	چاق	for you / inf barāyat	برايت
father pedar	پدر	for; for the purpose	
favourite		of barāye	یرای
moured-e alaqe	مورد علاقه	forced, compelled	
fax fāks/faks	فاكس/فكس	majbur	مجبور
feeling ehsäs	احساس	forecast piŝ-bini	پیش,بینی
fever, temperature		foreign; from	
tab	تب	overseas, foreigner	
fiancé, fiancée		xāreji	خارجى
nāmzad	نامزد	forgive (me)	
fifteen pänzdah	يانزده	bebaxŝid	ببخشيد
fifth panjom	پنجُم	fork cangāl	چنگال
fifth panjomin	پنجمین	form form	فرم
fifty panjāh	ينجاه	fortunately	
fight n da`vā	دعوا	xoŝbaxtāne	خوشبختانه
film film	فيلم	forty cehel	چهل
final (price) āxareŝ	آخرش	four cahār	چهار
fine arts honarhā-ye		four hundred	
zibā	هنرهای زیبا	cahārsad	چهارصد
fine, good, well xub	خوب	fourteen cahārdah	چهارده
finger angoŝt-e dast	انگشت شست	fourth cahārom	چهارم
finished col		fourth cahāromin	چهارمین
tamum	تموم	France farānse	فرانسه
finished tamām	تمام	free äzäd	آزاد
Fire Brigade	•	freezer ferizer	فريزر
āteŝ-neŝāni	أتشنشاني	French (language)	
first avval	اوّل	farānse	فرانسه
first avvalin	اولین اولین	French (person)	•
fish māhi	ماهی	farānsavi	فرائسوى
five panj	ينج	frequently; often	-, ,
nve panj			
five hundred pänsad	يانصد	aglab	اغلب

fresh herbs, greens		going raftan	رفتن
sabzi	سبزى	good xub	خوب
Friday jom'e	جمعه	Goodbye [lit God be	.,
fridge yaxcāl	بخيال	your protector] /	
friend dust	دوست	xodā negahdār	خدا نگهدار
friendly xos-ru	خوشرو	Goodbye [lit God be	7-4
friendly people	330-9	your protector)	
xoŝ-ruyān	خوشرويان	xodā hāfez	خدا حافظ
friends dustān	دوستان	good luck movaffaq	
from az	از	bāŝid	موقق باشيد
from; of; than az	j 1	gradually kam-kam	کم کم
from now dige	دیگه	granddad	10-10-
from you azatun	ازتون	bābā-bozorg	بابابزرگ
frost yaxbandān	يخبندان	grapes angur	انگور انگور
fruit mive	ميوه	grateful	75
full por	ير	mot(a)ŝakker	متشكّر
full (fully fed) sir	پر سیر	grateful, obliged	,
full of por az	سیر بر از	mamnun	ممنون
game; playing bāzi	بر ر بازی	gratitude, thanks	Oyum
garage gārāĝ	بارى گاراژ	taŝakkor	تشكر
garbage can sati-e	3.30	great bozorg	بزرگ بزرگ
āŝqāl	سطل أشغال	great people	~ ,x
garden; courtyard	0	bozorgān	ېزر ګان
hayāt	حباط	green sabz	سيز
garlic sir	سير	green pepper	,.
gas gāz	گاز	felfel-e sabz	فلقل سبز
generosity saxāvat	سخاوت	grey (of hair)	
generous / saxi	سخى	jougandomi	جوگندمي
gentleman, sir āqā	ٱقَا	grey tusi	طوسى
gentlemen äqäyän	آقایان	grey xākestari	خاكسترى
German ālmāni	آلماني	groom, bridegroom	
Germany ālmān	ألمان	dāmād	داماد
gift, present hedye	هديه	guest col mehmun	مهمون
girl doxtar	دختر	guest mehmän	مهمان
given the situation		guide rāhnamā	راهنما
bā in hesāb	با این حساب	guilt, sin gonāh	گناه
glass, tumbler livān	ليوان	gulf xalij	خليج
glasses einak	عينك	gum lase	لثه
gloves dastkeŝ	دستكش	hail tagarg	تگرگ
go ahead please		hair mu	مو
befarmāyid	بفرماييد	half nesf	نصف
God xodā	خدا	half nim	نيم

hall sālon	سالن	help komak	كمك
hand dast	دست	help yourself	
handbag, holdall		befarmāyid	بفرماييد
sāk-dasti	ساگدستی	here, this place injā	اينجا
handsome xos-tip	خوشتيپ	here is (lit this also)	
handwriting dastxatt	دستخط	in-ham	اينهم
happiness xoŝ-hāli	خوشحالي	here you are	
happy xoŝ-hāl	خوشحال	befarmāyid	بفرماييد
happy, satisfied rāzi	راضى	himself/herself	
happy; pleasant(ly)		xodeŝ	خودش
xoŝ	خوش	his/her own xodes	خودش
Happy birthday to		his/hers mäl-e u	مال او
you tavallodet		hobby sargarmi	سرگرمی
mobārak	تولّدت مبارک	holiday(s) ta`tilāt	تعطيلات
hard, difficult saxt	سخت	holidaying, travelling	
hardship; difficulty		mosāferat	مسافرت
saxti	سختى	home col xune	خونه
haste, rush ajale	عجله	home, residence	
hat kolāh	کلاه	manzel	منزل
Have a nice time		homeless āvāre	آواره
xoŝ begzare	خوش بگذره	homelessness	
he, she u	او	āvāregi	آ وار کی
he, she pol;		homework taklif	تكليف
(originally) they		hope omid	اميد
iŝun	ايشون	hopeful omidv ār	اميدوار
head sar	, me	horse asb	اسب
headache		horse riding	
sar-dard	سردرد	asb-savāri	اسبسواري
headscarf rusari	روسرى	hospital bimārestān	بيمارستان
health salāmat	سلامت	hot (temperature)	
health, state of		dāq	داغ
well-being;		hot chocolate, milk	
mood hāl	حال	chocolate drink	
heart (also		ŝir-kākā`o	شير كاكاثو
'stomach'!) del	رل	hotel hotel	هتل
heavy sangin	سنگين	hour sā`at	ساعت
heel p āŝ ne	پاشنه	house col xune	خونه
height qadd	قد	house, home xāne	خاته
helicopter helikopter	هليكوپتر	how / cegune	چگونه
hello (telephone)		how about; how	
alou	الو	cetour	چطور
hello salām	سلام	how long cand vaqt	چند وقت

how long is it cand		in the meantime	
vaqte	چند وقته	dar zemn	در ضمن
how many col; a few		in this way in-tour	اینطور
cand tā	چند تا	in time be-mouge	بهموقع
how many / cand	چند	in total ruye-ham	روىهم
how much (amount)		in, at, on dar	ەر
ceqadr	چقدر	in; into col tu	تو
how much (price)		in; into col tu-ye	توى
cand	چند	incidentally	
how often har		dar zemn	در ضمن
cand vaqt yek	هر چند وقت	inclination meil	ميل
bār	یک بار	inclined mäyel	مايل
how; how about		inclusive §āmel	شامل
cetour	چطور	income darāmad	درآمد
humid martub	مرطوب	Indian hendi	هندي
hundred sad	صد	indicator rāhnamā	راهنما
hunger gorosnegi	گرسنگی	infection cerk	چرک
hungry gorosne	گرسته	information,	
hurry, rush ajale	عجله	awareness ettelā`	اطّلاع
husband §ouhar	شوهر	information;	
I, me man	من	intelligence	
I wish ei-kāŝ	ایکاش	ettelä`ät	اطّلاعات
ice cream bastani	بستنى	inhibited, bashful	
ice yax	يخ	kam-ru	كمرو
idea fekr	فكر	injection āmpul	أميول
if col age	اگه	injustice zolm	ظلم
if / agar	اگر	inside (of) daxel-e	داخل
ill bimār	بيمار	instantly fouran	فورأ
ill, sick mariz	مريض	intention qasd	قصد
immediately		interest alāqe	علاقه
beläfäsele	بلافاصله	interested	
impact ta'sir	تأثير	alāqe-mand	علاقهمند
impossible		interested in	
qeir-e-momken	غيرممكن	alāqe-mand	
in be	4ª	be	علاقەمند بە
in front of jelo-ye	جلوى	interesting jāleb	جالب
in order to tā	ti	Internet internet	اينترنت
in order to see my		Internet café	
aunt barāye		kāfi-net	كافىنت
didan-e xāleam	براى ديدن خالمام	interpreter motarjem	مترجم
in the hope of		interview mosāhebe	مصاحبه
be omid-e	به امید	into dāxel-e	داخل

into; in col tu	تو	kilo ki <u>lu</u>	كيلو
into; in col tu-ye	توی	kilometre kilumetr	كيلومتر
invisible nāpadid	ناپدید	kind (person)	
invitation da'vat	دعوت	col mehrabun	مهربون
Iran irān	ايران	kind, sort, type	
Iranian irāni	ايراني	col jur	جور
Iranians irānih ā	ايرانىها	kind, type, sort nou'	نوع
Iranians / irāniān	ايرانيان	kindly, please lotfan	لطفأ
Iraq erāq	عراق	kindness lotf	لطف
is (normally		kitchen äspazxane	آشيزخانه
emphatic) hast	هست	kitchen col	
is ast	است	āŝpazxune	آشپزخونه
issue mas`ale	مسئله	knee zānu	زانو
it seems mesl-e		knife kärd	کارد
inke	مثل اينكه	labourer, manual	<i>a</i>
it, that / ān	أن	worker kärgar	کارگو
it, that; he, she	-	lady xānom	خانم
col un	اون	language zabān	زبان
Italian itāliāyi	ايتاليايي	large bozorg	بزرگ
its own xodeŝ	خودش	last āxarin	أخرين
itself xodes	خودش	last night diŝab	ديشب
jacket kot	کت	last year pārsāl	يارسال
jacket: bomber		last, ago piŝ	پیش
jacket kāpšan	كاپشن	last, end āxar	أخر
jalopy, old banger		last, past gozaŝte	گذشته
māŝin-qorāze	ماشينقراضه	late dir	دير
jam morabb ā	مرتا	late October	
Japan ĝāpon	ژاپن	aväxer-e oktobr	اواخر اكتبر
Japanese ĝāponi	ژاپن <u>ی</u>	later ba'dan	بعدا
Japanese yen yen-e		lawyer vakil	وكيل
ĝāpon	ين ژاپن	lazy tanbal	تنبل
jealous hasud	حسود	left cap	چپ
jealousy hasudi	حسودي	leg sāq-e pā	ساق پا
jeans ŝalvār-e jin	شلوار جين	lemon limu	ليمو
Jewish kalimi	كليمي	length tul	طول
job k ār	کار	less kamtar	كمتر
journey, visit, trip		lesson dars	درس
safar	سفر	letter nāme	نامه
joy ŝā di	شادى	lettuce kāhu	كاهو
joyful ŝā d	شاد	library col ketābxune	كتابخونه
juice; water āb	آب	library ketābxāne	كتابخانه
just, exactly dorost	درست	Libya libi	ليبي

Libyan (person)		manager, director	
libiāyi	ليبيايي	modir	مدير
life zendegi	زندگی	Mancunian; from	
lift, elevator āsānsor	أسانسور	Manchester	
light (colour) rouŝan	روشن	mancesteri	منچستري
light(s), lamp cerāq	چراغ	many xeili	خيلي
lighter fandak	فندک	many ziād	زياد
lightning barq	برق	many of xeili az	خیلی از
like (similar to)		marriage ezdevāj	ازدواج
mesl-e	مثل	married mota ahhel	متأهل
linguist	0.70	match, competition	
zabān-ŝenās	زبانشناس	mosābeqe	مسابقه
linguistics		maths riāzi	رياضي
zabān-ŝenāsi	زبانشناسى	may it be; let it be;	
lion ŝir		OK; so be it bāše	باشه
lip lab	شير لب	may you be; (please)	
listening guŝ		be bāŝid	باشيد
dādan (d)	گوش دادن (د)	may; it's possible	
listening guŝ		momkene	ممكنه
kardan (kon)	گوش کردن (کنہ)	maybe ŝā yad	شايد
little kam	کم	mayonnaise	-
located in vage dar	واقع در	māyonez	مايونز
lock qofl	قفل	me man-o	مَنو
London landan	لندن	meal qazā	غذا
Londoner landani	لندنى	means; things	
loneliness tanhāyi	تنهایی	vasāyel	وسايل
long; tall; loud	5-1	meanwhile dar zemn	در ضمن
boland	بلند	meat gust	گوشت
loud boland	بلند	mechanics;	
lozenge qors-e		mechanic	
makidani	قرص مكيدني	mekānik	مكانيك
luckily xosbaxtāne	خوشبختانه	medicine col davā	les
lucky you; good		medicine dāru	دارو
for you xos be		medium motavasset	متوستط
hālet	خوش به حالت	meeting molāqāt	ملاقات
lunch nähär	ناهار	megabyte megābāit	مگابایت
madam xānom	خانم	melon xarboze	خربزه
made in Iran sāxt-e	1	member ozv	عضو
irān	ساخت ایران	memory hāfeze	حافظه
mail, post post	يست	memory, recollection	
main, major omde	عمده	yād	باد
man mard	مرد	men mardān	مردان
			037

message peigām	يبغام	motorbike	
metro, tube metro	مترو	motorsiklet	موتورسيكلت
Middle East	3)	motorbike riding	
xāvar-e miāne	خاور ميانه	motorsiklet-	
mid-October		savāri	موتورسيكلتسواري
aväset-e oktobr	اواسط اكتبر	moustache sebil	سبيل
might ŝā vad	شايد	mouth dahān	دهان
mild molāyem	ملايم	Mr ā q ā-ye	آقای
milk ŝir	شير	Ms/Mrs xānom-e	خانم
million milyun	میلیون	much xeili	خيلي
millionaire milvuner	ميليونر	much ziād	زياد
mine māl-e man	مال من	mum māmān	مامان
minute dagige	دقيقه	muscle/muscles	0
mirror āine	أبنه	azole/azolāt	عضله/عضلات
miscellaneous		museum muze	موزه
motafarrege	متفرقه	music musiai	موسیقی
mobile phone	,	Muslim mosalmān	مسلمان
telefon-e hamrāh	تلفن همراه	must not; should	Q
moderate, temperate	,	not nabāyad	نيايد
mo`tadel	معتدل	must, should bāyad	بايد
moment lahze	لحظه	my father pedaram	يدرم
Monday do-ŝanbe	دوشنبه	my own xodam	خودم
money pul	يول	myself xodam	خودم
month; moon māh	ماه	name esm	أسم
mood hāl	حال	national melli	ملّی
more dige	دیگه	nationality melliyat	ملَّيَّت
more; more often;	-	native of Iran	
mostly biŝtar	بيشتر	ahl-e irān	اهل ابران
morning sobh	صبح	navy blue sormeyi	سرمهای
most of the times	170	near, close nazdik	نزدیک
biŝtar-e vaqthā	بيشتر وقتها	near, close to	
mostly biŝtar	بيشتر	nazdik-e	نزدیک
mother mādar	مادر	necessary läzem	لازم
mother tongue		neck gardan	گردن
zabān-e mādari	زبان مادري	necktie kerāvāt	كراوات
mother-in-law		need niāz	نياز
(husband's		needed läzem	لازم
mother)		negotiation	
mādar-ŝouhar	مادرشوهر	mozākere	مذاكره
mother-in-law (wife's		neighbour hamsäye	همسایه
mother)		neither; none	
mādar-zan	مادرزن	hic-kodām	هيچكدام

neither; none col		none; nil hic	هيج
hic-kodum	هيج كدوم	noon zohr	ظهر
never hic-vaqt	هيچوقت	normal ādi	عادي
new (brand new)		north ŝ om āl	شمال
nou	نو	nose bini	بينى
new (latest) jadid		nothing, no activity	
new tāze	تازه		هیج کار
New Year sal-e nou	سال نو	nothing; anything col	
New Year's Day		hicci	هیچّی
(Iranian) nouruz	نوروز	nothing; anything	
New York niu-york	نيويور ک	hic-ciz	هيجچيز
New Zealand		now hālā	حالا
zelānd-e nou	زلائد نو	now, right now	
news axbār	اخبار	al`ān	الأن
news item xabar	خبر	nowhere; not	
newspaper ruznāme	روزنامه	anywhere hic-jā	هيججا
next time daf e-ye		nuisance mozāhem	مزاحم
ba'd	دفعەي بعد	number (on a house	
next to, beside		door) pelāk	پلاک
pahlu-ye	پهلوی	number ŝomāre	شماره
next, coming		number, unit col	
äyande	أينده	dune	دونه
nice, pretty qaŝang	قشنگ	occasionally gāhi	گاهی
night ŝab	شپ	of course albatte	البثه
nine noh	نه	off, bad (rotten)	
nine hundred		xarāb	خراب
nohsad	تهصد	off, rotten, bad	
nineteen nuzdah	نوزده	fäsed	فاسد
ninety navad	نود	office (department/	
ninth nohom	نهم	organisation)	
no na	نه	edāre	اداره
no more; no longer		office (room,	
dige	دیگه	building) daftar	دفتر
no problem		often; frequently	
(responding to		aqlab	اغلب
apology) xāheŝ		Oh dear! ei-vāi!	ایوای!
mikonam	خواهش ميكنم	OK (lit let it be; so	
no problem eib		be it) bāŝe	باشه
nadāre	عيب نداره	OK, it's OK eškāli	
nobody; no one		nadāre	اشكالي نداره
hic-kas	هيجكس	OK, so; well xob	خب
noise sedā	صدا	old (person) mosen	مسن
			-

old (thing/friend)		other / sayer-e	ساير
gadimi	قديمي	our own xodemun	خودمون
old (worn out) kohne	کهنه کهنه	ours māl-e mā	مال ما
on col ru	9,	ourselves xodemun	خودمون
on / bar	بر	out, outside birun	بيرون
on ru-ye	روی	outcome, result	O)/-
on foot piāde	يباده	natije	نتيجه
on the left side of		outside (of)	
dar taraf-e cap-e	در طرف چپ	birun-e	بيرون
on the right side of		overcoat paltou	يالتو
dar taraf-e räst-e	در طرف راست	own; self xod	خود
on, switched on		owner säheb	صاحب
rouŝan	روشن	pain dard	درد
once yek bār	یک بار	painkiller mosakken	مسكّن
one, a, an yek	یک	painting naqqäŝi	نقاشي
onion piāz	پیاز	pair joft	جفت
only faqat	فقط	Pakistan pākestān	ياكستان
open (please) bāz		Pakistani pākestāni	ياكستاني
konid	باز کنید	palm of hand kaf-e	
open bāz	باز	dast	کف دست
operator operator	ايراتور	parcel; closed baste	متس
opinion, view nazar	نظر	parents col pedar o	
opposed; in		mādar	پدر و مادر
disagreement		parents / vāledein	والدين
moxālef	مخالف	Paris pāris	ياريس
opposed to; in		Parisian pārisi	پاریسی
disagreement with		park (garden) park	يار ک
moxālef bā	مخالف با	particularly	
opposite zedd	ضد	maxsusan	مخصوصاً
opposite; facing		party col mehmuni	مهموني
ru-be-ru-ye	روبەروى	party mehmāni	مهماتي
or y ā	ايا	party pārti	پار تی
orange (colour)		passenger mosāfer	مسافر
nārenji	نارنجى	passport	
orange porteqal	پرتقال	gozarnāme	كذرنامه
orchestra orkestr	اركستر	passport pasport	پاسپورت
order havale	حواله	past, last gozašte	كذشته
order sefāre ŝ	سفارش	past; after	
ordinary ādi	عادى	ba`d-az	بعداز
originally; at all		patience sabr	صبر
aslan	اصلاً	patient, with	
other dige	دیگه	patience sabur	صبور

patient; ill, sick		piece(s) tā	រេ	
bimār	بيمار	pill, tablet qors	قرص	
peach holu	هلو	pineapple ānānās	آناناس	
pear golābi	گلابی	pink surati	صورتى	
pear-shaped		pipe lule	لوله	
golābi-ŝekl	گلابیشکل	pity, alas heif	حيف	
pen qalam	قلم	pizza pitz ā	پیتزا	
pencil medād	مداد	pizza shop		
penicillin penisilin	پنىسىلىن	pitzā-foruŝi	پیتزافروشی	
people mardom	مردم	place mahall	محل	
pepper felfel	فلقل	place, seat jā	جا	
per kilo ki<u>lu</u>yi	كيلويي	plan; programme;		
per month <u>mā</u> hi	ماهي	timetable		
performance ejrā	اجرا	barnāme	برنامه	
perhaps šāyad	شايد	play (theatre)		
permission ejāze	اجازه	namäyeŝnäme	تمايشنامه	
Persian fārsi	فارسى	pleasant(ly) xos	خوش	
Persian Gulf		please, kindly lotfan	لطفأ	
xalij-e färs	خليج فارس	please; I request		
person kas	کس	xāheš mikonam	خواهش می کنم	
person/people		pleased xosvaqt	خوشوقت	
(when counting)		plenty ziād	زياد	
nafar	تفر	plum ā lu	ألو	
personal ŝaxsi	شخصى	plump topoli	تپلی	
personal effects/	388	pocket jib	جيب	
belongings		poison zahr	زهر	
vasāyel-e ŝaxsi	وسايل شخصى	police polis	پلیس	
petrol station	(T)	police force niru-ye		
pomp-e benzin	پمپ بنزین	entezāmi	نيروى انتظامي	
phonebook		police station		
daftarce-ye		kalāntari	كلانترى	
telefon	دفترچەي تلفن	pomegranate anăr	انار	
photocopy fotokopi	فتوكيي	pool estaxr	استخر	
photographer akkās	عكّاس	port bandar	بندر	
photography akkāsi	عكّاسي	possible momken	ممكن	
pianist piānist	ييانيست	post office col		
piano piāno	پیاتو	postxune	يستخونه	
pickles torši	ترشى	post, mail post	پست	
pickpocket jib-bor	جيٻير	postage (lit money		
picture, photograph		for stamp) pul-e		
aks	عكس	tam(b)r	پول تمبر	

postbox sanduq-e		publications	
post	صندوق پست	enteŝārāt	انتشارات
postcard kārt-postāl	كارتيستال	pullover, sweater	
postcode kod-e		poliver	پوليور
posti	کد پستی	purpose, aim hadaf	هدف
poster poster	پوستر	quarter (of an hour)	
postman postci	پستچی	rob`	ربع
potato sib-e zamini	سيب زميني	question so`āl	سؤال
pound (£) pond	پوند	quick(ly) zud	زود
prawn meigu	ميگو	quiet säket	ساكت
preferably tarjihan	ترجيحأ	race mosābeqe	مسابقه
pregnancy hāmelegi	حاملگی	radio rādio	راديو
pregnant hāmele	حامله	rain b ā r ān	باران
preparation, readiness		rain col bărun	بارون
āmādegi	آمادگی	raincoat col băruni	باروني
prepared, ready		rainy; raincoat	
āmāde	أماده	bārāni	بارانى
present, gift hedye	هديه	rainy; raincoat col	
pretty, nice qaŝang	قشنگ	bāruni	بارونى
previously qablan	قبلاً	rarely be-nodrat	بەندرت
price qeimat	قيمت	rate nerx	ترخ
Prime Minister		readiness,	
noxost-vazir	نخستوزير	preparation	
prison zendān	زندان	āmādegi	أمادكي
problem eib	عيب	reading (general)	
problem moŝkel	مشكل	motāle`e	مطالعه
problem, difficulty		reading col	
eŝkāl	اشكال	xundan (xun)	خوندن (خونـ)
programme		ready hāzer	حاضر
barnāme	برنامه	ready, prepared	
property, belonging		āmāde	أماده
māl	مال	reason dalil	دليل
proposed pišnahādi	پیشنهادی	receipt resid	رسيد
protector hāfez	حافظ	receiver guŝi	گوشی
protector negahdār	نگهدار	recently axiran	اخيرأ
proximity; vicinity	, ,	reception pazirāyi	پذیرایی
nazdiki	نزدیکی	red qermez	ب بار من قرمز
public hamegāni	همگانی	red sorx	سرخ
public omumi	عمومي	registered (mail)	
public telephone	3,	sefāreŝi	سفارشي
telefon-e		relative(s), extended	6 /
		1 11	

reliable qābel-e		same; this same/	
etminān	قابل اطمينان	very hamin	همين
remember (lit let		sandwich	
it be in your		sāndevic	ساندويج
memory) y ādetun		satisfied, happy rāzi	راضي
bāŝe	يادتون باشه	Saturday sanbe	شنيه
rent ejāre	اجاره	sauce sos	سس
rented, rental, for		scale tarāzu	ترازو
rent ejāreyi	اجارهای	scarf ŝāl-e gardan	شال گردن
request xāhe ŝ	خواهش	scenery manzare	منظره
residence; stay		school madrese	مدرسه
eqāmat	اقامت	Scotland eskātland	اسكاتلند
restaurant, canteen		Scottish eskātlandi	اسكاتلندى
resturān	رستوران	sea daryā	دريا
result, outcome		seat jā	جا
natije	نتيجه	second (1/60 minute)	
rial (Iranian currency)		sānie	ثانيه
riāl	ريال	second dovvom	دوم
rice berenj	يرنج	second dovvomin	دومين
rich pul-dār	پولدار	secretary monŝi	منشى
rich qani	غنى	seeing, meeting	
richness qanā	غنا	didār	ديدار
right (not left) rāst	راست	seeing; to see didan	
right here (lit this		(bin)	دیدن (بینـ)
very place)		self; own xod	خود
hamin-jā	همينجا	selling, sale foruŝ	فروش
right now al'ān	الأن	seminar seminār	سمينار
right, correct dorost	درست	sentence jomle	جمله
robe (worn by		separate jodā	جدا
women in public		September	
in Iran) māntou	مانتو	septāmbr	سيتامير
room otāq	اتاق	serial seriāl	سريال
rotten, bad, off		seriously, really	
fäsed	فاسد	jeddan	tse
round gerd	گرد	service xedmat	خدمت
salad sālād	سالاد	set aside bezārid	
salary hoquq	حقوق	kenār	بذاريد كنار
salt namak	نمک	seven haft	هفت
saltcellar, saltshaker		seven hundred	
namakdun	نمكدون	haftsad	هفتصد
same way		seventeen hefdah	هفده
hamin-tour	همينطور	seventieth haftādom	هفتادم

seventy haftād	هفتاد	Sir (used by a junior	
several candin	چندين	in rank addressing	
several times candin	250	a senior) qorbān	قربان
bār	چندین بار	sir, gentleman ā q ā	آقا
severe sadid	شديد	sister xāhar	خواهر
severity seddat	شذت	sit down (please)	
shape šekl	شكل	beŝinid	بشيئيد
shaver riŝ-tarāŝ	ريش تراش	situation vaz`	وضع
she, he pol;		six ŝeŝ	شش
(originally) they		six hundred sessad	ششصد
iŝun	ايشون	sixteen ŝānzdah	شانزده
sheet (bedding)	7.7%	sixth sesom	ششم
malāfe	ملافه	sixty §ast	شصت
shirt, dress col		size andāze	اندازه
pirhan	پيرهن	ski, skiing eski	اسكّى
shirt, dress / pirāhan	پيراهن	skin pust	پوست
shoe(s) kafŝ	كفش	skirt dāman	دامن
shop maqāze	مغازه	sky ä sem än	آسمان
shopping, buying		sleep, sleeping;	- F
xarid	خريد	asleep xāb	خواب
short kutāh	كوتاه	sleeplessness,	
shortage kambud	كمبود	insomnia bi-xābi	يىخواپى
should not; must not	25	slim lā qar	لاغر
nabāyad	نباید	slim qalami	قلمى
should, must bāyad	بايد	slow(ly) āheste	أهسته
shoulder ŝāne	شانه	small; young kucek	کوچک
shower duŝ	دوش	smell bu	91
shy xejālati	خجالتي	smile labxand	لبخند
sick bimār	بيمار	sneeze atse	ambe
sick, ill mariz	مريض	snow barf	برف
side kenār	كنار	so xob	خب
side taraf	طرف	so, then, in that	
sides; quarters		case pas	پس
atrāf	اطراف	sock(s) jurāb	جوراب
signature emzā	امضا	socket (electricity)	
silence sokut	سكوت	periz	پريز
sin, guilt gonāh	كناه	sofa, settee kānāpe	كاتايه
sincerely (yours)		some of ba'zi az	بعضی از
erādatmand	ارادتمند	someone kasi	. ای ر کسی
singer xānande	خواننده	something cizi	چیزی
single room otāq-e		sometimes	
yek-nafare	اتاق يكنفره	ba`zi-vaqthā	بعضىوقتها

somewhere jāyi	جایی	stamp tam(b)r	تمبر
son, boy pesar	پسر	star setāre	ستاره
song āvāz	آواز	starter piŝ-qazā	پیشغذا
song, tune ā hang	آهنگ	station; stop istgāh	ايستگاه
son-in-law dāmād	داماد	still, yet hanuz	هنوز
soon (in the near		stop; station istgāh	ايستگاه
future) be-zudi	بەزودى	store, shop	
soon zud	زود	foruŝgāh	فروشگاه
sore throat		storm tufān	توفان
galu-dard	گلودرد	storminess	
sorrow, sadness		tufāni-budan	توفانىيودن
qam	غم	stormy tufāni	توفاني
sorry, forgive/excuse		straight mostaqim	مستقيم
(me) bebaxŝid	ببخشيد	strawberry	
sound sedā	صدا	tut-farangi	توتفرنگی
soup (Iranian) āŝ	آش	street col xiābun	خيابون
soup sup	سوپ	street / xiābān	خيابان
sour orange nārenj	نارنج	student dāneŝju	دانشجو
south jonub	جنوب	students	
souvenir souqāt	سوغات	dāneŝjuyān	دانشجويان
spaghetti espāgeti	اسپاگتی	subject, branch/field	
Spain espāniā	اسپانیا	of study reste	رشته
Spanish espāniāyi	اسپانیایی	subject, matter	
speaker soxanrān	سخنران	mouzu`	موضوع
speaking sohbat	صحبت	successful movaffaq	موقق
special, specific		suckable makidani	مكيدني
xāss	خاص	suddenly yek-dafe	يكدفعه
specific, known		sugar (cube) qand	قند
moŝaxxas	مشخص	sugar (granulated)	
speech, conversation		ŝekar	شكر
harf	حرف	suggestion, proposal	
speech; lecture;		piŝnahād	ييشنهاد
presentation		suit (lit jacket	15 (55)
soxanrāni	سخنراني	and trousers)	
speed sor'at	سرعت	kot-o-ŝalvār	كتوشلوار
spinach esfenāj	اسفناج	suitable, appropriate	
spoon(ful) qāŝoq	قاشق	monāseb	مناسب
sport varzeŝ	ورزش	suitcase camedun	چمدون
spring (season)		summer col	
bahār	بهار	tābestun	تابستون
square, circus		summer täbestän	تابستان
meidān	ميدان	Sunday yek-ŝanbe	يكشنبه

sunny ā ftābi	أفتابي	tennis tenis	ئنيس
supermarket		tenth dahomin	دهمين
supermärket	سوپرمار کت	than az	3
supposedly		Thank you dast-e	
be-esteläh	بهاصطلاح	ŝomā dard	دست شما درد
sweet ŝ irin	شيرين	nakone	نكنه
sweets, pastries		thank you mamnun	ممنون
ŝirini	شيرينى	thankful; grateful	
swimming ŝ en ā	شنا	mot(a)ŝakker	ىتشكّر
swimming pool		thanks mersi	مرسى
estaxr-e ŝenā	استخر شنا	thanks; I'm grateful	
switched off xāmuŝ	خاموش	mot(a)ŝakkeram	متشكّرم
switched on rousan	روشن	that col un	ون
syrup ŝ arbat	شربت	that, which, who ke	که
table; desk miz	ميز	the fact that inke	ينكه
tablet, pill qors	قرص	the fact that unke	ونكه
tall (person)		the rest baqiye	بقيّه
qad-boland	قدبلند	the sooner the better	
tall boland	بلند	har-ce zudtar	
taller; louder		behtar	فرچه زودتر بهتر
bolandtar	بلندتر	theatre te`ātr	ئاتر
tap ŝir	شير	their own xodesun	<i>خو</i> دشون
target neŝun	نشون	theirs māl-e unhā	مال اونها
tasty, delicious		themselves xodesun	<i>خ</i> ودشون
xoŝmaze	خوشمزه	then (lit that time)	
taxi t ā ksi	تاكسي	un-vaqt	ونوقت
taxi agency		then, afterwards ba'd	بعد
āĝāns	آژانس	then, in that case	
tea c āi	چای	pas	سي.
teacher mo`allem	معلّى	there col unjā	ونجا
team tim	تيم	there is/are hast	ئ ست
Tehrani, from Tehran		there / ānjā	أنجا
tehrāni	تهراني	therefore lezā	نذا
telephone number	0 11	these inhā	ين ها
ŝomāre telefon	شماره نلفن	they / ā nh ā	أنها
telephone, telephone	-	they, those col unhā	ونها
(call) telefon	تلفن	thick koloft	ران کلفت
telephone/telecom	-	thief, robber, burglar	
centre markaz-e		dozd	دزد
telefon	مركز تلفن	thigh rān	ان
television televizion	تلويزيون	thing ciz	بيز
ten dah	ده	third sevvom	سوم سوم

third sevvomin	سومين	to allow/let (lit to	
thirst teŝnegi	تشنگی	give permission)	
thirsty teŝne	تشنه	ejāze dādan (d)	اجازه دادن (د)
thirteen sizdah	سيزده	to announce e'lām	
thirty si	سی	kardan (kon)	اعلام کردن (کنــ)
thirty-first si o		to answer javāb	
yekom	سی و یکم	dādan (d)	جواب دادن (د)
this in	این	to apologise for	
this afternoon emruz		be xāter-e	به خاطر
ba`d-az-zohr	امروز بعدازظهر	ma`zerat	معذرت خواستن
this morning		xāstan (xā)	(خوا)
emruz sobh	امروز صبح	to apologise to	
those col unhā	اونها	someone az	
thought, idea fekr	فكر	kasi ma`zerat	از کسی معذرت
thousand hezār	هزار	xāstan (xā)	خواستن (خوا)
three se	سه	to arrange qarār	قرار گذاشتن
three hundred sisad	سيصد	gozāstan (zār)	(ذار)
throat galu	گلو	to arrive in	
thumb angost-e		vāred-e	وارد شدن
ŝast	انگشت شست	ŝodan (ŝ) [ŝav]	(شــ) [شو]
thunder ra'd	رعد	to arrive, to enter	
Thursday		väred ŝodan (ŝ)	وارد شدن
panj-ŝanbe	ينجشنبه	[ŝav]	(شــ) [شو]
ticket belit	بليت	to arrive/reach	
time mouqe`	موقع	residan (res)	رسیدن (رسـ)
time sā`at	ساعت	to ask someone (to	
time vaqt	وقت	do) az kasi	
time(s) bār	بار	xāstan (xā)	از کسی خواستن
timetable barnāme	برنامه	[xāh]	(خوا) [خواهـ]
tired xaste	خسته	to ask someone a	
tiredness, fatigue		question yek so`āl	یک سؤال از
xastegi	خستگی	az kasi porsidan	کسی پرسیدن
tiring, boring		(pors)	(پرســ)
xaste-konande	خستهكننده	to ask/enquire	
to be	به	porsidan (pors)	پرسیدن (پرسـ)
to accept qabul		to attend	
to accept qabul kardan (kon)	قبول کردن (کنہ)	to attend (a meeting)	
			در شرکت
kardan (kon)	قبول کردن (کنه) درد کردن (کنه)	(a meeting)	در شرکت کردن (کنــ)
kardan (kon) to ache dard kardan		(a meeting) dar§erkat	
kardan (kon) to ache dard kardan (kon)		(a meeting) dar ŝerkat kardan (kon)	

to be budan (hast)	بودن (هستـ)	to be opened bāz	
(bāŝ)	(یاشے)	ŝodan (ŝ)	باز شدن (شــ)
to be able col		to be possible	
tunestan (tun)	تونستن (تونـ)	ŝodan (ŝ)[ŝav]	شدن (شــ)[شُو]
to be able I		to be said/told gofte	•
tavānestan (tavān)	توانستن (توانـ)	ŝodan (ŝ)	گفته شدن (شـ)
to be bought xaride		to be seen dide	
ŝodan (ŝ)	خریدہ شدن (شــ)	ŝodan (ŝ)	دیده شدن (شــ)
to be closed baste		to be signed emzā	
ŝodan (ŝ)	بسته شدن (شـ)	ŝodan (ŝ)	امضا شدن (شــ)
to be cooked poxte		to be sold foruxte	فروخته شدن
ŝodan (ŝ)	پخته شدن (شــ)	ŝodan (ŝ)	(شــ)
to be counted		to be warmed up	
ŝomorde	شمرده شدن	garm ŝodan (ŝ)	گرم شدن (شــ)
ŝodan (ŝ)	(شـــ)	to be washed soste	
to be defeated by		ŝodan (ŝ)	شسته شدن (شـ)
az ŝekast	از شكست	to be worried	
xordan (xor)	خوردن (خور)	negarān budan	نگران بودن
to be finished		(hast) (bāŝ)	(هست) (باشـ)
tamum ŝodan	تموم شدن (شــ)	to be worth arzidan	
to be forced majbur		(arz)	ارزيدن (ارز)
ŝodan (ŝ)	مجبور شدن (شــ)	to bear with (the	
to be freed āzād		speaker) sabr	
ŝodan (ŝ)	آزاد شدن (شــ)	kardan (kon)	صبر کردن (کنہ)
to be heard senide		to become ŝodan	
ŝodan (ŝ)	شنیده شدن (شـ)	(ŝ)[ŝav][ŝou]	شدن (شــ)اشُوا اشُوا
to be honest (lit its		to become warm	
truth) rāsteŝ	راستش	garm ŝodan (ŝ)	گرم شدن (شــ)
to be in a hurry		to begin vi ŝoru`	
ajale dästan		ŝodan (ŝ)	شروع شدن (شـ)
(dār)	عجله داشتن (دار)	to begin (something)	
to be interested		vt ŝoru` kardan	
in be alāqe	به علاقه	(kon)	شروع کردن (کنے)
dästan (där)	داشتن (دار)	to begin to ache dare	1
to be invited da'vat		gereftan (gir)	درد گرفتن (گیر)
ŝodan (ŝ)	دعوت شدن (شـ)	to book/reserve	
to be killed koŝte		rezerv kardan	
ŝodan (ŝ)	کشته شدن (شــ)	(kon)	رزرو کردن (کنے)
to be modest		to break ŝ ekastan	
(self-deprecate)		(ŝekan)	شکستن (شکئے)
ŝekaste-nafsi	شكستهنفسي	to breathe nafas	نفس كشيدن
kardan (kon)	کردن (کنہ)	keŝidan (keŝ)	(كشــ)

to bring		to convey/send	
āvordan (ār)	آوُردن (آر)	resundan	
to bring / āvardan	7.07	(resun)	رسوندن (رسونـ)
(āvar)	آوَردن (آوَر)	to cook poxtan	.,,,,,
to burn/sting	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	(paz)	پختن (پز)
suxtan (suz)	سوختن (سوز)	to cost ŝodan	3, 0 ,
to burst tarakidan	0, 10 ,	(ŝ)[ŝav]	شدن (شــ)[شو]
(tarak)	ترکیدن (ترک)	to cough sorfe	,
to buy xaridan (xar)	خریدن (خر)	kardan (kon)	سرفه کردن (کنــ)
to call sedā kardan	, ,	to count somordan	,
(kon)	صدا کردن (کنہ)	(ŝomor)	شمردن (شمر)
to catch gereftan		to dance raqsidan	
(gir)	گرفتن (گیر)	(rags)	رقصیدن (رقص)
to catch a cold	, ,	to decide tasmim	تصميم گرفتن
sarmā xordan	سرما خوردن	gereftan (gir)	(گير)
(xor)	(خور)	to defeat someone	
to catch fire ātes	***	kasi rā šekast	کسی را شکست
gereftan (gir)	أتش گرفتن (گير)	dādan (d)	دادن (د)
to celebrate jaŝn	, , , ,	to depart; to start a	
gereftan (gir)	جشن گرفتن (گیر)	journey harkat	
to change tabdil		kardan (kon)	حرکت کردن (کنہ)
kardan (kon)	تبدیل کردن (کنہ)	to die mordan (mir)	مردن (میر)
to check cek		to disappear	
kardan (kon)	چک کردن (کنہ)	nāpadid	تاپدید شدن
to clean tamiz		ŝodan (ŝ)	(شــ)
kardan (kon)	تميز كردن (كنـ)	to dislike bad	
to close, to shut		umadan (ā)	بد اومدن (أ)
bastan (band)	بستن (بند)	to do kardan (kon)	کردن (کنہ)
to come umadan (ā)	اومدن (أ)	to do; to carry	15 35
to come from		out anjām	
ahl-e budan	اهل بودن	dādan (d)	انجام دادن (د)
(hast)	(هستـ)	to draw kesidan	
to come on (lights)		(keŝ)	کشیدن (کش)
rouŝan ŝodan (ŝ)	روشن شدن (شــ)	to drink col; to eat	
to congratulate		xordan (xor)	خوردن (خور)
someone on		to drink / nuŝidan	
something cizi rā	چیزی را به کسی	(nuŝ)	نوشیدن (توشــ)
be kasi tabrik	تبريك گفتن	to drive col rundan	
goftan (g)[gu]	(گ)[گو]	(run)	روندن (رونـ)
to contact someone		to drive; to do the	
bā kasi tamās	با کسی تماس	driving rānandegi	رانندگی کردن
gereftan (gir)	گرفتن (گیر)	kardan (kon)	(کنے)

to eat xordan		to free āzād		
(xor)	خوردن (خور)	kardan (kon)	آزاد کردن (کنے)	
to employ someone	,, ,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	to get gereftan		
kasi rā estexdām	کسی را استخدام	(gir)	گرفتن (گیر)	
kardan (kon)	کردن (کنے)	to get blocked	, , ,	
to enjoy		gereftan (gir)	گرفتن (گیر)	
az lezzat	از لذَّت بردن	to get off/out		
bordan (bar)	(بر)	of (a vehicle)		
to enter		az piāde	از پیاده	
vāred-e		ŝodan (ŝ)	شدن (شــ)	
ŝodan (ŝ)	وارد شدن	to get on/board		
[ŝav]	(شــ) اشوا	(a vehicle)		
to explain touzih		savār-e		
dādan (d)	توضيح دادن (د)	ŝodan (ŝ)	سوار شدن (شـ)	
to extinguish, to		to get ready hazer		
switch/turn off		ŝodan (ŝ)	حاضر شدن (شــ)	
xāmuŝ kardan	خاموش كردن	to get to know ;		
(kon)	(کنـ)	to meet (first		
to faint, to collapse		time) b ā āŝ en ā	با آشنا شدن	
qaŝ kardan		ŝodan (ŝ)	(شــ)	
(kon)	غش کردن (کنــ)	to get up boland		
to fall oftādan (oft)	افتادن (أفت)	ŝodan (ŝ)	بلند شدن (شــ)	
to feel ehs ās	احساس كردن	to get well xub		
kardan (kon)	(کنہ)	ŝodan (ŝ)	خوب شدن (شــ)	
to feel hess		to give (kindly) lotf		
kardan (kon)	حس کردن (کنہ)	kardan (kon)	لطف کردن (کنے)	
to fill in por kardan		to give dādan		
(kon)	پرکردن (کنہ)	(d)[dah][deh]	دادن (د) [دَهــــ] [دِه]	
to find peidā kardan		to go out (lights)	خاموش شدن	
(kon)	ہیدا کردن (کنے)	xāmuŝ ŝodan (ŝ)	(شـــ)	
to finish (something)		to go, to move; to		
tamum kardan		walk rāh raftan (r)	راه رفتن (ر)	
(kon)	تموم کردن (کئـ)	to go; going raftan		
to fix; to make		(r) [rav] [rou]	رفتن (ر) [رَوا [رُوا	
dorost kardan	درست کردن	to guess hads		
(kon)	(کنــ)	zadan (zan)	حدس زدن (زنـ)	
to force majbur	مجبور كردن	to haggle cune		
kardan (kon)	(کنہ)	zadan (zan)	چونه زدن (زنـ)	
to forget farāmuš	فراموش	to hail tagarg		
kardan (kon)	کردن (کنـ)	umadan (ā)	تگرگ اومدن (آ)	
to forgive baxŝidan		to happen sodan		
(baxŝ)	بخشیدن (بخشـ)	(ŝ)[ŝav]	شدن (شـ)[شُو]	

to happen ettefäq	CONT. SAT SER	to invite someone	
oftādan (oft)	اتَّفَاق افتادن (افت)	to/for kasi	
to have dästan	داشتن (دار)	rā be/barāye	کسی را به ابرای
(dār)(dāŝte-bāŝ)	(داشتەباش)	da`vat kardan	دعوت كردن
to have (to eat/drink)		(kon)	(کنے)
xordan (xor)	خوردن (خور)	to keep silent/quiet	
to have a		sokut kardan	سكوت كردن
temperature tab		(kon)	(کنہ)
dāŝtan (dār)	تب داشتن (دار)	to keep, to look after	
to have an infection		negah dāŝtan	
cerk kardan (kon)	چرک کردن (کنہ)	(dār)	نگه داشتن (دار)
to have to majbur	مجبور بودن	to kill koštan (koš)	کشتن (کش)
budan (hast)	(هست)	to kiss busidan	33 33673
to hear senidan		(bus)	بوسیدن (بوسـ)
(ŝenav/ŝenou)	شنیدن (شنو)	to know (someone)	
to help		ŝenāxtan (ŝenās)	شناختن (شناسـ)
be komak	به کمک	to know (something)	
kardan (kon)	کردن (کنے)	col dunestan	
to hire kerāye		(dun)	دونستن (دونـ)
kardan (kon)	کرایه کردن (کنے)	to know / dānestan	,,.,,
to hit zadan (zan)	زدن (زنـ)	(dān)	دانستن (دانـ)
to hold (e.g. receiver)	,,,,	to laugh at	
negah dästan		be xandidan	به خندیدن
(dār)	نگه داشتن (دار)	(xand)	. (خند)
to hurry ajale	0-,0	to learn balad	
kardan (kon)	عجله کردن (کنــ)	ŝodan (ŝ)	بلد شدن (شـ)
to impose something	(20,00)	to learn y ād	(, O,
on someone cizi	چیزی را به کسی	gereftan (gir)	یاد گرفتن (گیر)
rā be kasi tahmil	پیری را به سی تحمیل کردن	to leave tark	په ترص ريور،
kardan (kon)	اکنے	kardan (kon)	ترک کردن (کنہ)
to include	(20)	to let, to allow	(, 0-)-
ŝāmel-e	شامل شدن	gozāŝtan (zār)	گذاشتن (ذار)
ŝodan (ŝ)	شامل سدن (شــ)	[gozār]	اگذار ا
to inform someone	()	to lie down derāz	دراز کشیدن دراز کشیدن
of rā be		keŝidan (keŝ)	درار حسیدان (کشــ)
kasi ettelä`	را به کسی	to light; to switch/	(
dādan (d)	اطلاع دادن (د)	turn on rousan	
to intend qasd	قصد داشتن	kardan (kon)	روشن کردن (کنــ)
dāstan (dār)	فصد داستن (دار)	to like dust	روسن بردن رسي دوست داشتن
to interrupt someone	ردار) حرف کسی	dāstan (dār)	دوست داسس (دار)
harf-e kasi rā	حرف نسی را قطع کردن	to like; to fancy xos	(510)
gat` kardan (kon)	را قطع دردن (کنہ)	umadan (ā)	خوش اومدن (أ)
que kardan (kon)	()	amadan (a)	حوس اومدن ۱۱

to listen guŝ		to need läzem	
dādan (d)	گوش دادن (د)	dāstan (dār)	لازم داشتن (دار)
to listen guŝ	300 Fc 0.5 da	to need/require	
kardan (kon)	گوش کردن (کنہ)	be niāz	ه نیاز
to live zendegi	زندگی کردن	dāŝtan (dār)	داشتن (دار)
kardan (kon)	(کنہ)	to negotiate	
to look after		mozākere kardan	بذاكره كردن
az negahdāri	از نگهداری	(kon)	(کنہ)
kardan (kon)	کردن (کنہ)	to obtain gereftan	
to look at		(gir)	رفتن (گیر)
be negāh	به نگاه کردن	to open (something)	,,
kardan (kon)	(کنہ)	bāz kardan	
to look for		(kon)	از کردن (کنے)
donbāl-e	دنبال	to order sefäres	
gaŝtan (gard)	عبر گشتن (گرد)	dādan (d)	سفارش دادن (د)
to lose bāxtan	.,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	to panic houl	(-, 0 0-)
(bāz)	باختن (باز)	ŝodan (ŝ)	بول شدن (شــ)
to lose gom	()4/ ()- 4	to park pārk	ون سان رسب
kardan (kon)	گم کردن (کنـ)	kardan (kon)	ارک کردن (کن)
to lose (a job/a	عم عردن رعب	to participate in	ac, 300 C)
loved one) rā	را از دست	dar ŝerkat	.ر شرکت
az dast dādan (d)	را ار داست دادن (د)	kardan (kon)	ر سر ت کردن (کنہ)
to make ready hazer	(3) (3)	to pass vi (speaking	تردن ر ت
kardan (kon)	حاضر کردن (کنہ)	of time) gozaŝtan	
to make; to fix	حاصر توس ريب	(gozar)	فذشتن (گذر)
dorost kardan		to pass vt; to give	ندستن (ندر)
(kon)	درست کردن (کنہ)	dādan	
to marry someone	()	(d)[dah][deh]	ادن (د)[دهـ][ده]
	1.1 (1		ادن (د) ادهـــاادها
bā kasi ezdevāj	با کسی ازدواج	to perform ejrā	
kardan (kon)	کردن (کنہ)	kardan (kon)	جرا کردن (کنہ)
to meet someone bā	-101	to phone someone	
kasi molāqāt	با كسى ملاقات	be kasi telefon	ه کسی تلفن
kardan (kon)	کردن (کنہ)	kardan (kon)	کردن (کنہ)
to meet with someone	124	to pick up bar	
bā kasi molāqāt	با کسی ملاقات	dāstan (dār)	رداشتن (دار)
kardan (kon)	کردن (کنہ)	to play (a game)	
to meet (first		bāzi kardan	
time) bā āsenā	یا آشنا شدن	(kon)	ازی کردن (کنہ)
ŝodan (ŝ)	(``)	to play (musical	
to miss (a train)		instrument) zadan	
rā az dast	را از دست	(zan)	دن (زنـ)
dādan (d)	دادن (د)	to pour rixtan (riz)	يختن (ريز)

to prefer + to x + rā		to ring someone be	
be × tarjih	+ را به × ترجیح	kasi zang zadan	به کسی زنگ
dādan (d)	دادن (د)	(zan)	زدن (زنـ)
to pull keŝidan (keŝ)	کشیدن (کشـ)	to rub mālidan (māl)	ماليدن (مالـ)
to put, to leave		to say (used only for	
gozāŝtan (zār)	گذاشتن (ذار)	others) far mudan	
[gozār]	أكذارا	(farmā)	فرمودن (فرما)
to put/set aside		to say hello to	
kenär gozästan	كنار گذاشتن	be salām	په سلام
(zār)	(ذار)	resundan (resun)	رسوندن (رسونـ)
to rain bārun	-	to say, to tell goftan	
umadan (ā)	بارون اومدن (أ)	(g)[gu]	گفتن (گ)[گو]
to read col		to see; seeing didan	
xundan (xun)	خوندڻ (خونہ)	(bin)	دیدن (بین)
to recognise		to seem be nazar	
ŝenāxtan (ŝenās)	شناختن (شناسـ)	umadan (ā)	به نظر اومدن (آ)
to refer/report/go		to sell foruxtan	
(to) morāje`e	مراجعه كردن	(foruŝ)	فروختن (فروش)
kardan (kon)	(کنے)	to send (used for	22.0 22
to register (mail)	,	others) / ersāl	
sefāreši kardan	سفارشي كردن	farmudan	ارسال فرمودن
(kon)	(کنہ)	(farmā)	(فرما)
to remain mundan		to send / ersāl	ارسال كردن
(mun)	موندن (مونـ)	kardan (kon)	(کنہ)
to remember :	-,,,,,	to send something	
to think of		to someone cizi	
yād-e		rā barāve kasi	11.
•			
Kardan (Kon)	(-S) . 25 sh	ferestädan	چیزی را برای کسی فرستادن
kardan (kon) to rent eläre	یاد کردن (کنہ)	ferestädan (ferest)	كسى فرستادن
to rent ejāre		(ferest)	
to rent ejāre kardan (kon)	یاد کردن (کنہ) اجارہ کردن (کنہ)	(ferest) to shave tarāŝidan	کسی فرستادن (فرستہ)
to rent ejäre kardan (kon) to request someone		(ferest) to shave tarāšidan (tarāš)	كسى فرستادن
to rent ejāre kardan (kon) to request someone (to do) az kasi	اجاره کردن (کنہ)	(ferest) to shave tarāšidan (tarāš) to shop xarid	کسی فرستادن (فرست) تراشیدن (تراش)
to rent ejāre kardan (kon) to request someone (to do) az kasi xāheŝ kardan	اجاره کردن (کنـ) از کسی خواهش	(ferest) to shave tarāšidan (tarāš) to shop xarid kardan (kon)	کسی فرستادن (فرستہ)
to rent ejäre kardan (kon) to request someone (to do) az kasi xäheŝ kardan (kon)	اجاره کردن (کنہ)	(ferest) to shave tarāšidan (tarāš) to shop xarid kardan (kon) to show neŝun	کسی فرستادن (فرست) تراشیدن (تراشه) خرید کردن (کنه)
to rent ejäre kardan (kon) to request someone (to do) az kasi xāheŝ kardan (kon) to require/need	اجاره کردن (کنه) از کسی خواهش کردن (کنه)	to shave tarāšidan (tarāš) to shop xarid kardan (kon) to show neŝun dādan (d)	کسی فرستادن (فرست) تراشیدن (تراش)
to rent ejāre kardan (kon) to request someone (to do) az kasi xāheŝ kardan (kon) to require/need be niāz dāŝtan	اجاره کردن (کنه) از کسی خواهش کردن (کنه) به نیاز	to shave tarāŝidan (tarāŝ) to shop xarid kardan (kon) to show neŝun dādan (d) to sign emzā	کسی فرستادن (فرست) تراشیدن (تراشه) خرید کردن (کنه) نشون دادن (د)
to rent ejāre kardan (kon) to request someone (to do) az kasi xāheš kardan (kon) to require/need beniāz dāŝtan (dār)	اجاره کردن (کنه) از کسی خواهش کردن (کنه)	(ferest) to shave tarāŝidan (tarāŝ) to shop xarid kardan (kon) to show neŝun dādan (d) to sign emzā kardan (kon)	کسی فرستادن (فرست) تراشیدن (تراشه) خرید کردن (کنه)
to rent ejāre kardan (kon) to request someone (to do) az kasi xāheŝ kardan (kon) to require/need beniāz dāŝtan (dār) to return bar gaŝtan	اجاره کردن (کنه) از کسی خواهش کردن (کنه) به نیاز داشتن (دار)	(ferest) to shave tarāŝidan (tarāŝ) to shop xarid kardan (kon) to show neŝun dādan (d) to sign emzā kardan (kon) to sing col	کسی فرستادن (فرست) تراشیدن (تراش) خرید کردن (کن) نشون دادن (د) امضا کردن (کن)
to rent ejāre kardan (kon) to request someone (to do) az kasi xāheŝ kardan (kon) to require/need beniāz dāŝtan (dār) to return bar gaŝtan (gard)	اجاره کردن (کنه) از کسی خواهش کردن (کنه) به نیاز	(ferest) to shave tarāšidan (tarāš) to shop xarid kardan (kon) to show neŝun dādan (d) to sign emzā kardan (kon) to sing col xundan (xun)	کسی فرستادن (فرست) تراشیدن (تراشه) خرید کردن (کنه) نشون دادن (د)
to rent ejāre kardan (kon) to request someone (to do) az kasi xāheŝ kardan (kon) to require/need beniāz dāŝtan (dār) to return bar gaŝtan (gard) to return (something	اجاره کردن (کنه) از کسی خواهش کردن (کنه) به نیاز داشتن (دار)	(ferest) to shave tarāšidan (tarāš) to shop xarid kardan (kon) to show nešun dādan (d) to sign emzā kardan (kon) to sing col xundan (xun) to sit down	کسی فرستادن (فرست) تراشیدن (تراش) خرید کردن (کن) نشون دادن (د) امضا کردن (کن) خوندن (خون)
to rent ejāre kardan (kon) to request someone (to do) az kasi xāheŝ kardan (kon) to require/need beniāz dāŝtan (dār) to return bar gaŝtan (gard)	اجاره کردن (کنه) از کسی خواهش کردن (کنه) به نیاز داشتن (دار)	(ferest) to shave tarāšidan (tarāš) to shop xarid kardan (kon) to show neŝun dādan (d) to sign emzā kardan (kon) to sing col xundan (xun)	کسی فرستادن (فرست) تراشیدن (تراش) خرید کردن (کن) نشون دادن (د) امضا کردن (کن)

(kon) (كت) kardan (kon) (كت) to sleep xābidan (xāb) (إلى الموادق المعادى ال	to ski eski kardan	اسكى كردن	to suggest pišnahād	پیشنهاد کردن
to smell bu dādan (d) (a) بو دادن (کنا) to smile at be labxand zadan (zan) (نن) to smoke keŝidan (keŝ) (دالله الله الله الله الله الله الله الله	, ,	(کنہ)		(کنہ)
to smell bu dādan (d) to smile at be labxand zadan (zan) to smoke keŝidan (keŝ) to smoke keŝidan (keŝ) slgār keŝidan (keŝ) to sneze atse kardan (kon) to sneze atse kardan (kon) to snew barf umadan (ā) to speak sohbat kardan (kon) to speak up bolandtar sohbat kardan (kon) to speil rixtan (riz) to stand on ceremony ta arof ceremony ta arof stand up istādan (ist) to stay, to remain mundan (mun) to stoy (a vehicle) negah dāstan (dār) to study col xundan (xun) to suck makidan to smile at be labxand				
bu dādan (d) to smile at		خوابيدن (خوابـ)		
to smile at				جارو کردن (کنہ)
الله المنافقة المن		بو دادن (د)		
zadan (zan) (ن) (ن) extinguish xāmuŝ خاموش كردن (كش) to smoke keŝidan (keŝ) (سكار كشيدن (كسال (keŝ) to switch/turn on; to light rouŝan kardan (kon) to switch/turn on; to light rouŝan kardan (kon) kardan (kon) to take (medicine) to take (medicine) to take (medicine) to take (medicine) to take (time) tul to take time) tul		0.0000		شنا کردن (کنہ)
to smoke keŝidan (keŝ) (دغر) دارکت) to smoke cigarette(s) sigār keŝidan (keŝ) (دغر) to to smoke cigarette(s) sigār keŝidan (keŝ) (دغر) to take (medicine) to sneeze atse kardan (kon) (دغر) to take (time) tul keŝidan (keŝ) (دغر) to take (time) tul keŝidan (keŝ) (دغر) to take a picture to speak sohbat (دغر) (عغر) to take a picture to speak sohbat (دغر) (عغر) to take back (by seller) pas kardan (kon) (دغر) to take part in dar ŝerkat (xor) (دغر) to take trouble zahmat keŝidan (ist) (دغر) to take (time) tul keŝidan (keŝ) (cime) to take back (by seller) pas kardan (kon) (دغر) to take part in dar ŝerkat (xor) (cime) to take trouble zahmat keŝidan (ist) (to take trouble zahmat keŝidan (keŝ) (keŝ) (cime) to take/carry; to win bordan (bar) (cime) to take/carry; to win bordan (bar) (cime) to take (cime) to take to take dar (ken) (cime) to take (cime) (cime) to take (cime) to take (cime)				
to smoke cigarette(s) sigār keŝidan (keŝ) (شكر كردن (كئي sigār keŝidan (keŝ) (شكر كردن (كئي to take (medicine) to sneeze atse نود ده (كئي to take (medicine) to snow barf (الله علي الله الله الله الله الله الله الله ال		زدن (زنـ)	-	
to smoke cigarette(s) sigār keŝidan (keŝ) (شكار كشيدن to sneeze atse kardan (kon) (شكار كشيدن to sneeze atse kardan (kon) (شكار كشيدن to snow barf umadan (ā) (أكس الله الله الله الله الله الله الله الل				(کنہ)
sigār keŝidan (keŝ) (كسّن الله to take (medicine) to sneeze atse (كسّن الله snow barf (كسّن الله speak sohbat kardan (kon) (كسّن الله speak sohbat kardan (kon) (كسّن الله speak up bolandtar sohbat kardan (kon) (كسّن الله spill rixtan (riz) (كسّن الله spill rixtan (kon) (كسّن الله spill rixtan (kon) (كسّن الله spill rixtan (kon) (كسّن الله spill rixtan (riz) (كسّن الله spill rixtan (kon) (كسّن الله كله الله stand on ceremony ta arof kardan (kon) (كسّن الله stand up istādan (ist) (كسّن الله stand (ist) (كسّن الله stand (kon) (كسّن الله كسّن الله stand (kon) (كسّن الله الله الله كسّن الله stand (kon) (كسّن الكسّن الله الله الله كسّن الله stand (kon) (كسّن الله كسّن الله الله الله كسّن الله الله الله كسّن الله الله الله الله الله الله الله الل		کشیدن (کشہ)	to switch/turn on; to	
to sneeze atse kardan (kon) to snow barf umadan (ā) to speak sohbat kardan (kon) to speak sohbat kardan (kon) to speak up bolandtar sohbat kardan (kon) to spill rixtan (riz) to stand on ceremony taʾarof kardan (kon) to stand up istādan (ist) to stay, to remain mundan (mun) to stay/reside eqāmat kardan (kon) to study col xundan (xun) to study col xundan (xun) to study dars xundan (xun) to suek (medicine) xordan (xor) xordan (xer) xordan (xor) xordan (xer) xordan (xer) xordan (xor) xordan (keŝ)			•	
to sneeze atse kardan (kon) (كنا) to snow barf umadan (ā) (أكثان to take (time) tul keŝidan (keŝ) (كثان to speak sohbat kardan (kon) (كان to speak sohbat kardan (kon) (كان to speak up bolandtar sohbat kardan (kon) (كان to spill rixtan (riz) (كان كان to stand on ceremony taʾarof kardan (kon) (كان to stand up istādan (ist) (كان to stay, to remain mundan (mun) (xon) (xon) (xon) to stop (a vehicle) negah dāŝtan (dār) (xon) (xon) to study col to study dars xundan (xun) (xon) (xon) to suck makidan to tell, to say goftan (kon) (xon) (xon) to suck makidan to tell, to say goftan (kon) (xon) (sigär keŝidan	سیگار کشیدن	kardan (kon)	روشن کردن (کنہ)
kardan (kon) (كنا) to take (time) tul لد كال المدن (كنا) to snow barf umadan (ā) (أن المدن (كنا) to take a picture to speak sohbat kardan (kon) (كنا) صحبت كردن (كنا) to speak up bolandtar sohbat kardan (kon) لا كونن (كنا) to take back (by seller) pas gereftan (gir) to spill rixtan (riz) لا كونن (كنا) yereftan (gir) (يغ كون (كنا) to stand on ceremony taʾārof kardan (kon) لا كونن (كنا) to take part in	(keŝ)		to take (medicine)	
to snow barf umadan (ā) (أَن على الله الله الله الله الله الله الله ال	to sneeze atse	عطسه كردن	xordan (xor)	
umadan (ā) (أن الله الله الله الله الله الله الله الل	kardan (kon)	(کنے)	to take (time) tul	طول كشيدن
to speak sohbat kardan (kon) (اختان (گیر) to speak up bolandtar sohbat kardan (kon) to spill rixtan (riz) to stand on ceremony taʾārof kardan (kon) (اختان (کشی) to stand up istādan (ist) to stay, to remain mundan (mun) to stay/reside eqāmat kardan (kon) (اختان (کسی) to stop (a vehicle) negah dāṣtan (dār) to study col xundan (xun) to study dars xundan (xun) to sukk makidan rot to stay gereftan (gir) to take back (by seller) pas gereftan (gir) to take part in dar ŝerkat car ŝerkat kardan (kon) (bar ŝerkat car serkat car serkat car ŝerkat car serkat car serkat car serkat car (keŝ) co take trouble to take/carry; to win bordan (bar) bordan (bar) can) can	to snow barf		keŝidan (keŝ)	(کشــ)
kardan (kon) (ن) gereftan (gir) (الله bolandtar sohbat bolandtar sohbat kardan (kon) (الله seller) pas gereftan (gir) (الله seller) pas gereftan (gir) (الله spill rixtan (riz) (الله spill rixtan (riz) (الله spill rixtan (riz) (الله spill rixtan (riz) (الله stand on ceremony taʾarof kardan (kon) (الله stand (kon) (الله stand up istādan (ist) (الله stand (ist) (الله stand (kon) (keŝ) (keŝ	umadan (ā)	برف اومدن (أ)	to take a picture	
to speak up bolandtar sohbat kardan (kon) to spill rixtan (riz) to stand on ceremony taʾārof kardan (kon) to stand up istādan (ist) to stay, to remain mundan (mun) to stay/reside eqāmat kardan (kon) (kon) to stop (a vehicle) negah dāŝtan (dār) to study col xundan (xun) to suck makidan to take back (by seller) pas gereftan (gir) to take part in dar ŝerkat kardan (kon) to take trouble zahmat keŝidan (keŝ) (keŝ) to take trouble zahmat keŝidan (keŝ) to take/carry; to win bordan (bar) to talk to bā harf zadan (d) (d) to teach dars dādan (d) to telephone someone be kasi telefon kardan kan) (kon) to tell, to say goftan	to speak sohbat	صحبت كردن	of az aks	از عکس
bolandtar sohbat kardan (kon) ناندتر صحبت الندتر صحبت المحرض (کین) seller) pas gereftan (gir) پس گرفتن (گیر) to take part in	kardan (kon)	(کنہ)	gereftan (gir)	گرفتن (گیر)
kardan (kon) کردن (کنی) Serettan (gir) لوختن (گیر) to spill rixtan (riz) (پختن (پیز) to take part in to stand on موسال کردن (کنی) kardan (kon) الله کردن (کنی) to stand up الله خاص کی الله الله الله الله الله الله الله الل	to speak up		to take back (by	
to spill rixtan (riz) (بغتن (بزز) to stand on ceremony taʾarof بالمعتادة (كنان كردن (كنان كودن كودن كودن (كنان كودن كودن كودن كودن كودن كودن كودن كود	bolandtar sohbat	بلندتر صحبت	seller) pas	
to spill rixtan (riz) (بغتن (بزز) to stand on ceremony taʾarof بالمعتادة (كنان كردن (كنان كودن كودن كودن (كنان كودن كودن كودن كودن كودن كودن كودن كود	kardan (kon)	کردن (کنے)	gereftan (gir)	پس گرفتن (گیر)
to stand on ceremony taʾarof ناون کردن (کنی) to take trouble to stand up istādan (ist) (ستان (ایست) (keŝ) (کشی) to stay, to remain mundan (mun) (مون (بون (بون (بون (بون (کند) to stay/reside eqāmat kardan (kon) (نن) to stop (a vehicle) negah dāṣtan (dār) (العند العلائية الله الله الله الله الله الله الله الل	to spill rixtan (riz)		to take part in	
ceremony taʾārof kardan (kon) (كثر) to take trouble to stand up istādan (ist) to stay, to remain mundan (mun) to stay/reside eqāmat kardan (kon) (kon) (ci) to stop (a vehicle) negah dāŝtan (dār) to study col xundan (xun) to study dars xundan (xun) to suck makidan (kon) (ci) to to telephone someone be kasi to tele, to say goftan to take/carry; to win bordan (bar) to take/carry; to win bordan (bar) (can) bā harf zadan (can) (d) (can) to teach dars dādan to telephone someone be kasi telefon kardan (kon) (ci) to tell, to say goftan	to stand on	., .	dar ŝerkat	در شرکت
kardan (kon) (کند) to take trouble to stand up istādan (ist) (ایستان (ایستان (keŝ) (کشد) to stay, to remain mundan (mun) (موندن (مون) to stay/reside eqāmat kardan (kon) (اغنی) to stop (a vehicle) negah dāŝtan (dār) (اغه داشتن (دار) to study co/ xundan (xun) (خونه) to study dars xundan (xun) (خونه) to suck makidan to teke/carry; to win bordan (bar) (الفق) bō harf zadan (zan) (zan) (d) (san) to teach dars dādan to telephone someone be kasi telefon kardan (kon) (اخونه) to tell, to say goftan	ceremony ta'ārof	تعارف كردن	kardan (kon)	
العستادن (العست (العست) (الهدة) (العست) (العسق) (العس	kardan (kon)	-	to take trouble	
العستادن (العست (العست) (الهدة) (العست) (العسق) (العس	to stand up		zahmat keŝidan	زحمت كشيدن
to stay, to remain mundan (mun) to stay/reside eqāmat kardan (kon) to stop (a vehicle) negah dāŝtan (dār) to study col xundan (xun) to study dars xundan (xun) to suck makidan to talk to bā harf zadan (zan) (zan) (i) to teach dars dādan (d) to telephone someone be kasi telefon kardan (kon) (ci) to tell, to say goftan	istādan (ist)	ایستادن (ایست)	(keŝ)	-
mundan (mun) موندن (مون) موندن (مون) bordan (bar) (بردن (بر)) to stay/reside to talk to eqāmat kardan (kon) (الله الله الله الله الله الله الله الل	to stay, to remain		to take/carry; to win	07.85359
to stay/reside to talk to eqāmat kardan (kon) (قامت کردن (کند) to stop (a vehicle) to teach dars dādan negah dāŝtan (dār) (الله عندن الله الله عندن الله الله الله الله الله الله الله الل	mundan (mun)	موندن (مونـ)	bordan (bar)	يردن (ب)
eqāmat kardan (kon) (kon) (can) (can) (can) (ci) to stop (a vehicle) negah dāstan (dār) to study col xundan (xun) to study dars xundan (xun) (ci) to study dars xundan (xun) (ci) to suck makidan bāharf zadan (can) (can) (can) (bāharf zadan (can)		, , ,		7. 0 7.
(رنه) (ازنه) الله الله الله الله الله الله الله ال			bā harf zadan	با حرف زدن
to stop (a vehicle) to teach dars dādan negah dāstan (dār) (نگه داشتن (دار) (d) (o) to study col to telephone xundan (xun) خوندن (خونـ) someone be kasi to study dars درس خوندن (خونـ) telefon kardan xundan (xun) (خونـ) (kon) (خونـ) to suck makidan to tell, to say goftan	100°	اقامت کدن (کئے)		
negah dāstan (dār) انگه داشتن (دار) (d) درس دادن (در) در to study col to telephone sundan (xun) خوندن (خونـ) someone be kasi to study dars درس خوندن (خونـ) درس خوندن (خونـ) درس خوندن (خونـ) to suck makidan to tell, to say goftan	•	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	, ,	
to study col sundan (xun) خوندن (خونـا) someone be kasi to study dars درس خوندن telefon kardan (xun) (خونـا) (kon) (كردن (كنـا) to suck makidan to tell, to say goftan		نگه داشت: (دا.)		د. س. داد: (د)
xundan (xun)خوندن (خونـ)someone be kasito study darsدرس خوندنtelefon kardanxundan (xun)(خونـ)(kon)کردن (کنـ)to suck makidanto tell, to say goftan		()-, 0	* *	.,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,
to study dars درس خوندن telefon kardan (xun) (خونه) (kon) (کودن (کنه) to suck makidan (xun) (خونه) to to tell, to say goftan	•	خوندن (خونه)		
xundan (xun) (خونـُـ) (kon) (کردن (کنــ) to suck makidan to tell, to say goftan				به کسی تلف
to suck makidan to tell, to say goftan				
		(Jan		رون , ت
[[[[[[[[[[[[[[[[[[[(50) . 15.		[2](8)=
		سيس رسب	(9/19-7	سس ر ب ر بو،

to thank someone		to walk qadam	
az kasi taŝakkor	از کسی تشکّر	zadan (zan)	قدم زدن (زنـ)
kardan (kon)	کردن (کنہ)	to want; to ask	
to think fekr		xāstan (xā)	خواستن (خوا)
kardan (kon)	فکر کردن (کنہ)	[xāh]	[خواهـ]
to throw/put (in)		to warm (something)	
andāxtan		up garm kardan	
(andāz)	انداختن (انداز)	(kon)	گرم کردڻ (کن)
to translate tarjome	ترجمه كردن	to wash ŝostan	شستن (شور)
kardan (kon)	(کنـ)	(ŝur)[ŝui]	اشويا
to travel		to watch tamāšā	
safar kardan		kardan (kon)	تماشا کردن (کنہ)
(kon)	سفر کردن (کت)	to wear, to put on	
to trouble/bother		puŝidan (puŝ)	پوشیدن (پوشـ)
someone be kasi	به کسی زحمت	to win bordan (bar)	بردن (یر)
zahmat dādan (d)	دادن (د)	to work kar kardan	
to try (to attempt)		(kon)	کار کردن (کنے)
sa`y kardan		to worry negarān	
(kon)	سعی کردن (کنہ)	budan (hast)	تگران بودن
to turn picidan		(bāŝ)	(هست) (باش)
(pic)	پیچیدن (پیچـ)	to write nevestan	
to turn/switch on; to		(nevis)	نوشتن (نویســ)
light rouŝan		today emruz	امروز
kardan (kon)	روشن کردن (کنے)	toe angoŝt-e pā	انگشت پا
to understand		together bā-ham	باهم
fahmidan (fahm)	فهمیدن (فهمـ)	toilet dast-ŝuyi	دستشويي
to use		toilet tuälet	توالت
az estefāde	از استفاده	tomato	
kardan (kon)	کردن (کنہ)	gouje-farangi	گوجەفرنگى
to vacuum clean, to		tomorrow fardā	فردا
sweep jāru		tongue zabān	زبان
kardan (kon)	جارو کردن (کنہ)	tonight, this evening	
to vomit estefrāq	استفراغ كردن	emŝab	امشب
kardan (kon)	(کنــ)	too ham	هم
to wait, to exercise		tooth dandan	دندان
patience sabr		toothache	
kardan (kon)	صبر کردن (کنہ)	dandān-dard	دنداندرد
to wake someone		toothpaste	
up kasi rā bidār	کسی را بیدار	xamir-dandān	خميردندان
kardan (kon)	کردن (کنہ)	topic, matter	0.000
to wake up bidār	1035.00	mouzu`	موضوع
ŝodan (ŝ)	بیدار شدن (شـ)	touring gardes	گردش
			1700

towel houle	حوله	upset; uncomfortable	
town ŝ ahr	شهر	nārāhat	احت
traffic ter ā fik	ترافيک	use, using estefāde	لتفاده
train qat ā r	قطار	useful mofid	ىيد
translation tarjome	ترجمه	usually, normally	
translator motarjem	مترجم	ma`mulan	بمولأ
travelling, holidaying		vacant; empty xāli	الى
mosāferat	مسافرت	value, worth arzes	زش
trip safar	سقر	varied motanavve`	تنوع
trouble zahmat	زحمت	vegetables	
trousers ŝ alv ār	شلوار	sabzijāt	بزيجات
truly vāqe`an	واقعأ	very xeili	يلى
trunk, car boot		vice versa bel'aks	لعكس
sanduq-e aqab	صندوق عقب	view, scenery	
truth räst	راست	manzare	ظره
T-shirt ti-sert	تىشرت	violin violon	ولن
Tuesday se-ŝanbe	سەشنبە	vis-à-vis, against dar	
tune, song ā hang	آهنگ	moqābel-e	ِ مقابل
turnip ŝ alqam	شلغم	visit safar	غر
twelve davāzdah	دوازده	voice sed ā	دا
twenty bist	بيست	vomiting estefrāq	ستفراغ
twenty-first bist o		waist, lower back	
yekom	بیست و یکُم	kamar	,
two do	دو	waistcoat, vest	
two hundred devist	دويست	jeliqe	ليقه
two-bedroomed;		waiting montazer	تظر
with two		walking qadam	
bedrooms		zadan (zan)	م زدن (زنـ)
do-xābe	دوخوابه	warm garm	r.
uncle (maternal) dāyi	دایی	was bud	٥
uncle (paternal) amu	عمو	wasn't nabud	ود
uncomfortable;		watch sā`at	اعت
upset närähat	ناراحت	watching tamāŝā	اشا
under, below zir-e	زير	water; juice āb	-
underwear zirpu ŝ	زيرپوش	watermelon col	
unfortunately; I'm		hendune	بدونه
afraid	10.000	watermelon	
mota`assefāne	متأسفانه	hendevāne	ندوانه
university dänesgäh	دانشگاه	way, distance rāh	
until t ā	تا	we mā	
up to; as far as tā	נו		وا
up, upstairs bālā	YL	wedding arusi	وسي

Wednesday		why cerā	چوا
cahār-ŝanbe	چهارشنیه	wife zan	زن
week hafte	هفته	wife, madam, lady	
weekend āxar-e		xānom	خانم
hafte	آخر هفته	wind bad	باد
welcome xoŝ		window panjare	پنجره
umadid	خوش اومديد	winter col zemestun	زمستون
well xub	خوب	winter zemestān	زمستان
west qarb	غرب	with difficulty	
what ce	چه	be-saxti	بەسختى
what col ci	چى	with me bāhām	باهام
what (activity) ce-kār	چەكار	with them bāhāŝun	باهاشون
What can I do for		with; by bā	اب
you? befarmāyid	بفرماييد	within zarf-e	ظرف
What do you do?		without bedun-e	بدون
ce-kār mikonid?	چەكار مىكنىد؟	woman zan	زن
what time ce sā'ati	چه ساعتی	word kaleme col	
What time is it?		kalame	كلمه
sā`at cande?	ساعت چنده؟	work kār	كار
what's cie	چيه	world donyā	دنیا
what's wrong with		worried negarān	نگران
it/him/her cese	چشه	worry, anxiety	
whatever; to		negarāni	نگرانی
whatever degree		worth; worthy	
har-ce	هرچه	qābel	قابل
when (question		would you like	
word) kei	کی	meil därid	میل دارید
when conj vaqti	وقتى	Wow! How lovely!	
where kojā	كجا	bah-bah!	إمبما
where from kojāyi	كجايى	wrist moc-e dast	مج دست
where in; which part		yeah āre	آره
of kojā-ye	کجای	year sāl	سال
where's kojāst	كجاست	yellow zard	زرد
which kodum	كدوم	yes bale	بله
white sefid	سفيد	'yes' to a negative	
white-collar worker;		question/	
civil servant		suggestion cerā	چرا
kārmand	كارمند	yesterday diruz	ديروز
who ki	کی	yet, still hanuz	هنوز
who's (who is) kie	کیه	yoghurt mäst	ماست
Who's calling?		yoghurt drink (salted)	
jenāb-āli?	جنابعالي؟	dug	دوغ

you (f) ŝ om ā	شما	your own; yourself	
you (inf) to	تو	xodetun	خودتون
you're welcome		your own; yourselves	
xāheŝ mikonam	خواهش مىكنم	xodetun	خودتون
young col javun	جوون	your place jātun	جاتون
young jav ān	جوان	your suitcase	
young; small kucek	کوچک	camedunetun	چمدونتون
younger; smaller		yours inf mal-e to	مال تو
kucektar	کوچکتر	yours māl-e ŝomā	مال شما
youngest; smallest		yourself xodetun	خودتون
kucektarin	كوچكترين	yourself; your own	
your father		(inf) xodet	خودت
pedaretun	يدرتون	yourselves xodetun	خودتون
your own; yourself	-	zero sefr	صفر
(inf) xodet	خودت	Zoroastrian zartoŝti	زرتشتى

Index

```
accommodation, rented 198ff
address, postal 66
abbreviations xv
adjective, comparative 76ff, 366
adjective, superlative 78ff
adjective + noun 22, 40, 366
adjectives and adverbs 366
adverbs of frequency 155ff
after ... 143ff
age, talking about 36ff
alphabet, the xviii-xix
answering the phone 100, 191ff
apologising
   for causing inconvenience 127ff, 137ff, 192
   for interrupting 162ff
   general apology 4, 117, 128, 235, 265
   major apology 125, 235
Are you hungry? 151ff
Are you in the mood for...? 293ff
arranging to meet a friend 287
```

```
arranging to meet a business counterpart 298
article, definite 36, 39, 54, 201, 365
article, indefinite 36, 39ff, 201
asking for change 137ff
be 6ff, 13ff, 15, 36, 111, 140ff, 202, 220, 229ff
before ... 145ff
Be my guest! 91ff, 103, 234ff
birth, place of 22, 29ff
body, parts of the 270
business appointment 298ff
business letter 313ff, 359
calendar, Iranian 302ff
Can you (do) ...? 304ff, 307ff
Can you put it ...? 107, 108ff
Can you speak Persian? 308
causative 373
chemist 273ff
colours 244
come 47, 74ff, 97, 114ff, 221ff, 294ff
come to see ... 195, 287ff, 294ff
communication, grammar of ix, 375
comparisons, making 76ff, 78ff, 366
complaining
   in a hotel 124, 125ff, 332
   in a restaurant 169
```

```
complimenting 20, 35, 155, 296ff, 311, 376
compound verbs 53ff, 96, 97, 109, 130, 210
conditionals (type 1)
   general 210ff, 374
   with verbs 'to be' and 'to have' 220
conditionals (type 2) 229ff, 374
conditionals (type 3) 237ff, 374
congratulations 227ff, 284ff, 296ff, 356ff
conjunctions 194ff
consonants xviiff, 361ff
contractions 13ff
corner shop 234ff
currency
   foreign 262
   Iranian 107ff, 137ff, 241, 226
customs officer 91ff, 103
days of the week 46ff
definite article for a direct object (ra) 54ff, 365
demonstratives 24
describing appearance 180
describing location 27, 62ff, 80ff
details, giving your 28ff, 62ff
didn't have to go 254ff
Did you have a good weekend? 42ff, 48
diet 151ff
dinner table, at the 122, 151ff
```

```
directions, asking and giving 127ff
direct object 55
distance 135
dishes, Iranian 161
doctor's surgery 265
double negative 157 drinks 161
eating habits 159–60, 370
eating in a restaurant 162ff
'eating' v. 'to eat' 148ff, 370
embassy, contact your 172ff
Emergency situations 172ff emergency calls 179
exchanging currencies 257ff
ezāfe, the magical functions of 21ff, 367
facilities, enquiring about 61ff
family, extended 79
family, questions about 70
favourites 216ff
Feel like ... ? 293ff
feel tired 269ff
food 42ff, 151ff
foreign currencies 257ff, 262
foreign languages 298ff
fruits 234ff, 242ff
future simple tense 85, 371, 372
```

```
gemination (taŝdid) xxxiii
gerund (verbal noun) 148, 370
gifts, giving and receiving 280ff
glottal stop xxxi–xxxiii
goodbye 1ff, 83ff
Good luck! 138ff
go to see someone 294ff
grammar of communication 375ff
greeting 1ff
grocery items 234ff, 242ff
guest-host expressions 100, 119, 154ff
had to go 253ff
had to eat 253
haggling 226ff
Happy Birthday! 43ff, 281ff, 284
Happy New Year! 284
have 36ff, 88, 111, 220, 229ff, 309ff
Have a nice time! 91ff, 102
Have a good weekend! 102
Have you been to...? 166
health, enquiring about 10ff
health and hygiene 264ff
hobbies 28ff, 148, 207ff, 216ff
hotel, booking a 116ff, 123, 125
hotel, checking into a 116ff
hotel, complaining about a 124, 125ff, 332
```

```
How long will you stay ...? 83ff
How long have you been learning ...? 304ff, 309ff
How are you? 10ff
How old are you? 36ff
If the weather gets better ... 208ff, 210ff
I have been learning Persian ... 304ff, 309ff
illnesses 264ff
immigration officer 82ff
imperative 93ff, 100ff, 374-5
impersonal construction 250ff
I never eat ... 157ff
infinitive 36, 46, 119ff, 369, 370
interview, job 304
intonation 7–8, 16, 368–9
intransitive (verb) 373
introducing
   B to C 7, 35
   yourself 4
Is this seat taken? 162
I want to go ... 109ff
job interview 304
joinable letters xxvff
joking 376
journey time 127ff
```

```
languages, foreign 298ff
lawyer, contact your 172ff
leave-taking 2, 301
Let's go! 100ff
letter, business / formal 313ff, 359
letters, joinable xxvff
letters, unjoinable xxiii-xxiv
letters (alphabet), shapes of xxff
likes and dislikes 207ff, 216ff, 221ff
Long time no see! 290ff
looking for ... 198ff
map of Iran 214
marital status 29ff
medicines 273ff, 276
menu, restaurant 161
money 107ff, 137ff, 226, 241
months of the year 302
must have arrived 251
nationality 29ff, 32ff
negative
   adverbs 157
   double 157
   verb 'to be' 15ff
   verb 'to have' 36
Nothing to write home about! 51
```

```
noun derivation 267ff
nouns, plural forms of 33ff
numbers
   cardinal 37ff
   ordinal 65ff
object, direct 55
object endings 130ff
object, indirect 55
obligation 111
occupation 28ff, 70ff
offering tea 101
offering to do something for someone 101ff
once a day 75ff
opinion, expressing an 78, 80ff
ordering a meal 162ff
passive construction 258ff, 373
passport control 83ff
past continuous 175ff
past perfect 185
past simple tense 45ff
past stem of verbs 36
permission to do ..., asking 151ff
personal details 28
personal endings 13ff
pharmacy 273
```

```
phrase, grammar of the 367
Pleased to meet you! 18ff
Please speak more clearly / slowly 127ff
plural of nouns 33ff
Police station 173ff
polite forms of 'you', 'he', 'she' 7
polite 'go ahead' signal 100
politeness 20ff, 155, 375ff See also ta'ārof
possession, expressing 21ff, 23ff
possessive endings 23ff
possessive pronouns 24
possibility 111, 250ff
post office 248ff
preference, expressing 191
prepositions 64, 366, 367
present continuous 87ff, 290ff
present perfect continuous 309ff, 371
present perfect tense 165ff
present simple tense
   main verbs 66ff
   verb 'to be' 6ff
   verb 'to have' 36ff
present stem of verbs 36ff
probability 111
pronouns
   emphatic 183
   indefinite 188
```

```
object 365
   personal / subject 6ff
   reflexive 183
public telephone, using a 137ff
questions, intonation 369
questions, word order 7ff, 16ff, 368
rā 54ff, 365
reading exercise, comprehensive xxxvi-xxxvii
reading Persian, introduction to xviiff
reduction 47ff
reflexive pronouns 183ff
regards, sending 285ff
regret, expressing 61ff
relations with other people 280ff
relative clauses 200ff
rented accommodation, enquiring about 191ff
reported speech 275ff
requesting 82ff, 91
restaurant 162
role plays xiii
Same here! 25ff
satisfaction, expressing 120ff
seasons of the year 302
sends his regards 285
```

```
sentence, grammar of the 368
sequencing 103
Shall I bring ...? 101
Shall we go? 101
shopping 226ff
short alef, the xxxiv
should have arrived 251ff
should have eaten 253
sitting v. eating 290ff
small talk 119
So am I! 25ff
sokun xxxiv
soothing 377
sound change xii
sounds xiv, xix
stamps 247ff
street talk 127ff
streetwise expressions 135ff, 141ff
stress, contrastive 218
stress, word xx, 32, 33, 67, 76, 93, 94, 362
stress shift 204
structured infinitive 119ff
subjunctive
   perfect 372ff
   simple 108ff, 372
suggesting joint activity 280ff
Surprise! 280ff, 287ff, 290
```

```
syllable structure 361ff
symptoms, medical 265ff, 271
ta'ārof 154ff, 241-2
taboos 376ff
tanvin xxxiv
taŝdid (gemination) xxxiii
taxi, getting a 107ff
Tehraniization 7
telephone conversation 191ff, 298ff, 301
telephone directory 179
telephone expressions 197
telephone numbers, reading 69
tenses 370ff
thanking 1ff, 35
Thank you!, an idiom for 122
there is / are 140ff
there was / were 140ff
time, asking and telling the 127, 134ff
tip, giving a 117–8
titles 267
transcription, English xii, xiiiff, xxxiii, 14, 21, 33, 56
transitive (verb) 373
unjoinable letters xxiii-xxiv
vegetables 243
```

```
verb endings 13ff
verbs, compound 53ff, 96, 97, 109, 130, 210
verb stems 36, 67, 96, 111, 220, 369ff
vowels xxi-xxii
week, days of the 46ff
waiting for ... 121
want to go 109ff
warning 98
weather 207ff
What can I do for you? 4, 116ff, 191ff, 298ff, 301ff
What did you do ...? 42ff
What do you like about ...? 223ff
What's the matter with ...? 133ff
Where are you from? 28ff
Who am I? 29ff
wish, expressing a 374
Wish you were (or had been) there! 43, 286
word formation 267ff, 362ff
word, grammar of the 362ff
word order
   noun + adjective 22, 40, 78
   sentence 368
work 28ff, 70ff, 304ff
writing, guidelines for xxxv
'yes' to a negative question / suggestion 71ff, 151ff, 181ff, 192ff
```